New Hello! ENGLISH

By a group of supervisors

EL-MOASSER GUIDE

الصف الثانى الإعدادى
الفصل الدراسى الثانى

طبعة جديدة
طبقاً لأحدث تعديلات كتاب الوزارة ٢٠٢٥



2nd Prep. 2025 SECOND TERM

New Hello!

ENGLISH

By a group of supervisors

EL-MOASSER

GUIDE



GPS

AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com
www.elmoasserbooks.com
15014

2025

2nd Prep.

SECOND TERM

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

إِنَّ الَّذِينَ ءَامَنُوا۟ وَعَمِلُوا۟ الصَّٰلِحَٰتِ إِنَّا لَا نُضِيعُ أَجْرَ مَنْ أَحْسَنَ عَمَلًا

صدق الله العظيم

Egyptian National Library
Cataloging During publishing
Prepared by Technical Affairs Department

El Moasser Guide based on New Hello! English for Preparatory Schools

By a Group of Supervisors

Cairo : G.P.S for Printing, Publication & Distribution, 2024 - 2025

3 Vols. ; 24 cm.

For 2nd prep. - Second Term

I.S.B.N : 978 - 977- 970 - 004 - 5

1. English language - study and teaching. (elementary)

2. Education, Elementary.

372.6521

رقم الإيداع : ١٦٣٦٨ / ٢٠٢٤

تطبيق GPS التفاعلى



GPS

التطبيق التفاعلى من سلسلة كتب ...

الامتحان المعاصر

كيفية الاستخدام: **1.** نزل التطبيق. **2.** أنشئ حسابك. **3.** أدخل الكود الموجود على ظهر الغلاف.

استمتع بجميع مزايا التطبيق

لجميع المواد الدراسية

شرح | فيديوهات | ألعاب تعليمية | امتحانات تفاعلية | تدريبات

تواصل مع معلمك | تقارير متابعة | إشعارات | أخبار

تصنيف بلوم للمستويات المعرفية



ملاحظة: تم تصنيف الأسئلة بداخل كل تمرين طبقًا لمستويات هرم بلوم والإشارة لها كالتالى:

● تذكر ● فهم ● تطبيق ● حل مشكلات (تحليل أو تقويم أو ابتكار)

Specifications for Second Year Preparatory

English Examination 2024 - 2025

مواصفات امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثانى الإعدادى للعام الدراسى ٢٠٢٤ / ٢٠٢٥

Time : Two hours **2024 / 2025** **30 Marks**

A Listening [4 Marks]

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : [4 Marks]

Students listen to a text from (30 - 35) words. Topics should be related to the Set Books. Students listen and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. **(One mark each)**

B Language Functions [5 Marks]

2 Complete the following dialogue : [5 Marks]

A dialogue of **TEN (10)** exchanges with **FIVE (5)** deletions (3 responses & 2 stimuli) is provided. Students are asked to complete the deletions without providing them with any guidance. The situation in which the dialogue takes place is described briefly but clearly. The first sentence is given in full.

(One mark each)

C Reading Comprehension [5 Marks]

3 Read the following, then answer the questions : [5 Marks]

An unseen text of about **ONE HUNDRED and TWENTY-FIVE (125)** words is provided. This can be a short story, a factual text, a timetable or a letter. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be from the Set Books. Students are asked to answer **TWO (2)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each **(Half a mark each)** and **FOUR (4)** open-ended questions **(One mark each)**.

These questions should test the following reading comprehension skills :

- Giving the main idea (1 question)
- Extracting information (2 questions)
- Understanding reference (1 question)
- Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context (1 question)
- Critical thinking skill (1 question)

D Vocabulary & Structure [9 Marks]

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : [4 Marks]

EIGHT (8) multiple-choice items (6 vocabulary & 2 structures) based on the Set Books are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given. **(Half a mark each)**

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word[s] in brackets: [5 Marks]

FIVE (5) structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. The given word(s) in brackets could be verbs, adjectives, adverbs ... etc. related to what students have studied. **(One mark each)**

E Writing [7 Marks]

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on ... : [7 Marks]

Students are asked to write a paragraph from **EIGHTY-FIVE (85) to NINETY-FIVE (95)** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books.

(Two marks for relevance of ideas - Two marks for choice of vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)

OR

Write an email of about NINETY (90) words on ... : [7 Marks]

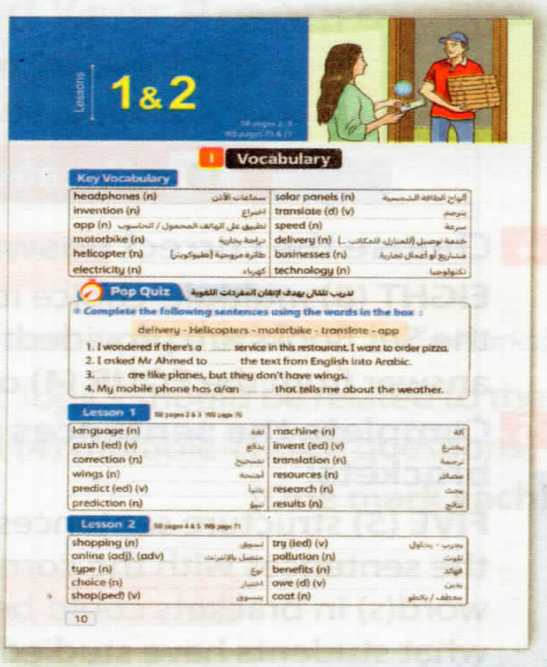
Students are asked to write an email from **EIGHTY-FIVE (85) to NINETY-FIVE (95)** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books. Students must write who the email is to and from, as well as the subject of the e-mail. Names and addresses are provided.

(Two marks for relevance of ideas- One mark for organization- One mark for choice of vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)



HOW TO USE THIS GUIDE ?




Lessons 1&2

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

headphones (n)	سماعات الأذن	solar panels (n)	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
invention (n)	اختراع	translate (d) (v)	يترجم
app (n)	تطبيق على الهاتف المحمول / الحاسوب	speed (n)	سرعة
motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية	delivery (n)	خدمة توصيل (الطلبات، المكالمات ...)
helicopter (n)	طائرة مروحية [هليكوبتر]	businesses (n)	مشاريع أو أعمال تجارية
electricity (n)	كهرباء	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا

Pop Quiz تدريب تفاعلي بهدف الإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

delivery - Helicopters - motorbike - translate - app

1. I wondered if there's a ..... service in this restaurant. I want to order pizza.
2. I asked Mr Ahmed to ..... the text from English into Arabic.
3. ..... are like planes, but they don't have wings.
4. My mobile phone has a/an ..... that tells me about the weather.

Lesson 1

language (n)	لغة	machine (n)	آلة
push (ed) (v)	يدفع	invent (ed) (v)	يخترع
correction (n)	تصحيح	translation (n)	ترجمة
wings (n)	أجنحة	resources (n)	مصادر
predict (ed) (v)	يتنبأ	research (n)	بحث
prediction (n)	تنبؤ	results (n)	نتائج

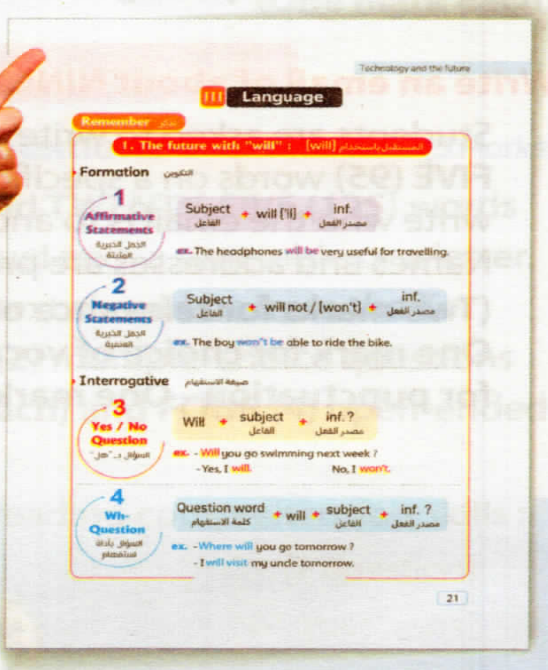
Lesson 2

shopping (n)	تسوق	try (ied) (v)	يجرب - يحاول
online (adj), (adv)	متصل بالإنترنت	pollution (n)	تلوث
type (n)	نوع	benefits (n)	فوائد
choice (n)	اختيار	owe (d) (v)	يدين
shop(ped) (v)	يتسوق	coat (n)	معطف / بالطو

10

1. Vocabulary

- عرض للمفردات اللغوية.
- عرض شامل لنصوص القراءة والاستماع.
- تدريبات متنوعة على المفردات اللغوية.


Technology and the future

III Language

Remember تذكر

1. The future with "will" : [will] المستقبل باستخدام

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject الفاعل + will ['ll] + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. The headphones will be very useful for travelling.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject الفاعل + will not / (won't) + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. The boy won't be able to ride the bike.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

3 Yes / No Question سؤال بـ "نعم" "لا"

Will + subject الفاعل + inf. ? مصدر الفعل

ex. - Will you go swimming next week ?
- Yes, I will. No, I won't.

4 Wh- Question السؤال بأداة استفهام

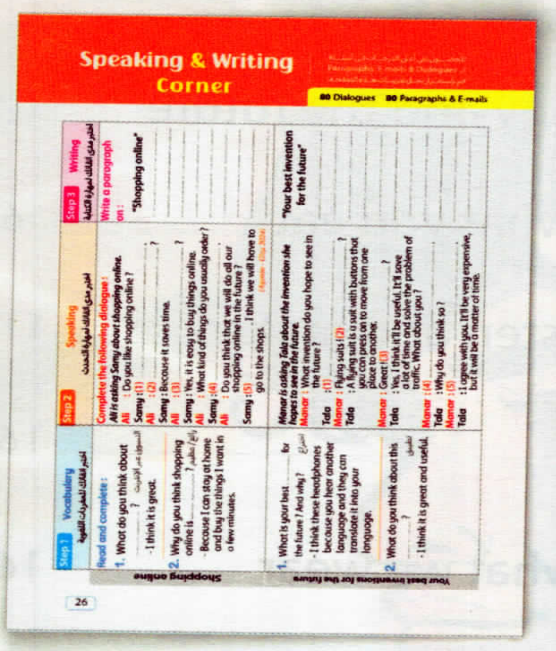
Question word كلمة الاستفهام + will + subject الفاعل + inf. ? مصدر الفعل

ex. - Where will you go tomorrow ?
- I will visit my uncle tomorrow.

21

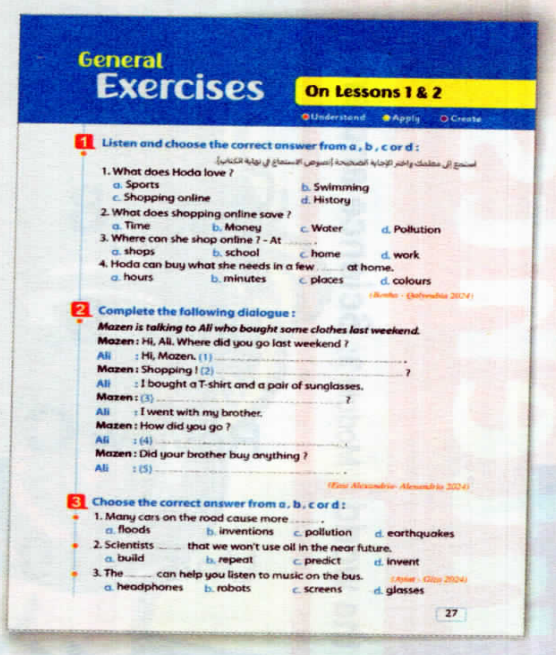
2. Language

عرض شامل للقواعد اللغوية مع أمثلة متنوعة عليها تساعدك على دراسة القواعد اللغوية، مع تدريبات متنوعة على القواعد اللغوية.



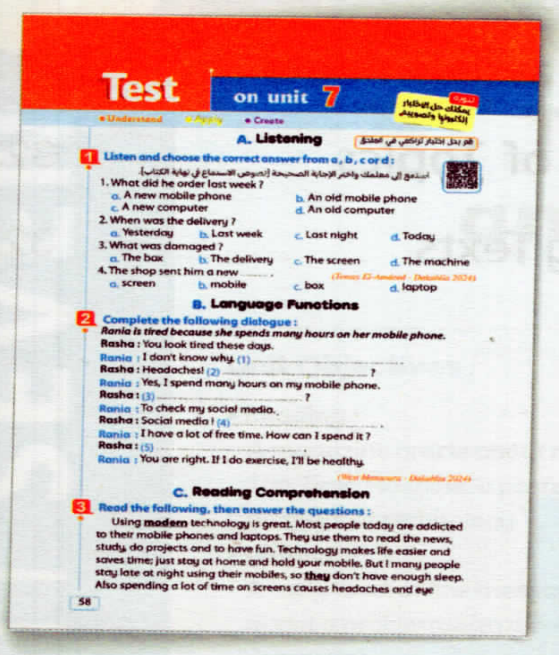
3. Speaking & Writing corner

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات فى أسئلة Dialogues, Paragraphs & E-mails



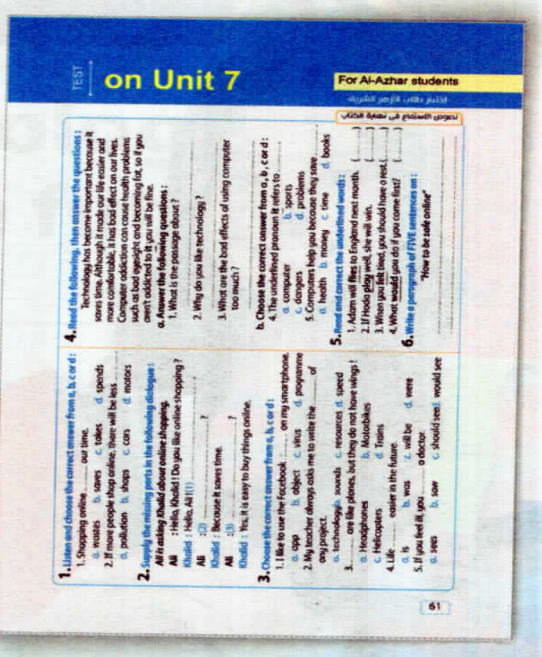
4. General Exercises

تدريبات على كل درسين.



5. Test on unit

اختبار على الوحدة، ويمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيًا وتصويبه.



6. Test For Al-Azhar students

اختبار كامل لطلاب الازهر الشريف.

Contents

Module 3: Science and art

Module 4: Our place in the world

Unit 7 Technology and the future 9

Unit 8 You are what you eat 63

Unit 9 Watch, listen and make 113

Review C 163

Unit 10 We are what we wear 168

Unit 11 The future of our planet 214

Unit 12 Languages and learning 265

Review D 314

Monthly assessments 317

Answers of Topics 323

Listening Texts 327





UNIT SEVEN

Technology and the future

SB pages 2 : 11 WB pages 70:76

Unit Objectives :

- **Reading :**
  A magazine article about online shopping; The Time Machine; a poster about the dangers of technology
- **Writing :**
  A reply to an online message; a formal email about a problem with a delivery
- **Listening :**
  A discussion about new inventions; people's problems with technology and suggested solutions
- **Speaking :**
  Giving opinions about inventions and technology; a debate
- **Language :**
  if / when + should for advice
- **Life Skills :**
  Critical thinking : technological awareness

Lessons

1 & 2

SB pages 2 : 5
WB pages 70 & 71



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

headphones (n)	سماعات الأذن	solar panels (n)	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
invention (n)	اختراع	translate (d) (v)	يترجم
app (n)	تطبيق على الهاتف المحمول / الحاسوب	speed (n)	سرعة
motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية	delivery (n)	خدمة توصيل [للمنازل، للمكاتب ...]
helicopter (n)	طائرة مروحية [هليوكوبتر]	businesses (n)	مشاريع أو أعمال تجارية
electricity (n)	كهرباء	technology (n)	تكنولوچيا

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

delivery - Helicopters - motorbike - translate - app

1. I wondered if there's a ..... service in this restaurant. I want to order pizza.
2. I asked Mr Ahmed to ..... the text from English into Arabic.
3. ..... are like planes, but they don't have wings.
4. My mobile phone has a/an ..... that tells me about the weather.

Lesson 1

SB pages 2 & 3 WB page 70

language (n)	لغة	machine (n)	آلة
push (ed) (v)	يدفع	invent (ed) (v)	يخترع
correction (n)	تصحيح	translation (n)	ترجمة
wings (n)	أجنحة	resources (n)	مصادر
predict (ed) (v)	يتنبأ	research (n)	بحث
prediction (n)	تنبؤ	results (n)	نتائج

Lesson 2

SB pages 4 & 5 WB page 71

shopping (n)	تسوق	try (ied) (v)	يجرب - يحاول
online (adj), (adv)	متصل بالإنترنت	pollution (n)	تلوث
type (n)	نوع	benefits (n)	فوائد
choice (n)	اختيار	owe (d) (v)	يدين
shop(ped) (v)	يتسوق	coat (n)	معطف / بالطو

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs
تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
build يبنى	built	built
know يعرف	knew	known
speak يتحدث	spoke	spoken
spend يقضى - ينفق	spent	spent
find يجد	found	found

Study these definitions
ادرس هذه التعريفات

app	a small computer program that you can use on a mobile phone or other electronic device تطبيق
motorbike	a form of transport with two wheels and an engine دراجة نارية
helicopter	a form of transport that flies using long, thin parts on top of it that turn round and round very quickly طائرة مروحية
headphones	a piece of equipment that you wear over your ears so that you can listen to music without anyone else hearing it سماعات الأذن
translate	change words into a different language يترجم
speed	how fast something moves سرعة

Collocations
متلازمات لفظية

have	free time لديه وقت فراغ	**save**	time يوفر وقت
	money لديه مال		money يدخر مال
	a choice لديه إختيار		
waste	money يهدر المال	**go**	shopping يتسوق
	time يضيع الوقت		

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms
مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
necessary ضرورى	essential / needed	unnecessary غير ضرورى
famous مشهور	well-known	unknown غير معروف
real حقيقى	true	false / unreal غير حقيقى
strong قوى	powerful	weak ضعيف

Prefixes & Suffixes		مقاطع بادئة وناهية
Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
–ion	تكون الاسم من الفعل أو الصفة	prediction تنبؤ invention اختراع correction تصحيح
–ful	تكوّن الصفة من الفعل	useful مفيد
–y	تكون الاسم من الفعل	delivery توصيل

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The opposite of the word "real" is "....." .
   a. happy b. known c. false d. true
2. Going to the gym will make your muscles **strong**. The underlined word "**strong**" means not "....." .
   a. good b. weak c. powerful d. false
3. The suffix "-y" in the word "delivery" makes it a/an ..... .
   a. noun b. adverb c. adjective d. pronoun
4. Studying your lessons regularly is necessary. "Necessary" means ..... .
   a. unnecessary b. optional c. essential d. true
5. The teacher wants our notebooks for correction. The suffix "-ion" in the word "correction" forms a/an ..... .
   a. verb b. noun c. adverb d. adjective

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 will be able to + inf. تستخدم للتعبير عن القدرة على فعل شيء في المستقبل

- I'll be able to do all the shopping in one place. *(SB page 3)*

2 * prefer + (inf. + ing) / noun يُفضِّل

- I prefer going to real shops in my city.
- I prefer fruit as a snack.

*** ('d) would prefer to + inf.** يُفضِّل أن

- She'd prefer to eat pizza.

* **prefer (noun / inf. + ing) to (noun / inf. + ing)** يفضل [شئ] عن [شئ]

- He **prefers** reading **to** watching TV.
- She **prefers** tea **to** coffee. *(SB page 4)*

3 * **spend + (time) + (inf. + ing)** يقضى [وقت] في ...

- I don't want to **spend** lots of time **travelling** to the shops.

* **spend + (time) with + (noun)** يقضى [وقت] مع ...

- Other people like to **spend** time **with** friends at the shops.

* **spend + (money) on (noun/ inf. + ing)** ينفق على

- She **spends** more money **on** clothes.
- He **spends** most of his money **on** buying books. *(SB page 4)*

4 لاحظ : تستخدم businesses كاسم جمع معدود بمعنى مشاريع تجارية أو شركات

- My father has **a business** in Assiut and two **businesses** in Banha.

وتستخدم أيضًا business كاسم [لا يُعد] بمعنى عمل تجارى

- **Business** brings a lot of money. *(SB page 4)*

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
make you warmer	يجعلك أكثر دفئًا ...	translate from ... into ...	يترجم من ... إلى ....
make electricity	يولد كهرباء	push ... into the air	يدفع ... في الهواء
make people feel cooler	يجعل الناس تشعر بالانتعاش أكثر	at the speed of ...	بسرعة ...
		find out about	يكتشف عن ...
the latest technology	أحدث تكنولوجيا	stay at	يمكث في
do shopping online	يتسوق عبر الإنترنت	wait for	ينتظر
the least useful	الأقل فائدة	agree with ...	يتفق مع ...
make pollution	يسبب تلوث	go down a road	يمشى على الطريق
give your reasons	اذكر أسبابك / مبرراتك	you are for ...	أنت مع [مؤيد] ...
pass all my exams	اجتاز كل اختباراتي	you are against ...	أنت ضد ...
get hotter	يزداد حرارة / سخونة	run at ...	يسير بسرعة ...
get home	ينزل للمنزل	at the same time	في نفس الوقت

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

On Lesson [1] SB page 2

1. The jacket has an **app**(1) that makes you warmer in cold weather.
2. These **headphones**(2) **translate**(3) the language you hear into another language.
3. This **invention**(4) changes roads into **solar panels**(5). You can drive on the road and **make electricity**(6) at the same time.
4. This invention is half-motorbike and half-helicopter. It can push you into the air at the **speed**(7) of a fast car!

On Lesson [2] SB page 4

1. Some people **prefer**(8) **online shopping**(9) but others like to go to real shops in their cities.
2. Shopping online is great.
3. It **saves**(10) your time. You can stay at home and buy things you want in a few minutes.
4. You have more **choices**(11) online.
5. If more people shop online, there will be fewer cars on the road and less **pollution**(12)!
6. On the other hand, when I buy clothes online, the thing that I buy is wrong.
7. At a shop, I can see what I am buying and I can **try**(13) it first.
8. If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close.

(1) تطبيق	(2) سماعات الأذن	(3) يترجم	(4) اختراع	(5) ألواح شمسية
(6) يولد كهرباء	(7) سرعة	(8) يفضل	(9) التسوق عبر الإنترنت	(10) يوفر
(11) اختيارات	(12) تلوث	(13) يجرب		

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

* Useful inventions * Online shopping * The invention I like most

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على II من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 2

This clever jacket uses an **app**(1) to make you warmer when the weather is cold.

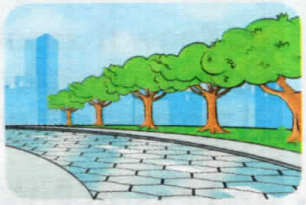
When these **headphones**(2) hear another language, they can **translate**(3) it into your language.

Change roads into **solar panels**(4) ! This invention uses strong glass that you can drive on and make **electricity**(5) at the same time.

Is it a motorbike ? Is it a helicopter ? No, this **invention**(6) is half-motorbike and half-helicopter ! It can **push you into the air**(7) at the **speed**(8) of a fast car !







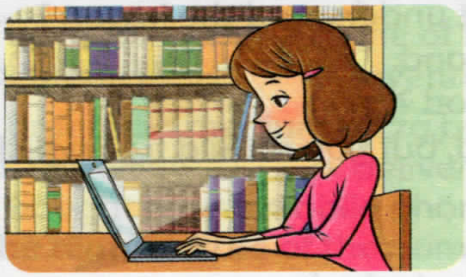


(1) تطبيق على الهاتف المحمول / الكمبيوتر	(2) سماعات الأذن	(3) يترجم		
(4) ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	(5) كهرباء	(6) اختراع	(7) يدفعك فى الهواء	(8) سرعة

on Lesson 2 SB page 4

Shopping online - Yes or No ?

***Injy** - I love* **online shopping**(1) **!**



Baher** - I* **prefer**(7) ***going to **real**(8) *shops in my city.*



Shopping online is great ! Firstly, it **saves**(2) me time. I don't want to spend lots of time **travelling**(3) to the shops. I can stay at home and buy the things I want in a few minutes. Secondly, I have more **choices**(4) online. Also, if more people **shop**(5) online, there will be fewer cars on the road and less **pollution**(6) ! I will do all my shopping online when I am older.

Every time I buy clothes online, the thing that I buy is wrong ! At a shop, I can see what I am buying and I can **try**(9) it first. Also, I don't like to **waste**(10) time waiting for **a delivery**(11) – I want things now ! If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close. If they close, then lots of other **businesses**(12) like cafés will close, too.

(1) التسوق عبر الإنترنت
(2) يوفر
(3) سفر
(4) اختيارات
(5) يتسوق
(6) تلوث
(7) يفضل
(8) حقيقى
(9) يجرب
(10) يضيع / يهدر
(11) توصيل الطلبات للمنازل
(12) مشاريع تجارية

Answer the following questions :

Extracting information إستخراج معلومات

Learn 1. Why does Injy think shopping online is great ?
- *Because it saves time and she has more choices online.*

Practise 2. Why does Baher prefer going to real shops in his city ?
.....

on Lesson 2 WB page 71



Mother : Ahmed, your plane will **arrive in**(1) England at 11 o'clock.
Ahmed : Who will meet me at the airport if the plane's late ?
Mother : Uncle Sami will **wait for you**(2), don't worry !
Ahmed : What clothes will I wear if it's cold ?
Mother : You have a big coat, but it will be warm inside !
Ahmed : Who will I talk to if I don't know anyone at the school ?
Mother : There will be lots of new students, they'll be very friendly.
Ahmed : What will the teacher say if I don't understand the lesson ?
Mother : He or she will help you to understand.
Ahmed : What will I eat if I don't like the food ?
Mother : Aunt Judy will cook Egyptian food, but you should try English food, too !

(1) يصل إلى | (2) ينتظرك

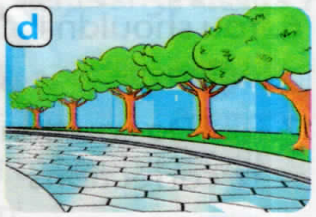
Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 3

a 

b 

c 

d 

1. **Narrator** : Hatem
   Hatem : Wow ! That looks so **cool**(1) ! I'm not sure it's very **useful**(2) **though**(3). It won't be able to fly very high, will it ?
2. **Narrator** : Manal
   Manal : I think lots of people will want to buy one of these; they'll be very useful for travelling. It won't help people to speak other languages though, will it ? It's only **good for**(4) listening.
3. **Narrator** : Tarek
   Tarek : I think this is a good idea for people in cold places. It won't be very useful for me though ! Maybe they will make one to make people feel cooler ! That would be good here in the summer !
4. **Narrator** : Sawsan
   Sawsan : I think that is an amazing invention. I hope they will build lots of these in Egypt. We have lots of sun and we could make lots of electricity.

(1) رائع | (2) مفيد | (3) برغم ذلك | (4) مفيد لـ/ جيد لـ

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. This message is written in German. Can you ..... it into Arabic ?
   a. transfer b. predict c. translate d. fix
2. The mobile phone is one of the most important ..... of our age.
   a. predictions b. inventions c. corrections d. translations
3. I ordered a medium pizza but the ..... was late. *(Dokki - Giza 2024)*
   a. travelling b. delivery c. riding d. driving
4. I bought a new mobile phone with a/an ..... that measures the temperature of the human body.
   a. app b. device c. road d. job

5. I like to wear my ..... on the bus to listen to music.
   a. helmet b. headphones c. glasses d. jacket

SB , WB and Previous Exams

6. You shouldn't ..... your time playing video games. *(Gamalia - Dakahlia 2024)*
   a. waste b. close c. appear d. need

7. WB Do you think that there will be many ..... in your English homework ?
   a. corrections b. apps c. turns d. tools

8. SB If the shops close, then lots of other ..... like cafés will close, too.
   a. jobs b. businesses c. ideas d. circles

9. ..... panels make electricity from the sun. *(Tur Sinai - South Sinai 2023)*
   a. Snow b. Wind c. Moon d. Solar

10 A ..... has two wheels and an engine. *(Helwan - Cairo 2023)*
   a. bike b. taxi c. motorbike d. truck

El-Moasser Exercises

11. Scientists will ..... a car that doesn't make any pollution in the future.
   a. invite b. invent c. invest d. intend

12. Shopping online is great because it ..... time. *(6th October City - Giza 2024)*
   a. invites b. invents c. describes d. saves

▸ Definitions

13. A/An ..... is a form of transport that flies using long, thin parts on top of it.
   a. choice b. helicopter c. motorbike d. invention

14. ..... is how fast something moves.
   a. Speed b. Weight c. Length d. Height

▸ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. Green buses and electric cars don't ..... any pollution.
   a. tell b. give c. make d. do

16. You should stay ..... home in very hot weather.
   a. on b. at c. up d. onto

2. Speaking — مهارة التحدث

1. Discussion on new inventions — ١. مناقشة عن الاختراعات الحديثة

Questions	Answers
1. What invention do you hope we will see in the future ? - ما هو الاختراع الذي تتمنى أن نراه في المستقبل ؟	- I hope the flying motorbike will be invented soon. - نتمنى أن يتم اختراع دراجة بخارية طائرة قريبًا.
2. Which of these inventions do you think won't be used very much in Egypt ? Why ? - أى من هذه الاختراعات تعتقد لن تكون مستخدمة كثيرًا في مصر ؟ ولماذا ؟	- I think that the jacket won't be very useful in Egypt because the weather here is not too cold. - أعتقد أن الچاكيت لن يكون مفيد كثيرًا في مصر لأن الطقس هنا ليس شديد البرودة.
3. Which of these inventions do you think will become the most used ? Why ? - أى من هذه الاختراعات تعتقد سيكون الأكثر استخدامًا ؟ ولماذا ؟	- I think the headphones will become the most used invention because they'll be useful for travelling. - اعتقد سماعات الأذن ستكون أكثر الاختراعات استخدامًا لأنها ستكون مفيدة للسفر.

2. Predicting the future — ٢. التنبؤ بالمستقبل

Questions	Answers
1. What do you think will happen in the future ? - ماذا تعتقد سوف يحدث في المستقبل ؟	- I think that robots will be in every house. - أعتقد أنه سيكون هناك أجهزة إنسان آلى في كل منزل.
2. What do you think won't happen in the future ? - ما الذي تعتقد انه لن يحدث في المستقبل ؟	- I think people won't go to space on holiday. - أعتقد أن الناس لن تذهب إلى الفضاء في العطلة.

3. A discussion on online shopping ٣. مناقشة عن التسوق عبر الإنترنت

Questions	Answers
1. Do you like online shopping ? Why / Why not ? - هل تحب التسوق عبر الإنترنت ؟ لما / لما لا ؟	- Yes. Because it saves time. - نعم. لأنه يوفر الوقت. - No. Because I can't try things before I buy. - لا. لأنني لا أستطيع أن أجرب الأشياء قبل شرائها.
2. What type of things do you like to buy ? Why ? - ما نوع الأشياء التى تحب شرائها ؟ ولماذا ؟	- I like to buy clothes because I like to wear modern clothes. - أحب شراء الملابس لأننى أحب ارتداء ملابس عصرية.

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

"Advantages and disadvantages of online shopping"

مزايا وعيوب التسوق عبر الأنترنت

1. Shopping online is great because it saves time.
١. التسوق عبر الأنترنت رائع لانه يوفر الوقت.
2. When you shop online, you have more choices.
٢. عندما تتسوق عبر الانترنت ، يكون لديك اختيارات أكثر.
3. Shopping online reduces pollution. ٣. التسوق عبر الأنترنت يقلل التلوث.
4. When you shop online, there will be fewer cars on the road.
٤. عندما تتسوق عبر الأنترنت، سيكون هناك سيارات أقل على الطريق.
5. Other people prefer going to real shops in the city.
٥. بعض الناس يفضل الذهاب إلى محلات فى المدينة.
6. They can buy things and try them first. ٦. فهم يستطيعوا شراء الأشياء وتجربتها أولًا.
7. They don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery.
٧. أنهم لا يحبون أن يضيعوا وقتًا فى انتظار استلام الاشياء.

III Language

Remember تذكر

1. The future with "will" : (will) المستقبل باستخدام

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject الفاعل + will ['ll] + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. The headphones will be very useful for travelling.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject الفاعل + will not / (won't) + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. The boy won't be able to ride the bike.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

3 Yes / No Question السؤال بـ"هل"

Will + subject الفاعل + inf. ? مصدر الفعل

ex. - Will you go swimming next week ?
- Yes, I will. No, I won't.

4 Wh- Question السؤال بأداة استفهام

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + will + subject الفاعل + inf. ? مصدر الفعل

ex. - Where will you go tomorrow ?
- I will visit my uncle tomorrow.

Usage الاستخدام

Prediction without evidence : التنبؤ بالمستقبل بدون دليل :

تستخدم (will+ inf.) عند التنبؤ بأحداث فى المستقبل [بدون دليل واضح على حدوث الشئ] وتأتى معها كلمات مثل :

- (hope يأمل/ think يعتقد / promise يوعد/ be sure متأكد/ expect يتوقع/ predict يتنبأ)

maybe	probable	probably	perhaps
ربما	محتمل	من المحتمل	ربما

ex. - I hope they will build lots of schools in Egypt.
- Maybe they will make this clever jacket to help people be warmer.

Key words كلمات دالة

تستخدم الكلمات التالية مع زمن المستقبل البسيط:

tomorrow غدًا / in the future في المستقبل / soon قريبًا /
next القادم (week/month/year ...)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. That boy ..... a famous architect in the future. *(Mansha'at Nasser-Cairo 2021)*
   a. is b. will be c. did d. was
2. We will ..... to America next week. *(Al-Bagour - Menoufia 2024)*
   a. flies b. fly c. flying d. flew
3. I hope we ..... the next match. *(Bolak el Dakrour - Giza 2023)*
   a. wins b. winning c. won d. will win
4. They will ..... a lot of things there. *(El Zawya El Hamra - Giza 2023)*
   a. doing b. do c. did d. does
5. SB I think the headphones ..... very useful for travelling.
   a. will be b. are going to be c. be d. would be
6. WB Do you predict that the weather ..... hotter in the future ?
   a. gets b. got c. will get d. are getting
7. SB What invention do you hope we ..... in the future ?
   a. seen b. will see c. sees d. saw

8. WB Do you think it ..... be easier to translate from Arabic to English next term ?
   a. is going b. will c. isn't going d. would

El-Moasser Exercises

9. I agree that the jacket won't ..... useful in Egypt !
   a. be b. is c. are d. was
10. What ..... you do next weekend ?
   a. do b. are c. will d. have

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and previous Exams

1. I hope they ..... (building) lots of schools in Egypt. *(West Shoubra El Khaima - Qalyoubia 2024)*
2. I think our team ..... (win) the next match. *(El Montazah - Alexandria 2024)*
3. WB I think we will ..... (doing) the shopping online more.
4. SB Maybe they ..... (make) one to help people be cooler.
5. SB The machine won't ..... (being) able to fly very high.
6. Next month, I ..... (be) in the third year of prep school. *(New Cairo - Cairo2023)*
7. Scientists ..... (find) new medicines in the future. *(Faquous - Sharkia2022)*
8. Do you think that we will ..... (invents) a car that doesn't make any pollution ? *(Saidi Salem - Kafr El Sheikh 2023)*

El-Moasser Exercises

9. She will probably ..... (eating) pizza tomorrow.
10. Samy will be fifteen ..... (last) Wednesday.

Remember تذكر

2. The first conditional الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Formation التكوين

1 Statements الجمل الخبرية

If / When (عندما - إذا / لو) + present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) , future simple will / won't + inf.

Future simple will / won't + inf. + if / when (عندما - إذا / لو) + present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط)

ex. - I will do all my shopping online when I am older.

لاحظ وضع comma (،) قبل بداية الجملة الثانية فى حالة وجود [If / When] فى البداية.

ex. - If / When I go to the shops, I will spend a lot of money.

2 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

(A) Yes/No question : **(أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :**

Will + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر + if / when + present simple tense ? زمن المضارع البسيط

ex. - Will Ali wait for the bus if/when it is late ?
- Yes, he will. - No, he will not (won't).

(B) Wh-question : **(ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :**

Question word كلمة استفهام + will + subj. الفاعل + inf. مصدر + if /when + present simple tense ? زمن المضارع البسيط

ex. - What will the teacher do if/when I don't understand the lesson ?
- He will help you to understand the lesson.

• Usage الاستخدام

• We use the first conditional to express prediction.

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتعبير عن التنبؤ [للتحدث عن أشياء نتوقع حدوثها فى المستقبل].

ex. - When Huda visits Cairo, she will buy some new shoes.
- Hassan will not use the internet to buy food when he is older.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. If mum ..... more free time, we will go out. *(Dikirniss - Dakahlia 2024)*
   a. has b. had c. having d. have
2. If the children ..... a snake in my house, they will run away.
   a. finds b. find c. found d. finding

(New Salhyia - Sharkia 2024)

3. If I go to the shops on Saturday, I ..... some new headphones.
a. buys b. bought c. buying d. will buy
(El Khosus - Qalyoubia 2024)

4. If he ..... all his exams, he'll be happy.
a. pass b. passed c. will pass d. passes
(Manshaat Al Qanater - Giza 2023)

5. What clothes ..... if it's cold?
a. will I wear b. wear c. will wear I d. I will wear
(El Maadi - Cairo 2023)

6. SB If I ..... to the shops, I will spend a lot of money.
a. go b. went c. goes d. going
(Faraskour - Damietta 2023)

7. SB If I help my mother at the weekend, she ..... have more free time.
a. 'll b. 'd c. 's d. should

El-Moasser Exercises

8. If she ..... the room with her sister, mother will be glad.
a. share b. shares c. shared d. is sharing

9. Hala ..... good at English if she practises well.
a. will be b. can c. was d. would be

10. If Ahmed ..... eat vegetables, he won't be healthy.
a. don't b. isn't c. doesn't d. didn't

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. If Ali comes first, he ..... (feel) very happy. *(Dikirniss - Dakahlia 2024)*
2. If we have free time, we ..... (go) shopping. *(Menuf - Menoufia 2024)*
3. If you ..... (didn't) feel well in school, tell your teacher. *(Kafr Elziat - Gharbia 2024)*
4. SB Mona will look online for a new phone when she ..... (get) home.
5. WB Who will I talk to if I ..... (not know) anyone at the school ?
6. If I see Mark, I ..... (ask) him to call you. *(Agouza - Giza 2022)*
7. We will be sad if we ..... (got) low marks. *(Al Bagour - Menoufia 2023)*

El-Moasser Exercises

8. What ..... (would) you do if you get the prize ?
9. If he studies hard, ... (he will) get high mark ?
10. What ..... (you do) if you win a competition ?
11. Sara ..... (buy) a car if she has enough money.

Shopping online

Step 1 Vocabulary
اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. What do you think about ..... ? التسوق عبر الإنترنت
   - I think it is great.

2. Why do you think shopping online is ..... ? رائع/ عظيم
   - Because I can stay at home and buy the things I want in a few minutes.

Step 2 Speaking
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث

Complete the following dialogue :

Ali is asking Samy about shopping online.

Ali : Do you like shopping online ?
Samy : (1) ..... .
Ali : (2) ..... ?
Samy : Because it saves time.
Ali : (3) ..... ?
Samy : Yes, it is easy to buy things online.
Ali : What kind of things do you usually order ?
Samy : (4) ..... .
Ali : Do you think that we will do all our shopping online in the future ?
Samy : (5) ..... . I think we will have to go to the shops. *(Agouza - Giza 2024)*

Step 3 Writing
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Write a paragraph on :

"Shopping online"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Your best inventions for the future

Step 1 Vocabulary

1. What is your best ..... for the future ? And why ? اختراع
   - I think these headphones because you hear another language and they can translate it into your language.

2. What do you think about this ..... ? تطبيق
   - I think it is great and useful.

Step 2 Speaking

Manar is asking Tala about the invention she hopes to see in the future.

Manar : What invention do you hope to see in the future ?
Tala : (1) ..... .
Manar : Flying suits ! (2) ..... ?
Tala : A flying suit is a suit with buttons that you can press on to move from one place to another.
Manar : Great ! (3) ..... ?
Tala : Yes, I think it'll be useful. It'll save a lot of time and solve the problem of traffic. What about you ?
Manar : (4) ..... .
Tala : Why do you think so ?
Manar : (5) ..... .
Tala : I agree with you. It'll be very expensive, but it will be a matter of time.

Step 3 Writing

"Your best invention for the future"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

General Exercises

On Lessons 1 & 2

Understand Apply Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. What does Hoda love ?
   a. Sports b. Swimming
   c. Shopping online d. History
2. What does shopping online save ?
   a. Time b. Money c. Water d. Pollution
3. Where can she shop online ? - At ..... .
   a. shops b. school c. home d. work
4. Hoda can buy what she needs in a few ..... at home.
   a. hours b. minutes c. places d. colours

(Benha - Qalyoubia 2024)

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mazen is talking to Ali who bought some clothes last weekend.

Mazen : Hi, Ali. Where did you go last weekend ?
Ali : Hi, Mazen. (1) ..... .
Mazen : Shopping ! (2) ..... ?
Ali : I bought a T-shirt and a pair of sunglasses.
Mazen : (3) ..... ?
Ali : I went with my brother.
Mazen : How did you go ?
Ali : (4) ..... .
Mazen : Did your brother buy anything ?
Ali : (5) ..... .

(East Alexandria- Alexandria 2024)

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Many cars on the road cause more ..... .
   a. floods b. inventions c. pollution d. earthquakes
2. Scientists ..... that we won't use oil in the near future.
   a. build b. repeat c. predict d. invent
3. The ..... can help you listen to music on the bus. *(Ayiat - Giza 2024)*
   a. headphones b. robots c. screens d. glasses

4. The road is not big enough for cars, but you can go down it on a/an ..... . *(Shoubra - Cairo 2023)*

a. plane b. invention c. motorbike d. tool

5. If everyone ..... online, the shops in our cities will close.

a. shopped b. shop c. shops d. is shopping

(East Alexandria - Alexandria 2024)

6. Scientists think that this medicine ..... useful for coronavirus. It's amazing. *(Ain Shams - Cairo 2022)*

a. aren't b. won't be c. are d. will be

7. I don't have many ..... . This is the only solution.

a. equipment b. choices c. advice d. information

8. The internet is a great ..... . *(Boulaq El Dakrour - Giza 2024)*

a. discovery b. invention c. panel d. coat

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. In the future, people ..... (travelled) by rockets. *(Ayiat - Giza 2024)*
2. If Rana ..... (play) well, she will win. *(Meet Abou Ghaleb – Damietta 2023)*
3. If Emad goes to England, he ..... (visit) London. *(Rafah - North Sinai 2022)*
4. What .....(would) you do if you come first ?
5. If I .....(passed) all my exams, I'll be happy.

5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Shopping online"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

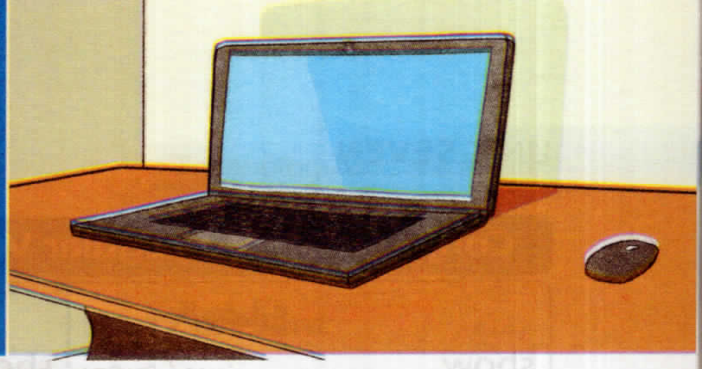
.....

(Talkha - Dakahlia - 2024)

Lessons

3&4

SB pages 6 : 8
WB pages 72 & 73



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

addicted (adj)	مدمن	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
horrible (adj)	رهيب / شنيع	lever (n)	رافعة / مقبض / ذراع تشغيل
headache (n)	صداع	explore (d) (v)	يستكشف

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

addicted - headache - horrible - social media - explore

1. Scientists went to the island to ..... new places.
2. I saw a ..... accident on the road.
3. Some young people always need to surf the internet. They are ..... to it.
4. People use ..... apps to talk to each other on the internet.

Lesson 3

SB pages 6 & 7 WB page 72

check (ed) (v)	يفحص / يتصفح	parents (n)	الوالدين
share (d) (v)	يشارك / يتشارك	planning (n)	تخطيط
expert (n)	خبير	drop (ped) (v)	يلقى - يسقط
injured (adj)	مصاب	climate change (n)	تغير المناخ

Lesson 4

SB page 8 WB page 73

time traveller (n)	مسافر عبر الزمن	copy (ied) (v), (n)	ينسخ - نسخة
time machine (n)	آلة الزمن	suddenly (adv)	فجأة
space (n)	الفضاء	planets (n)	كواكب
model (n)	نموذج	illness (n)	مرض

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
show يوضح / يبين	showed	shown
hurt يؤلم / يؤذى	hurt	hurt
sleep ينام	slept	slept
cost يتكلف	cost	cost
send يرسل	sent	sent
understand يفهم	understood	understood

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

addicted	• liking something so much that you want to do or have it all the time • always needing to do or have something مدمن
disappear	suddenly go somewhere and become impossible to find يختفى
explore	look around a place where you have never been in order to find out what is there يستكشف
headache	a pain inside your head صداع
horrible	very bad, not nice at all رهيب / شنيع
lever	a handle that you push or pull to make a machine work مقبض/رافعة
social media	websites and computer programs that allow people to communicate and share information on the internet using a computer or mobile phone وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
pull	hold something and move it towards you يسحب - يشد
by mistake	something you do or say without intending to عن طريق الخطأ
impossible	if an action or event is impossible, it cannot happen or be done مستحيل

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
possible ممكن/ محتمل	likely / probable	impossible مستحيل
pull يسحب/يجر	draw / drag	push يدفع
appear يظهر	show / come out	disappear يختفى

horrible	رهيب - شنيع	terrible	attractive	جَذَّاب
allow	يسمح	let	stop / prevent	يمنع

Prefixes & Suffixes		مقاطع بادئة وناهية	
Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
–ed	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	addicted	مدمن
im–	تعطى عكس الصفة	impossible	مستحيل
–ache	تعطى معنى ألم فى أحد أعضاء الجسم	headache	صداع

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "Headache" means a pain in someone's ..... .
   a. leg b. ear c. head d. heart
2. "Let me help you, Ali." "Let" has the same meaning as "....." .
   a. prevent b. refuse c. stop d. allow
3. To give the opposite of the adjective "possible", we add the prefix "....." .
   a. ir– b. im– c. il– d. un–
4. To turn the verb "addict" into an adjective, we add the suffix "....." .
   a. - ion b. - ment c. - ed d. -ly
5. "Drag" has the opposite meaning of the word "....." .
   a. pull b. push c. give d. attract

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 allow + مفعول + to + inf. يسمح ... أن

- Social media **allows** people **to** talk to each other on the internet.

let + مفعول + inf. يسمح ... أن

- Social media **lets** people talk to each other on the internet.

(WB page 72)

2 (be / become) addicted to + (inf. + ing) /noun مدمن لـ

- Hany **became addicted** to smoking.
- I think I **am addicted** to my phone.

(SB page 6)

3 لاحظ استخدام الفعل (make) بعدة معاني مختلفة :

* **make + مفعول + inf.** يجعل
  - It **makes** me feel sad. *(SB page 6)*
* **make + صفة + مفعول** يجعل
  - It **makes** me sad.
* **make** يصنع
  - Furniture is **made** in Damietta. *(SB page 6)*

4 لاحظ استخدام كلمة (copy) بعدة معاني مختلفة :

* **copy(n)** نسخة
  - This is a **copy** of a machine that can go through time. *(SB page 8)*
* **copy (ied) (v)** يُقلد - ينسخ
  - A parrot can **copy** people's voices.
  - Our teacher asked us to **copy** all the lesson. *(SB page 8)*

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
a piece of technology	أحد أشكال التكنولوجيا	by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ
have a headache	يعانى من صداع	say horrible things about	يقول أشياء سيئة عن
play games online	يلعب ألعاب على الإنترنت	the sun came out	أشرقت الشمس
feel worried	يشعر بالقلق	travel (through / in) time	يسافر عبر الزمن
share a photo	يشارك صورة	ready to	جاهز لـ
(have / take) a break	يأخذ راحة	turn your phone off	قم بغلق الهاتف الخاص بك
take the road south	يسلك الطريق المتجه جنوبًا	take my computer away	يقوم بسحب الكمبيوتر الخاص بـ
make friends	يكون صداقات	for too long	لمدة طويلة جدًا
go north	يتجه ناحية الشمال	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
explore the bottom of the sea	يستكشف قاع البحر	go into the past	يسافر إلى الماضي
		believe in	يؤمن بـ

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

On Lesson [3] SB page 6

1. Shady doesn't sleep very well because he usually watches videos on the internet before he goes to sleep.
2. His head often **hurts** (1) lots in the morning, too.
3. Hala hopes her parents won't get angry when she tells them about the cost of the game she found online.
4. Randa loves **social media** (2) and feels worried if she doesn't have her phone or she can't check it.
5. Adam feels sad when his friends comment badly on his photos.
6. Shady shouldn't take his phone into his bedroom at night.
7. Hala's parents should check that she can't buy anything when she plays games online.
8. It's important for Randa not to be **addicted to** (3) technology.

On Lesson [4] SB page 8

1. A group of friends meet for dinner at the Time Traveller's house.
2. The Time Traveller asks his friends if they think that it is possible to travel through time.
3. They reply it's **impossible** (4) to travel through time.
4. We can **travel through** (5) space not time.
5. The Time Traveller shows them a model of a **machine** (6) that took him two years to build.
6. When you pull the **lever** (7) the machine suddenly disappears.
7. The time traveller will **explore** (8) the past and the future.

(1) يؤذى	(2) التواصل الاجتماعى	(3) مدمن لـ	(4) مستحيل
(5) يسافر خلال	(6) آلة	(7) رافعة	(8) يستكشف

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

* Social media and its effects on young people
* Pros and cons of social media
* Your favourite video game
* Time machine

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على II من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 6



1. **Narrator** : Shady
   Shady : I'm not sleeping very well at the moment. I usually watch some videos on the internet before I go to sleep but sometimes I watch them for a few hours and then I can't sleep. My head often **hurts**(1) lots in the morning, too.
2. **Narrator** : Hala
   Hala : I found this great **online game**(2), but I didn't know that when I got new things on it, it **costs**(3) real money ! I hope my parents aren't going to be angry when I tell them how much money I spent ...
3. **Narrator** : Randa
   Randa : I love **social media**(4), I love watching videos online and I love talking to my friends on my phone. But now, I feel **worried**(5) if I don't have my phone or I can't **check**(6) it. I think it is starting to become a problem.
4. **Narrator** : Adam
   Adam : My friends and I like to put funny pictures online but when I share a photo, everyone says my clothes are not **cool**(7) or my hair looks strange. It makes me feel sad.

(1) يؤلم / يؤذى | (2) لعبة على الإنترنت | (3) تتكلف | (4) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى | (5) قلق | (6) يتصفح | (7) جذاب

on Lesson 3 SB page 6

Narrator : One
Woman : Shady, watching videos before bed is not a good idea. You should try not to take your phone into your bedroom at night.
Narrator : Two

Woman : Hala, you need to **talk to**[1] your parents. They should check that you can't buy anything when you play games online.

Narrator : Three

Woman : Randa, it is important not to become **addicted to**[2] technology. If you feel you can't live without your phone, you should try taking a break every day for an hour or more.

Narrator : Four

Woman : Oh Adam, they don't sound like good friends! Talk to them in real life and tell them how it makes you feel. If they don't change, maybe you should find some new friends.

(1) يتحدث إلى | (2) مدمن على

Reading

on Lesson 4 SB page 8

The Time Machine[1]

by H. G. Wells

London, England, 1895



A group of friends meet for dinner at the Time Traveller's house. After dinner, the Time Traveller asks his friends if they think that it is possible to **travel through time**[2].

"It's impossible !" they reply, "We can only travel through space, not time".

The Time Traveller shows them a small **model**[3] of a machine that he has in his hand.

"This is a **copy**[4] of a machine that I **believe**[5] can go through time. It took me two years to **build**[6]", he tells them. The friends laugh.

"Pull this **lever**[7]," he tells one of **them**.

They feel some wind and then the machine suddenly disappears !

"Where is it ?" the other men ask.

"The model machine is in the future," the Time Traveller says. "Would you like to see the real machine ?" he asks.

He takes them to another room. Inside the room is another, bigger machine. It is not finished.

"In this machine," he says "I will **explore**[8] the past and the future !"

(1) آلة الزمن | (2) يسافر عبر الزمن | (3) نموذج | (4) نسخة | (5) يعتقد | (6) يصمم | (7) رافعة | (8) يستكشف

Answer the following questions :

Extracting information إستخراج معلومات

Learn 1. How long did it take to build the time machine ?

- It took two years to build.

Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

Practise 2. What does the underlined pronoun **them** in the third paragraph refer to ?

..... .

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

▸ **Key vocabulary**

1. Facebook is an example of ..... . *(Dokki - Giza 2024)*
   a. game b. social media c. subjects d. food
2. My mother is ..... to spicy food, so she eats a lot of food with pepper.
   a. addicted b. amazed c. keen d. interested
3. Pull the ..... to make this machine work. *(Bab El- Shariaa - Cairo 2024)*
   a. lever b. lift c. liver d. level

SB , WB and Previous Exams

4. When you do something by ..... , you do it without planning or wanting to do it. *(West Mansoura - Dakahlia 2024)*
   a. plan b. mistake c. wrong d. yourself
5. The opposite of "impossible" is ..... . *(El-Hamool - Kafr El Sheikh 2024)*
   a. possible b. bad c. true d. funny
6. I spent hours watching videos online and now I have a/an ..... . *(Helwan - Cairo 2023)*
   a. headache b. headphone c. earring d. toothache
7. SB We can only travel through ..... , not time. *(Rasheed - Damietta 2022)*
   a. age b. seasons c. space d. advice
8. WB If you don't ..... the lesson, you should tell the teacher.
   a. stay b. try c. understand d. visit

El-Moasser Exercises

9. How often do you ..... social media ?
   a. wear b. save c. have d. check
10. My father is a/an ..... doctor. He knows everything about medicine.
    a. lazy b. expert c. happy d. ready
11. I can't find my watch. It has ..... .
    a. hurt b. found c. sent d. disappeared

▸ **Definitions**

12. "....." means to look around a place where you have never been in order to find out what is there.
    a. Explore b. Help c. Allow d. Send

13. ..... means very bad not nice at all. *(El Waily - Cairo 2024)*
a. Impossible b. Exciting c. Horrible d. Free

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Leen is addicted to ..... ice cream.
a. eat b. eating c. ate d. eats

15. You should believe ..... the importance of a good education.
a. in b. of c. by d. with

16. You should ..... a break after sitting on a computer for a long time.
a. make b. have c. do d. feel

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Discussion about using technology every day

مناقشة عن استخدام التكنولوجيا يوميًا

Questions	Answers
1. What types of technology do you use every day ? - ما هي أنواع التكنولوجيا التي تستخدمها كل يوم ؟	- I always use my smartphone, laptop and computer. - استخدم دائمًا هاتفي الذكي والكمبيوتر المحمول والحاسوب.
2. What do you use these types of technology for ? - فيما تستخدم هذه الأنواع من التكنولوجيا؟	- I use them in communication, education and health. - استخدمهم في التواصل والتعليم والصحة.
3. Which is the most important piece of technology for you ? Why ? - ما هي أهم صور التكنولوجيا بالنسبة لك ؟ ولماذا ؟	- I think it is my smartphone. Because I use it to search for information, reading news and entertainment. - أعتقد أنه هاتفي الذكي وذلك بسبب أنني أستخدمه في البحث عن المعلومات وقراءة الأخبار والتسلية.

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

"Video games" **ألعاب الفيديو**

"Video games" **ألعاب الفيديو**

1. Playing video games is my favourite hobby. ١. ألعاب الفيديو هوايتي المفضلة.
2. I spend too much time online, but it's not a good habit.
٢. أقضى ساعات طويلة على الإنترنت لكنها ليست عادة جيدة.
3. I love playing video games with my friends. ٣. أحب أن ألعب ألعاب الفيديو مع أصدقائي.
4. I should spend my time doing useful things.
٤. يجب أن أقضى وقتي في أداء أشياء مفيدة.

III Language

If / When + should / shouldn't for giving advice

إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام If / When + should / shouldn't بمعنى إذا / عندما ... ينبغى أن / ينبغى ألا ...

Formation التكوين

1 If / When (عندما - إذا / لو) + present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) , subject (الفاعل) + should + [inf.].... (مصدر الفعل)

تستخدم [If / when + should + inf.] للنصح بفعل أشياء جيدة أو مفيدة :

Subject (الفاعل) + should + [inf.]..... (مصدرالفعل) if / when (عندما - إذا / لو) present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط)

ex. - The tourists should visit the Pyramids if they are in Egypt for the first time.

لاحظ وضع comma (,) قبل بداية الجملة الثانية فى حالة وجود [If / When] في البداية.

2 If / When (عندما - إذا / لو) + present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) , subject (الفاعل) + shouldn't + [inf.].... (مصدر الفعل)

تستخدم [If /When + shouldn't + inf.] للنصح بعدم فعل أشياء غير مفيدة أو غير جيدة :

Subject (الفاعل) + shouldn't + [inf.]..... (مصدرالفعل) if / when (عندما - إذا / لو) present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط)

ex. - If you don't know someone, you shouldn't make friends with them online.

- You shouldn't stay outside for too long if it is very hot in the desert.

لاحظ يمكن إستخدام If / When + should / shouldn't فى صيغة الاستفهام كالتالى :

3 Should + subject + [inf.]..... (مصدر الفعل) if / when present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) ?

ex. - Should I turn my phone off if I go to bed ?

- Yes, you should. - No, you shouldn't.

4 Question word (كلمة إستفهام) + should + subject (الفاعل) + [inf.]..... (مصدر الفعل) if / when present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) ?

ex. - What should I do when I feel ill ? - You should see a doctor.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. When you have a problem, you ..... tell your parents. *(El Mahmoudia - Beheira 2024)*

a. can't b. mustn't c. may d. should

2. If we want to stop climate change, we ..... together. *(Hosh Eissa - Beheira 2024)*

a. working b. worked c. should work d. works

3. ..... see a doctor if he is tired ? *(Sidi Ghazi - Kafr El Sheikh 2024)*

a. He should b. Shall he c. He shall d. Should he

4. WB You ..... swim in the sea if it is very cold.

a. has to b. had to c. should d. shouldn't

5. If you ..... do your homework, you should apologize to your teacher.

a. didn't b. don't c. doesn't d. couldn't *(Khalifa & Mokattam - Cairo 2023)*

6. What should you ..... if you feel worried about something? *(Fakous - Sharkia 2023)*

a. doing b. do c. did d. do to

7. SB Should I ..... for too long on the internet if I have a headache ?
a. stays b. stay c. to stay d. staying

El-Moasser Exercises

8. She shouldn't go outside when it ..... dark.
a. get b. gets c. is getting d. getting
9. You ..... eat many sweets if you have diabetes مرض السكري.
a. should b. must c. shouldn't d. haven't
10. If you want to get high mark in maths, you ..... well.
a. shouldn't study b. should study
c. don't study d. studied

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. If she is ill, she should ..... (goes) to hospital. *(Kafr El Dawar - Beheira 2024)*
2. You shouldn't ..... (drinking) so much coffee. It's bad for you. *(Sharabiya - Cairo 2024)*
3. You ..... (should) stay up too late if you have to get up early. *(New Cairo - Cairo 2024)*
4. SB If you ..... (thinks) that your friend is addicted to social media, you should advise him.
5. SB They should check that you can't buy anything when you ..... (played) games online.
6. WB When you drop rubbish on the floor, you ..... (picked) it up.
7. SB If you ..... (not know) someone, you shouldn't make friends with them online.

El-Moasser Exercises

8. Should we ..... (staying) at home if it's really hot outside ?
9. You should ..... (turns) the lights off when you go to bed.
10. **A :** What ..... (I do) if I've a problem ? **B :** You should tell your parents.

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات فى أسئلة الـ Paragraphs, E-mails & Dialogues
قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.
80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & E-mails

Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	Step 2 Speaking اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
Types of technology **Read and complete :** 1. What types of ..... do you use in your daily life ? تكنولوجيا - I usually use a smartphone, a laptop and a tablet. 2. Which ..... is the most useful in your school study ? نوع - Of course, the tablet. 3. Do you have any ..... with technology ? مشاكل - Yes, I do.	**Complete the following dialogue :** **Amr and Ali are talking about technology.** Amr : Do you know much about technology ? Ali : (1) ..... . Amr : What types of technology do you use every day ? Ali : (2) ..... . Amr : (3) ..... ? Ali : I use the internet to communicate with many friends online. Amr : (4) ..... ? Ali : Yes, sometimes I've problems online. Amr : What should you do if you are worried about something online ? Ali : (5) ..... . *(Edfu - Aswan 2024)*	**Write a paragraph on :** **"Types of technology"**
Social media 1. What is the most interesting thing on ..... ? التواصل الاجتماعى - It's talking to my friends. 2. What do you feel if you can't ..... social media websites? يتفحص - يتصفح - I feel worried. 3. What else do you like on social media ..... ? مواقع - I like playing video games with my friends online.	**Reem and Mai are talking about computer games.** Reem : Can I ask you some questions ? Mai : (1) ..... . Reem : (2) ..... ? Mai : No. Not all computer games are bad. Some are good. Reem : (3) ..... ? Mai : Because some of them can help you learn things. Reem : Do you think it's good to play games late at night ? Mai : (4) ..... . Reem : What should I do instead ? Mai : (5)	**"Social media"**

General Exercises

On Lessons 3 & 4

Understand Apply Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Maha is reading an article about technology.

Rania : What are you reading about, Maha ?

Maha : (1) ..... .

Rania : Do you know much about technology ?

Maha : (2) ..... .

Rania : (3) ..... ?

Maha : The type of technology I use every day is the internet.

Rania : Do you think it is the most important invention ?

Maha : (4) ..... .

Rania : (5) ..... ?

Maha : Because it helps us study and do research.

(El-Sayeda Zeinab - Cairo 2024)

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I spent a lot of money on an online game by ..... .

(East Alexandria - Alexandria 2024)

a. mistake b. luck c. hand d. train

2. My little sister is ..... to sweets. She always wants to eat them.

(El Khanka - Qalyoubia 2024)

a. interested b. horrible c. addicted d. bored

3. Facebook, Whatsapp, Instagram are examples of ..... .

a. food b. games c. subjects d. social media

4. My parents don't ..... me to watch TV at night. *(Maadi - Cairo 2023)*

a. drop b. let c. allow d. share

5. WB You shouldn't ..... outside for too long if it is very hot in the desert.

a. try b. swim c. stay d. visit

6. ..... is a pain in your head.
   a. Stomach ache b. Backache c. Toothache d. Headache

7. When you go to bed, you ..... turn your mobile off.
   (Shebin El Koum - Menoufia 2024)
   a. would b. have c. shouldn't d. should

8. ..... you have a headache, you should go to bed. *(Belbis - Sharkia 2024)*
   a. Unless b. By c. If d. Without

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. When you see a snake, you should .....(going) away from it.
   (East Zagazig - Sharkia 2024)

2. Dina should visit her aunt if she .....(go) to Alexandria.
   (Omraniya - Giza 2023)

3. If you ..... (not feel) well in school, you should tell a teacher.
   (El Shohada - Monufia 2022)

4. You shouldn't ..... (walking) in the sun if it is very hot.

5. SB You shouldn't watch videos on the internet if your head .....
   (hurt) .

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Types of technology"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons

5&6

SB pages 9 & 10
WB pages 74 & 75



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

dangers (n)	مخاطر	debate (n)	مناظرة / مناقشة
screen (n)	شاشة	health (n)	صحة
hearing (n)	حاسة السمع	order (ed) (v), (n)	يأمر / يطلب - طلب
faithful (adj)	مخلص	damage (d) (v)	يتلف - يدمر

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

hearing - damaged - screen - faithful - health

1. My mobile fell on the ground so the ..... broke.
2. Using headphones too much affects تؤثر my ..... badly.
3. I love my friend so much. He's very ..... .
4. Pollution causes dangerous ..... problems.

Lesson 5

SB page 9 WB page 74

text (ed) (v)	يرسل رسائل نصية	ear problems	مشاكل بالسمع
thought (n)	فكرة	view (n)	رأي - وجهة نظر
eye problems (n)	مشاكل في البصر	reasons (n)	أسباب / مبررات

Lesson 6

SB page 10 WB page 75

faithfully (adv)	بإخلاص / بوفاء	surname (n)	لقب [اسم العائلة]
sincerely (adv)	بإخلاص	wheel (n)	عجلة / إطار
billion (n)	بليون / مليار	forms of transport (n)	أنواع / أشكال المواصلات
regards (n)	تحيات	wish (ed) (v), (n)	يتمنى / أمنية
robots (n)	أجهزة الإنسان الآلي	website (n)	موقع إلكتروني

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
bring يحضر / يسبب	brought	brought
teach يُعلّم	taught	taught

Study this definition

ادرس هذا التعريف

order	ask someone to make, supply or deliver food or an object يطلب

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
positive إيجابى	hopeful / good	negative سلبى
formal رسمى	official	informal غير رسمى
loud عالى الصوت	noisy	low منخفض

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
–ing	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	hearing حاسة السمع
–ly	تحول الصفة إلى ظرف	faithfully بإخلاص

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Don't be ..... . Try to be positive.
   a. informal b. ugly c. negative d. low
2. The noun from the verb "hear" is ".....".
   a. hear b. hears c. hearing d. heard
3. The opposite of the word "informal" is ".....".
   a. official b. strong c. noisy d. positive
4. The synonym of the word "loud" is ".....".
   a. noisy b. low c. weak d. official
5. To change the adjective "faithful" into an adverb, we add the suffix ".....".
   a. –able b. –tion c. –al d. –ly

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 look forward to + (inf. + ing) / noun

يتطلع إلى / يتشوق إلى

- She **looks forward to** hearing from you.
- I'm **looking forward to** the summer holiday.

(WB page 75)

2 change + اسم + for + اسم

يستبدل...بـ...

- I'd like to **change** the phone **for** a new one.

(SB page 10)

3 Compound nouns

الأسماء المركبة

الاسم المركب : يتكون من كلمتين، قد يكتبا منفصلتين [كلمتين] أو متصلتين [كلمة واحدة].

- eye problems مشاكل بالنظر
- health problems مشاكل صحية
- headache صداع
- headphone سماعة الأذن

(SB page 9)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions

bring problems	يسبب مشاكل	give a headache	يسبب صداع
get enough sleep	يحصل على قدر كاف من النوم	get a headache	يصاب بالصداع
stay healthy	يظل بصحة جيدة	check social media	يتصفح وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
have eye problems	يعاني من مشاكل في البصر	make it look interesting	يجعلها تبدو رائعة
children aged 6 – 9	الأطفال ذوى الأعمار من السادسة إلى التاسعة		

Prepositions

on screens	على الشاشات	write down	يدون ملاحظات
bad for	ضار لـ	in my opinion	في رأيي ....
from my point of view	من وجهة نظرى	through headphones	من خلال سماعات الرأس
go on holiday	يذهب فى أجازة	hear from	يتلقى أخبار من

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

On Lesson [5] SB page 9

1. When you **text**(1), check social media or watch videos online late into the night, you don't get enough sleep.
2. You can have eye problems or headaches if you spend a lot of time **on screens**(2).
3. Listening to loud music or films through headphones can **damages**(3) your hearing.
4. When you spend hours playing video games or watching TV, you don't spend enough time doing exercise outside.

On Lesson [6] SB page 10

1. Lama Sabri ordered a new mobile phone last week.
2. She opened the box and found that the screen was damaged.
3. She would like to change the phone for a new one.
4. Haytham Shabana ordered a new game last week but he found that the game for children **aged**(4) 6-9 **by mistake**(5).
5. He'd like to change the game for a new one that is for the correct age.
6. Fatma ordered a jacket online but it was the wrong colour.

(1) يرسل رسائل نصية | (2) على الشاشات | (3) يتلف | (4) ذو عمر | (5) عن طريق الخطأ

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

* The dangers of technology
* Disadvantages of shopping online

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على II من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

on Lesson 5 SB page 9

The dangers of technology



Sleep : Many people text, check social media or watch videos online late into the night. Then they don't get enough sleep.



Eye problems : If you spend a lot of time on screens, you can have eye problems and headaches.



Ear problems : Listening to loud music or films through headphones can damage your hearing.



Exercise : Many people spend hours playing video games or watching TV and don't spend enough time outside doing exercise.

on Lesson 6 SB page 10

Dear Sir / Madam,

I **ordered**(1) a new mobile phone last week and the delivery was today. When I opened the box, the screen was **damaged**(2). I would like to change the phone for a new one that is not damaged. Can you tell me how I can do this ?

Yours faithfully,(3)

Lama Sabri

(1) طلبت | (2) تالف | (3) المخلص لك

on Lesson 6 WB page 75

Dear Sir / Madam,
I ordered a new game last week on your website. The delivery was today. When I opened the box, I found that I ordered a game for children aged 6-9 **by mistake**(1). It did not say this on your website. I was not happy about this because I want to play the game with my friends, and we are all 13 or 14.
I would like to change the game for a new one that is for the correct age. Can you tell me how I can do this ?
I look forward to hearing(2) from you.
Yours faithfully,
Haytham Shabana

(1) عن طريق الخطأ | (2) انتظر الرد

on Lesson 6 WB page 75

Hi Fatma,
The jacket I ordered online arrived today, but it is the wrong colour ! I ordered a blue jacket and this one is red. I'm going to ask them how to change it !
See you soon,
love Maya

Listening

on Lesson 5 WB page 74

Debate about : All computer games are bad for you.
Hanan: Do you think that all computer games are bad for you, Lama ?
Lama : From my point of view, not all computer games are bad. Some of them can help you to learn things.
Hanan: I agree. If you don't play computer games all the time, it shouldn't be a problem.
Lama : It's not a good idea to play games late at night though.
Hanan: I agree. In my opinion, playing games late at night stops you sleeping.
Lama : Yes, it's a good idea to only play quiet, calm games in the evening.
Hanan: If you only play games that teach you things in the evening, it should be fine.

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. The sense of ..... is one of the most important senses in the human body.
   a. headphone b. hearing c. reading d. listening
2. ..... friends are very important in our life.
   a. Faithful b. Selfish c. Proud d. Bad
3. The ..... of technology are more than its benefits.
   a. advantages b. orders c. dangers d. screens
4. After a long ..... , we all agreed on the project.
   a. screen b. debate c. sleep d. diet

SB , WB and Previous Exams

5. From my point of ..... , we should recycle all our plastic. *(Mit Ghamr - Dakahlia 2024)*
   a. review b. action c. interview d. view
6. What is the ..... for your coming late ? *(Sinnuris - Fayoum 2024)*
   a. season b. reason c. cause d. point
7. SB I would like to ..... the phone for a new one that is not damaged. *(El Tal El Kebeer - Sharkia 2022)*
   a. watch b. change c. exercise d. text
8. You should ..... enough sleep. You look really tired. *(Talkha - Dakahlia 2023)*
   a. text b. get c. teach d. bring
9. I ..... a new camera online, but it didn't arrive. *(Helwan - Cairo 2023)*
   a. started b. improved c. ordered d. damaged

El-Moasser Exercises

10. I prefer ..... my friends to calling them.
    a. feeling b. texting c. fighting d. bringing
11. Cars, buses and planes are forms of .....
    a. nationalities b. countries c. transport d. technology
12. Her name is Leen Ashraf Fathi. Her ..... is Fathi.
    a. name b. surname c. subject d. object

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Watching much TV can ..... you a headache.
    a. stop b. help c. give d. make
14. I have a daughter ..... seventeen.
    a. age b. ages c. aged d. ago

15. I'm looking forward to ..... a cup of tea. *(Kerdasa - Giza 2024)*
a. drink b. drunk c. will drink d. drinking

16. You should eat fruit and vegetables to ..... healthy.
a. stay b. give c. cause d. damage

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

A debate about technology * مناقشة عن التكنولوجيا

Positive opinions آراء إيجابية	Negative opinions آراء سلبية
1. Using technology to help you exercise is a good idea. - استخدام التكنولوجيا لمساعدتك في أن تتدرب هي فكرة جيدة.	- From my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches. - من وجهة نظري، الإفراط في استخدام التكنولوجيا يمكن أن يسبب لك آلام بالرأس.
2. If you use technology well, it should help you become more healthy. - إذا استخدمت التكنولوجيا جيدًا، ينبغي أن يساعدك ذلك على أن تكون أكثر صحة.	- In my opinion, all technology can be bad for your health. - فى رأيي، جميع أنواع التكنولوجيا قد تكون مضرة بصحتك.
3. If you don't become addicted to technology, you will be fine. - إذا لم تصبح مدمنًا للتكنولوجيا، سوف تكون على ما يرام.	- It isn't a good idea to spend too much time watching TV or playing on computer. - إنها ليست فكرة جيدة أن تقضى الكثير من الوقت فى مشاهدة التلفاز أو اللعب على الحاسوب.

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

Writing tips نصائح للكتابة

- Use these phrases to start or end a formal email.
- استخدم هذه العبارات عند بدء أو إنهاء رسالة بريد إلكتروني رسمي.

Starting phrases عبارات البدء

١. يمكن أن تبدأ رسالة البريد الإلكتروني باستخدام [Dear Sir / Madam]
بمعني [عزيزي السيد / عزيزتي السيدة] [في حالة عدم معرفة اسم المرسل إليه].
٢. يمكن أيضا استخدام هذه الاختصارات [اللقب Mr / Mrs / Ms + surname] بعد Dear
[فى حالة معرفة اسم المرسل إليه].

Ending phrases عبارات الخاتمة

١. تستخدم هذه العبارة التالية في حالة معرفة الشخص :
- Yours sincerely
- المخلص لكم / تفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام

٢. تستخدم هذه العبارات التالية في حالة معرفة الشخص جيدًا :
- Best wishes
- مع أطيب التمنيات
- Kind regards
- أطيب التحيات

٣. تستخدم هذه العبارة التالية في حالة عدم معرفة الشخص :
- Yours faithfully
- صديقك المخلص

General Exercises

On Lessons 5 & 6

Understand Apply Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. ..... can be bad for your health.
   a. Food b. Technology c. Sleep d. Time
2. Playing computer games for a long time causes ..... problems.
   a. eye b. nose c. mouth d. hair
3. You can also feel ..... and back pains when you play computer games.
   a. brain b. heart c. lung d. neck
4. Listening to loud music through headphones can ..... your hearing.
   a. spend b. build c. damage d. save

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It is my habit to ..... social media to get the latest news. *(Basyoun - Gharbia 2024)*
   a. wear b. save c. check d. have
2. Social media is very useful, but it has ..... , too. *(Qalyoub - Qalyoubia 2023)*
   a. information b. ways c. hobbies d. dangers
3. ..... will help us do many dangerous and difficult jobs in the future.
   a. Animals b. Robots c. People d. Insects
4. Spending a lot of time on ..... causes some eye problems.
   a. headphones b. boards c. screens d. music
5. **A :** What is your ..... about modern technology ?
   B : I think it has made life easier.
   a. problem b. opinion c. headache d. app
6. If you are worried about something online, you ..... your parents. *(Ashmoun - Menofia 2022)*
   a. can't tell b. tells c. should tell d. have told

7. WB From my point of ..... , not all computer games are bad.
   a. new b. view c. wish d. thought
8. At the class, you ..... raise your hand when you want to ask a question. *(Desouk - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)*
   a. shouldn't b. have c. won't d. should

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. When you have free time, you shouldn't ..... (wasted) it. *(Heliopolis - Cairo 2024)*
2. If it rains, I ..... (not play) outside. *(El Hussinya - Sharkia 2022)*
3. You ..... (shouldn't) see a doctor when you feel sick.
4. Maybe Mr Helmy ..... (send) me an email. *(Samanoud - Gharbia 2023)*
5. He ..... (won't) get a better job if he passes his exam.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Advantages and disadvantages of the internet"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Guessing the meaning of Vocabulary in context

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [تخمين معنى مفردة من سياق النص] وهنا تحتاج لقراءة النص جيدًا لتخمين المعنى.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question :

The most **popular** site is Facebook. More than one billion people use Facebook all over the world. It helps you to share news and events with your friends. You also can make videos and share them live. The problem is that a lot of people especially young men and women, spend too much time using it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The underlined word "**popular**" means "..... ".

a. famous b. unknown

c. uncommon d. dull

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تخمين معنى مفردة من النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تستطيع تخمين معنى المفردة واختيار المعنى الدقيق.

2 Speaking

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] معرفتك لقدر كاف من [Language Functions] والتى غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة

Complete the following dialogue :

Amira is talking with Heba about mobile phones.

Amira: What type of technology do you use every day ?

Heba : (1) ..... .

Amira: (2) ..... ?

Heba : Yes, I love watching videos online on my phone.

Amira: (3) ..... ?

Heba : I always talk to my friends on the phone.

Amira: How do you feel if you don't have your phone ?

Heba : (4) ..... .

Amira: Do you think you are addicted to technology ?

Heba : (5) ..... .

التحدى تريد التحدث عن [التكنولوجيا] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التي قد تحدث بينك وبين زميلك.

3 Correction notes

• الهدف من هذا الجزء
- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

Review

◄ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

1 Subject (فاعل) + will ('ll) / will not (won't) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)	تستخدم للتنبؤ بأحداث مستقبلية بدون دليل ويستخدم معها كلمات تعبر عن المستقبل مثل tomorrow / in the future / next
2 If / When → زمن مضارع بسيط → زمن مستقبل بسيط	تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى [If] للتحدث عن أشياء نتوقع حدوثها فى المستقبل.
3 If / When → زمن مضارع بسيط → subject + should / shouldn't + inf.	تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى [If] لإعطاء النصيحة.
4 Subject + should / shouldn't + inf.	تستخدم (should) لإعطاء النصيحة ويتبعها المصدر.

Learn

◄ تعلم

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 Do you think that we will ..... [invents] a flying car ?	invent	(will) يتبعها مصدر الفعل
2 You should ..... [made] all the decisions yourself.	make	(should) يتبعها مصدر الفعل
3 If I go shopping, I ..... [spend] a lot of money.	will spend	حالة (If) الشرطية الأولى الجزء الثانى من الجملة مستقبل.

Practise

◄ تدرب

Write the Reason : ◄ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة

1 He will get good marks if he ..... [study] hard.	studies	.....
2 Adel ..... [go] to England next week.	will go	.....
3 When you feel ill, you ..... [shouldn't] see a doctor.	should	.....
4 If you're sick, you ..... [to take] the medicine.	should take	.....

Write the Correction : ◄ اكتب التصحيح

1 If Ali ..... [play] well, he will win the game.	.....	حالة If الأولى والجزء الأول من الجملة مضارع بسيط
2 I'm sure more people ..... [use] electric cars in the future.	.....	الجملة تعبر عن المستقبل
3 We shouldn't ..... [damaging] the environment.	.....	بعد [shouldn't] مصدر الفعل
4 If she comes first, she ..... [be] very happy.	.....	حالة [If] الأولى والجزء الثانى من الجملة مستقبل.

مراجعة عامة على Unit 7 فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

invention	اختراع
headphones	سماعات الرأس
translate	يترجم
motorbike	دراجة بخارية
helicopter	طائرة هليوكوبتر
speed	سرعة
app	تطبيق على الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف الذكي
invent	يخترع
delivery	تسليم الطلبات للمنازل
addicted	مدمن
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ
horrible	رهيب / فظيع
headache	صداع
impossible	مستحيل
pull	يسحب
lever	رافعة / مقبض
explore	يستكشف
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

Language

1. Use will ('ll) and will not (or won't) to talk about future predictions.

• تستخدم (will/won't) للتعبير عن تنبؤات مستقبلية.

- The headphones will be very useful for travelling.
- The machine won't be able to fly very high.

2. Use if/when + present simple and future simple to express prediction.

• تستخدم الصيغة السابقة للتعبير عن التنبؤ.

- If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close.
- I will do all my shopping online when I am older.

3. Use if/when + should / shouldn't to give advice.

• تستخدم الصيغة السابقة لإعطاء نصيحة.

- They should check that you can't buy anything when you play games online.
- If they don't change, maybe you should find some new friends.

Speaking

Giving opinions about inventions and technology

إعطاء الآراء عن الاختراعات والتكنولوجيا :

- I think I am addicted to my phone.
- Watching videos before going to bed is not a good idea.
- In my opinion, all technology is bad for your health.
- From my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches.

Review on unit 7
قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Questions collected from previous exams

تدريبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I predict that we ..... flying cars in 20 years' time. *(West Alexandria - Alexandria 2024)*
   a. 'll have b. have c. 're having d. had
2. The internet is one of the greatest ..... of the time. *(Menouf - Menoufia 2024)*
   a. translations b. corrections
   c. inventions d. predictions
3. This shop offers free ..... to your home.
   a. apps b. choices
   c. delivery d. pollution *(North Suez - Suez 2023)*
4. I have many problems ..... my car, so I took it to the mechanic. *(Dokki - Giza 2022)*
   a. on b. at c. of d. with
5. I have many ..... on my mobile, like Facebook.
   a. machines b. tools c. apps d. tabs *(Manshaat al Qanater - Giza 2023)*
6. He drinks a lot of coffee. He became ..... to it.
   a. expert b. good
   c. horrible d. addicted *(El Sahel - Cairo 2023)*
7. If I meet Fatma, I ..... give her the phone.
   a. would b. will c. am d. was *(Kotour - Gharbia 2024)*
8. I can play chess with my friends ..... .
   a. on air b. online c. offline d. on desk *(Seidi Salem - Kafr El Sheikh 2023)*
9. If you ..... to get much money, you should look for a good job. *(West Tanta - Gharbia 2024)*
   a. want b. wanted
   c. wants d. wanting
10. Old cars and factory rubbish cause the problem of ..... . *(Edfu - Aswan - 2024)*
    a. pollution b. information
    c. translation d. research

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If you ..... (**saves**) money, you won't regret it. *(West Alexandria – Alexandria 2024)*
2. If you want to earn more money, you ..... (**shouldn't**) work harder. *(North Sinai 2023)*
3. If my mother ..... (**have**) more free time, we will go out. *(East Zagazig - Sharkia 2024)*
4. I am looking forward to ..... (**visit**) the museum. *(El Hamoul – Kafr El Sheikh 2023)*
5. When you feel ill, you should ..... (**saw**) a doctor. *(West Mansoura – Dakahlia 2023)*

3. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

"How to keep safe online"

.....

.....

Test on unit 7

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصويبه

● Understand ○ Apply ● Create

A. Listening

قم بحل إختبار تراكمي في الملحق

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. What did he order last week ?
   a. A new mobile phone b. An old mobile phone
   c. A new computer d. An old computer
2. When was the delivery ?
   a. Yesterday b. Last week c. Last night d. Today
3. What was damaged ?
   a. The box b. The delivery c. The screen d. The machine
4. The shop sent him a new ..... .
   a. screen b. mobile c. box d. laptop

(Temay El-Amdeed - Dakahlia 2024)

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rania is tired because she spends many hours on her mobile phone.

Rasha : You look tired these days.
Rania : I don't know why. (1) ..... .
Rasha : Headaches! (2) ..... ?
Rania : Yes, I spend many hours on my mobile phone.
Rasha : (3) ..... ?
Rania : To check my social media.
Rasha : Social media ! (4) ..... .
Rania : I have a lot of free time. How can I spend it ?
Rasha : (5) ..... .
Rania : You are right. If I do exercise, I'll be healthy.

(West Mansoura - Dakahlia 2024)

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Using **modern** technology is great. Most people today are addicted to their mobile phones and laptops. They use them to read the news, study, do projects and to have fun. Technology makes life easier and saves time; just stay at home and hold your mobile. But ! many people stay late at night using their mobiles, so **they** don't have enough sleep. Also spending a lot of time on screens causes headaches and eye

problems. Moreover, playing video games and talking to friends on social media for long hours stops you from doing sports. In my opinion, technology is not good all the time.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ..... .
   a. mobiles b. screens c. people d. games
2. The underlined word "**modern**" means ..... .
   a. new b. classical c. old d. ancient

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What is the main idea of the passage ?
   .....
4. Why shouldn't we spend much time on screens ?
   .....
5. What can stop you from doing sports ?
   .....
6. Why do you think many people use technology today?
   .....

(Abu Teeg - Assuit 2024)

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mona always wears ..... because she loves listening to music. *(El-Baliana - Souhag 2024)*
   a. gloves b. trousers c. headphones d. helmets
2. Don't use too much social media or you will be ..... to them. *(Aswan 2024)*
   a. worried b. useful c. addicted d. possible
3. This factory uses solar ..... to make electricity. *(Samanoud - Gharbia 2023)*
   a. canals b. panels c. turbines d. controls
4. Social media is very useful, but it has ..... , too. *(Kalyoub - Kalyoubia 2023)*
   a. information b. dangers c. hobbies d. ways
5. Don't ..... friends with bad people. *(Luxor 2023)*
   a. give b. wear c. have d. make

6. **A :** Is it ..... to enter the theatre without a ticket ?
B : No, you can't.
a. possible b. impossible c. bad d. dangerous

7. When it rains, you ..... take your umbrella. *(Matai – Minia 2024)*
a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. need

8. If you want to get to the park quickly, you ..... the bus.
a. takes b. shouldn't take c. should take d. took

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If she ..... (be) busy, she won't watch TV. *(Abu Teeg - Assuit 2024)*
2. Tomorrow, I think it ..... (be) windy.
3. If Hala does the housework, I ..... (won't reward) her.
4. If Huda ..... (visit) Cairo, she will see the Cairo Tower. *(Hihya - Sharkia 2022)*
5. If you feel tired, you ..... (shouldn't) have a rest.

E. Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Farid to tell him about "How technology is useful".
Your name is Ali and your email address is ali@yahoo.com.
Your friend's email address is farid@gmail.com.

From
To
Subject

....., ...
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Shopping online ..... our time.
   a. wastes b. saves c. takes d. spends
2. If more people shop online, there will be less ..... .
   a. pollution b. shops c. cars d. motors

2. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Ali is asking Khalid about online shopping.

Ali : Hello, Khalid ! Do you like online shopping ?
Khalid : Hello, Ali ! (1) ..... .
Ali : (2) ..... ?
Khalid : Because it saves time.
Ali : (3) ..... ?
Khalid : Yes, it is easy to buy things online.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I like to use the Facebook ..... on my smartphone.
   a. app b. object c. virus d. programme
2. My teacher always asks me to write the ..... of any school project.
   a. voice b. sounds c. resources d. speed
3. ..... are like planes, but they do not have wings !
   a. Headphones b. Motorbikes
   c. Helicopters d. Trains
4. Life ..... easier in the future.
   a. is b. was c. will be d. were
5. If you feel ill, you ..... a doctor.
   a. sees b. saw c. should see d. would see

4. Read the following, then answer the questions :

Technology has become important because it saves time. Although it made our life easier and more comfortable, it has bad effect on our lives. Computer addiction can cause health problems such as bad eyesight and becoming fat, so if you aren't addicted to **it** you will be fine.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the passage about ?
   .....
2. Why do you like technology ?
   .....
3. What are the bad effects of using computer too much ?
   .....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun **it** refers to ..... .
   a. computer b. sports
   c. dangers d. problems
5. Computers help you because they save ..... .
   a. health b. money c. time d. books

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Adam will **flies** to England next month. (.....)
2. If Hoda **play** well, she will win. (.....)
3. When you **felt** tired, you should have a rest. (.....)
4. What **would** you do if you come first? (.....)

6. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

"How to be safe online"

.....
.....

نموذج الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

Mohamed : Do you like shopping online ?

Ali : (1) ..... .

a. Yes, I am b. Yes, I did

c. Yes, I do d. No, I am not

Mohamed : (2) ..... ?

a. What do you like to do

b. Why do you like online shopping

c. When do you do online shopping

d. How do you do online shopping

Ali : Because it saves time.

Mohamed : (3) ..... ?

a. Do you get things online

b. Did you buy things online

c. Does it help you

d. Is it easy to buy things online

Ali : Yes, it is easy to buy things online.

Mohamed : What type of things do you usually order ?

Ali : (4) ..... .

a. Hospitals and chemists'

b. Foods and clothes

c. Cars and planes

d. Rivers and oceans

Mohamed : Do you think that we will do all our shopping online in the future ?

Ali : (5) ..... .

a. That's a good idea.

b. See you soon.

c. Yes, I think so.

d. Yes, there is.

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :

6. I hope Ali ..... (**would**) succeed in his final exams next month.

a. could b. should c. will d. will be

7. He is clever. He will ..... (**solving**) the problem.

a. solve b. solved

c. solves d. solve to

8. If we ..... (**not**) eat vegetables, we won't be healthy.

a. doesn't b. don't

c. aren't d. didn't

9. When it is raining, you should ..... (**stayed**) at home.

a. staying b. stay c. stays d. stay to

10. If you feel tired, you ..... (**shouldn't**) have a rest.

a. shall b. should

c. won't d. can't



UNIT EIGHT

You are what you eat

SB pages 12:21 WB pages 77:83

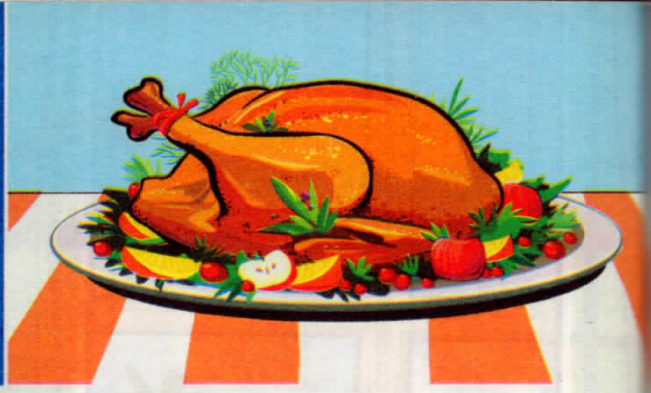
Unit Objectives :

- **Reading :**
  Texts about what people eat; a healthy food quiz; a recipe; an article about unusual food; an article about a healthy island
- **Writing :**
  An email about a favourite snack; a paragraph about a country's diet; a paragraph about sleep
- **Listening :**
  A discussion about favourite snacks; a conversation at dinner; teenagers sharing their worries about food and health
- **Speaking :**
  Describing food; offering, accepting and refusing food politely; giving advice about being healthy
- **Language :**
  a lot, a little and a few
- **Life Skills :**
  Self-management

Lessons

1 & 2

SB pages 12 : 15
WB pages 77 & 78



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة	salty (adj)	مالح
spicy (adj)	متبل [كثير التوابل]	energy (n)	طاقة
juicy (adj)	ملئ بالعصير	allergic (adj)	لديه حساسية
sweet (adj)	حلو المذاق	fast food (n)	وجبة سريعة
Foods	**أطعمة**		
sfenj	السفنج [فطائر مغربية]	rojak	روجاك [طبق سلطة خضار وفواكة ماليزى]
samosa	سمبوسة [طبق هندي]	hawawshi	حواوشى [أكلة مصرية]
fava beans	الفول الأخضر	watermelon	بطيخ
spices	بهارات / توابل	rice pudding	أرز باللبن
olives	زيتون	falafel	فلافل [طعمية]
chocolate	شيكولاته	nuts	مكسرات
chips	رقائق بطاطس مقلية	grapes	عنب

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

salty - allergic - spicy - Fast - energy

1. The doctor advised me to avoid ..... foods.
2. I'm ..... to nuts, so I don't eat them.
3. Seawater is ..... , you can't drink it.
4. ..... food is not healthy for us.

Lesson 1

SB pages 12 &13 WB page 77

oven (n)	فرن	taste (d)(v) , (n)	يتذوق / مذاق
fat (n)	دهن	though (conj) , (adv)	مع ذلك / ولو أن

Lesson 2

SB pages 14 & 15 WB page 78

invite (d)(v)	يدعو	strong (adj)	قوى
teenager (n)	مراهق	netball (n)	كرة الشبكة
athletics team (n)	فريق ألعاب القوى	washing up (n)	غسل الأواني

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

allergic	having a condition that makes you feel ill after you eat, breathe or touch something	لديه حساسية
snack	a small amount of the food eaten between meals	وجبة خفيفة
energy	the ability to do a lot of work or activity without becoming tired	الطاقة
fast food	food that can be served very quickly in a café or restaurant because it is already prepared	وجبات سريعة
juicy	full of juice	ملئ بالعصير
salty	tasting of salt or containing a lot of salt	مالح
spicy	containing the tastes from spices	متبل [كثير التوابل]
taste	know what something is when you put it in your mouth	يتذوق

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
lucky	محظوظ	happy / fortunate	unlucky / unhappy	غير محظوظ
delicious	لذيذ الطعم	tasty	terrible / horrible	سيئ
full	شبعان / ممتلئ	complete	hungry	جوعان
salty	مالح	savory	sweet / sugary	سكرى / حلو

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-ic	تحول الاسم لصفة	allergic	لديه حساسية
-y	تحول الاسم لصفة	healthy	صحى
		spicy	كثير التوابل

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The opposite of the word "lucky" is "……".
   a. happy b. fortunate c. tasty d. unlucky
2. The food in this restaurant is tasty. This means it is …… .
   a. fortunate b. lucky c. delicious d. terrible
3. Fruit and chocolate are sweet, but fish and cheese are …… .
   a. salty b. creamy c. juicy d. allergic
4. To get the adjective from the word "allergy", we add the suffix "……".
   a. -ic b. -al c. -tion d. -able

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 * **chicken (n)** لحم الدجاج [اسم لا يُعد]

- Do you like **chicken**, Amal ?

* **a chicken - chickens** دجاجة - دجاج [اسم يُعد]

- My aunt is feeding her **chickens**.

(SB page 15)

2 **allergic to** لديه حساسية لـ ....

- I'm **allergic to** nuts.

(WB page 78 / SB page 14)

3 * **practise (v)** يمارس

- She **practises** the piano every day.

* **practice (n)** تمرين - ممارسة

- After athletics **practice**, my friends and I sometimes get some fast food.

(SB page 14)

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
make food sweet / salty	يجعل الطعام حلو / مالح	for most of the time	لمعظم الوقت
get ill	يمرض / يصاب بمرض	on the way home	فى الطريق للمنزل
make offers	يقدم عروض	ask for things	يطلب اشياء
do the washing up	يقوم بغسل الأوانى	good for	مفيد لـ

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson (1) SB page 13

1. Sfenj is a kind of cake from Morocco and it has a lot of sugar and **fat**(1) in it.
2. Falafel is very popular in Egypt and Egyptians use **fava beans**(2) to make it.
3. Samosas are snacks from India. Samosas have **spicy**(3) vegetables inside them.
4. Rojack is a fruit snack you can buy in the street in Malaysia. It is very sweet and juicy.
5. He also eats a few healthy snacks, like nuts.
6. After athletics practice, Mustafa and his friends sometimes get some fast food, like pizzas.

on Lesson (2) SB page 15

1. Imad is **allergic**(4) to nuts. If he eats something with nuts, he will get ill.
2. Imad should eat more vegetables and salad. They are healthy.
3. Moustafa is on the school **athletics team**(5).
4. He goes running every day. He eats a lot of rice and pasta to give him energy.

on Lesson (2) WB page 78

1. Judy plays squash every week and needs to be healthy.
2. Judy doesn't eat any cakes because they sometimes have nuts in them.
3. She eats a lot of fish because it helps to make her **strong**(6).
4. She eats some fish with a lot of pasta because this gives her **energy**(7).
5. When she is playing **netball**(8), she drinks a little water.

(1) دهون	(2) الفول الأخضر	(3) ملئ بالتوابل	(4) لديه حساسية
(5) فريق العاب القوى	(6) قوي	(7) طاقة	(8) كرة الشبكة (تشبهه كرة السلة)

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

* Foods all over the world * Your favourite dish * Your favourite snack * Healthy diet

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على II من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 13

Speaker 1 :

Sfenj(1) is a kind of cake from **Morocco**(2). It has lots of **sugar**(3) and **fat**(4) in it and is very sweet, so it is not very healthy, but I love it ! We sometimes eat sfenj for breakfast and sometimes as a **snack**(5) with some tea or a cup of coffee.



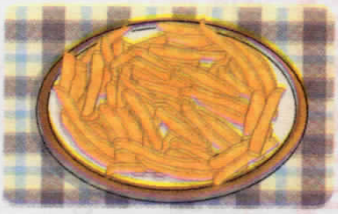
Speaker 2 :

In many places, people use **fava beans**(6) to make **falafel**(7). They are the best ! Falafel is really delicious and it is very **popular**(8) in Egypt.



Speaker 3 :

In Britain, we often buy chips from **a fish and chip shop**(9). People often put some salt on their chips. I don't put any **salt**(10) on mine because I don't like salty food. It is not very healthy.



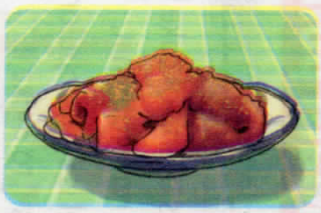
Speaker 4 :

You can buy **samosas**(11) on the street everywhere in India. Samosas have **spicy vegetables**(12) inside them. People often eat samosas for a snack. I love to eat them with some hot tea.



Speaker 5 :

Rojak(13) is a fruit snack you can buy in the street in **Malaysia**(14) and people also make it at home. Rojak is very **sweet**(15) and **juicy**(16). People use different **spices**(17) in different parts of the country, but it's always delicious.



(1) السفنج (فطائر مغربية)	(2) دولة المغرب	(3) سكر	(4) دهن	(5) وجبة خفيفة
(6) فول أخضر	(7) طعمية	(8) محبوب / مشهور	(9) محل أسماك ومقرمشات	(10) ملح
(11) سمبوسة (طبق هندى)	(12) خضروات متبلة	(13) روجاك (طبق سلطة خضار وفاكهة من ماليزيا)		(14) دولة ماليزيا
(15) حلو المذاق	(16) كثير العصير	(17) توابل		

on Lesson 2 SB page 15



Grandmother : Would you like some more chicken, Amal ?
Amal : Yes, please, **just a little**[1].
Grandmother : And would you like some more beans, too ?
Amal : Yes, thank you, grandmother... stop, **that's enough**[2] ! I mustn't eat too much.
Huda : Do you like chicken, Amal ?
Amal : Yes, I love Grandmother's spicy chicken. It's the best !
Huda : Thank you, Grandmother, that was a delicious dinner !
Grandmother : Would your girls like some more rice pudding ?
Huda : No, thank you, I'm **really full**[3].
Grandmother : What about you, Amal ?
Amal : Thank you, but I really couldn't. Why don't you **have a rest**[4] now, Grandmother ? Huda and I can take the plates to the kitchen and we'll **do the washing up**[5].

(1) قليلًا فقط | (2) هذا يكفى | (3) شبعان بالفعل | (4) يأخذ قسطًا من الراحة | (5) يقوم بغسل الأطباق

on Lesson 6 WB page 75



Grandma: Would you like some cake, Leila ?
Leila : Yes, please, just a little. I mustn't eat too much.
Grandma: Would you like a cup of tea with the cake ?
Leila : Thank you, I like tea.
Grandma: Do you like sugar in your tea ?
Leila : Yes, please, but that's enough. I only like a little sugar.
Grandma: Here you are, tea with cake !

Reading

on Lesson 1 WB page 77

Hi Tom,
How are you ? Thanks for your last email. You asked me to describe my favourite snack. I love hawawshi and I often have it when I get home from school. It is easy to make. First, you need some nice bread. Then you put some meat and vegetables inside the bread.

You can put some salt on it, too. I don't like to have any salt, though, because it is not very healthy. Now you cook it in the oven. It is delicious ! Do you have any favourite snacks ?
Describe them to me in your next email !
Best wishes,
Osama

on Lesson 2 SB page 14

What I eat



My name's Imad. I am **allergic**(1) to nuts, so I must be **careful**(2) what I eat. If I eat something with nuts in it, I will **get ill**(3) ! For most of the time, this is not a problem. However, I like sweet things, and there are a few types of cake that have nuts in them, so I can't eat those. I'm **lucky**(4) because my mother makes me many different, delicious things to eat at home. She says I should eat more vegetables and salad. I have a lot of fruit, and that's healthy !



I'm Mustafa. I'm on the school **athletics team**(5) and I go running every day, so I need food that gives me **energy**(6). I eat a lot of rice and pasta every day. I also eat a few healthy snacks, like nuts. After athletics **practice**(7), my friends and I sometimes get some fast food, like pizzas, on the way home, but I **try**(8) not to eat too much !

Answer the following questions :

Extracting information استخراج معلومات

Learn
1. Why must Imad be careful about what he eats ?
- ***Because he is allergic to nuts.***

Practise
2. How often does Mustafa go running ?
.....

(1) لديه حساسية
(2) حريص
(3) يصبح مريض
(4) محظوظ
(5) فريق العاب القوى
(6) طاقة
(7) تدريب
(8) يحاول

on Lesson 2 WB page 78

Judy plays squash every week and needs to be healthy, so what does she eat ? She is allergic to nuts, so she doesn't eat any cakes because they sometimes have nuts in them. She eats a lot of fish because it helps to make her strong. A few hours before a **netball**(1) **game**(2), she always eats some fish with a lot of pasta, because this gives her energy.

(1) كرة الشبكة (تشبه كرة السلة) | (2) مباراة

When she is playing netball, she drinks a little water. Then, after the game, she eats a few sweets. She does not have many because she knows they are not very **good for**(3) her.

(3) مفيد لـ

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. We can't drink seawater. It is ..... . *(Kafr El Zayat - Gharbia 2024)*
   a. salty b. spicy c. sweet d. fresh
2. Some people eat ..... between the main meals.
   a. lunch b. snacks c. sugar d. dinner
3. Watermelon is a ..... fruit.
   a. salty b. sour c. spicy d. juicy

SB , WB and Previous Exams

4. My mother ..... the food with her tongue when she cooks.
   a. tastes b. hears c. smells d. plays
   (Shebin El Kom - Menofia 2024)
5. I'm ..... to sweets, so I never eat them.
   a. kind b. hungry c. polite d. allergic
   (El Sayda Zeinab - Cairo 2024 / Tukh - Qalyoubia 2023)
6. To have more ....., eat healthy food. *(Tala - Menoufia 2024)*
   a. money b. friends c. energy d. family
7. WB She eats a lot of fish because it helps to make her ..... .
   a. nervous b. tired c. fat d. strong
8. SB In many places, people use fava beans to make ..... .
   a. pasta b. falafel c. soup d. dessert
9. A/An ..... is a boy or a girl aged 13-19. *(El Montazah - Alex. 2023)*
   a. old man b. baby c. child d. teenager
10. ..... food tastes hot.
    a. Juicy b. Nice c. Spicy d. Sweet
    (Hadayk El Kobaa – Cairo 2024 / Minya El Qamh - Sharkia 2022)

El-Moasser Exercises

11. We help mum with the ..... after meals.
    a. eating b. cooking c. washing up d. diving
12. Chocolate is a/an ..... dessert around the world.
    a. popular b. unknown c. different d. new

13. We can cook hawawshi in the ..... . It's delicious.
a. energy b. oven c. fridge d. offer

▸ **Definitions**

14. The small amount of the food eaten between meals is called ..... .
a. snake b. snack c. lunch d. dinner

(Monsha'at Nasser – Cairo 2024)

15. ..... means full of juice.
a. Spicy b. Juicy c. Lucky d. Unlucky

(Sharabia – Cairo 2024)

▸ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

16. Milk is good ..... your health.
a. for b. into c. at d. with

17. In summers, many shops and restaurants ..... great offers.
a. do b. make c. cause d. drive

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

1. Describing Food ١. وصف الطعام

تستخدم الصيغ التالية في الاستفسار عن الرغبات في تناول الأشياء :

Questions ?	Answers ✓
1. What's your favourite juicy fruit that you like to eat when you're thirsty ? - ما هي فاكهتك العصيرية المفضلة التي تحب أن تتناولها عندما تكون عطشان ؟	- I like oranges and watermelons. - أحب البرتقال والبطيخ.
2. What can you do if you eat something that is very hot and spicy so that it hurts your mouth ? - ماذا يمكنك أن تفعل عندما تأكل شيئًا ما حار جدًا ومتبل حيث أنه يسبب ضرر بفمك ؟	- I can drink a cup of milk. - يمكنني تناول كوبًا من اللبن.
3. The water in the sea is salty. Can you think of a food with this taste ? - المياه في البحر مالحة. هل يمكنك التفكير في طعام له نفس المذاق ؟	- I think salty fish. - اعتقد انه السمك المملح.
4. If we don't want to use sugar to make food sweet, what other things can we use ? - إذا كنا لا نريد استخدام سكر عند تحلية الطعام، ما الأشياء الأخرى التي يمكن أن نستخدمها ؟	- I think we can use honey. - اعتقد أننا يمكننا استخدام العسل.

2. Accepting and refusing offers of food politely

٢. قبول ورفض تقديم الطعام بطريقة مهذبة

offering food politely تقديم الطعام بطريقة مهذبة	accepting القبول	refusing الرفض
- Would you like some more chicken? هل تريد / تحب أن تتناول المزيد من الدجاج ؟	- Yes, please. نعم، من فضلك.	- Thank you, but I am really full. شكرًا لك، لكنى بالفعل شبعان [ممتلئ المعدة]. - Thank you, but I really couldn't. شكرًا لك، لكنى بالفعل لا أستطيع.
- Would you like a little salt on your chips ? هل تريد القليل من الملح على المقرمشات؟	- Yes, please. Just a little. نعم ، من فضلك. مجرد القليل.	- No, thank you. لا ، شكرًا لك.

III Language

1. Countable and uncountable nouns الأسماء التي تُعد والتي لا تُعد

Countable nouns الأسماء التي تعد [لها جمع]			Uncountable nouns الأسماء التي لا تعد [ليس لها جمع] وتعامل معاملة المفرد أي يأتي بعدها فعل فى صيغة المفرد			
an apple	تفاحة	apples	time	وقت	water	ماء
a potato	ثمرة بطاطس	potatoes	furniture	أثاث	money	نقود
a man	رجل	men	salt	ملح	sugar	سكر
an ox	ثور	oxen	advice	نصيحة	news	اخبار
a loaf	رغيف خبز	loaves	gold	ذهب	information	معلومات
a child	طفل	children	bread	خبز	molokhia	ملوخية
a lentil	حبة عدس	lentils	koshari	كشرى	lamb	لحم الحمل

ex. - Sweets are not good for her. [تعد] - I eat a lot of rice. [لا تعد]

2. Some - Any

A. Some : تستخدم (some) بمعنى بعض :

تستخدم فى الجمل الخبرية المثبتة :

Affirmative statements :

a) Uncountable nouns : أ. مع الأسماء التي لا تعد :

ex. - We sometimes eat sfenj with some tea.

b) Plural countable nouns : ب. مع الأسماء الجمع :

ex. - Some cakes have nuts in them.

تستخدم فى السؤال فى الحالات التالية :

أ. عند الطلب:

a) Request :

ex. Can I have some water, please ?

ب. عند العرض:

b) Offer :

ex. Would you like some tea ?

B. Any :

تستخدم (any) بمعنى أي :

Negative statements :

في الجمل الخبرية المنفية :

[مع الأسماء الجمع التي تعد والأسماء التي لا تعد]:

ex. - There aren't any apples in the fridge.

- I don't put any salt on my chips.

Interrogative :

في صيغة الإستفهام :

ex. - Is there any salt in this dish ?

- Do you have any pens, Ali ?

3. A lot of, a little and a few

1

a lot of

كثير من

تستخدم "**a lot of**" بمعنى كثير من فى الجملة المثبتة قبل الأسماء الجمع التي تعد والأسماء التي لا تعد :

countable noun + اسم يعد

ex. - I have a lot of oranges.

uncountable noun + اسم لا يعد

ex. - I drink a lot of milk.

2

a little

قليل من

تستخدم "**a little**" بمعنى [قليل من] قبل الأسماء التى لا تعد للتعبير عن كمية قليلة دون تحديدها :

ex. - I only have a little salad.

3

a few

قليل من

تستخدم "**a few**" بمعنى [قليل من] قبل الأسماء الجمع للتعبير عن عدد قليل دون تحديده :

ex. - Amal eats a few healthy snacks.

Note that :

لاحظ أن :

تستخدم (many) بمعنى [الكثير] قبل الاسم الجمع فى الجملة المنفية والاستفهامية.

ex. I don't eat many snacks.

تستخدم (much) بمعنى [الكثير] قبل الاسم الغير معدود [الكمية] فى الجملة المنفية والاستفهامية.

ex. I don't have much salad.

ex. I like orange, but I don't like tea. يستخدم الفعل (like) للتعبير عما نفضله أو نحبه.

تستخدم (would like) عند تقديم عروض أو طلب أشياء :

Offer عرض

ex. **A :** Would you like a sandwich ?
B : Thank you, but I'm really full.

Request طلب

ex. I'd like some beans, please.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. There are ..... grapes left. Would you like some ? *(West Mahalla – Gharbia 2024)*
   a. a little b. a few c. much d. a lot
2. WB I don't like to have ..... salt in my food because it is not very healthy. *(Haram – Giza 2022 / Damietta 2023)*
   a. some b. any c. many d. several
3. Would you like to have ..... tea with me ? *(Shebin El Kom – Menoufia 2024)*
   a. any b. many c. some d. a few
4. There are too ..... people at the station, so it's crowded.
   a. much b. few c. many d. little
   (East Nasr City - Cairo 2024)
5. Mona likes ..... milk in her tea, but not very much. *(West Cairo - Cairo 2024)*
   a. any b. a lot c. a few d. a little
6. I don't have ..... cheese in the fridge. *(Shebin El Qanater – Qalyoubia 2024)*
   a. a lot b. a few c. many d. any
7. There are ..... cars near my house. *(Samanoud – Gharbia 2023)*
   a. some b. any c. much d. a lot

El-Moasser Exercises

8. Ali has only ..... flowers. He can't give you one.
   a. a few b. a lot c. any d. a little
9. Do you want ..... coffee ? - No, thanks.
   a. any b. some c. many d. plenty
10. I haven't seen ..... lions when I was in Africa.
    a. any b. some c. much d. a little
11. The children ate ..... of rice yesterday.
    a. few b. many c. any d. a lot

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. My brother likes ..... (a few) sugar in his tea. *(Shebin El Kom – Menoufia 2024)*
2. Ali eats too ..... (much) cakes. *(Shebin El Qanater – Qalyoubia 2024)*
3. There ..... (aren't) any sugar in my tea. *(Qalyoub – Qalyoubia 2024)*
4. Eat ..... (a lot) fruit. It is good for you. *(East Zagazig - Sharkia 2024)*
5. SB What ..... (will) you like for breakfast ?
6. I don't have ..... (some) cheese in the fridge. *(Talkha - Dakahlia 2022)*
7. WB When she is playing netball, she drinks ..... (a few) water.

El-Moasser Exercises

8. Would you like ..... (any) coffee ?
9. We have ..... (many) sugar in the kitchen.
10. She had ..... (little) of money so she bought a big house.

A week is enough

EL-MOASSER

مراجعة المنهج
والتمكن منه فى
أسبوع واحد فقط



Speaking & Writing Corner

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ Paragraphs, E-mails & Dialogues قم باستعراض تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & E-mails

Your favourite type of food

Step 1 Vocabulary
اختبر إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. What is your favourite ..... fruit ? ملئ بالعصير
   - I like watermelons and oranges.
2. Do you like ..... food ? كثير التوابل
   - Yes, I do.
3. Which type of food are you ..... ? لديه حساسية من
   - I'm allergic to strawberries.

Step 2 Speaking
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث

Complete the following dialogue :

Huda is talking with Lamees about food.

Huda : Do you like healthy food ?
Lamees: (1) ..... .
Huda : (2) ..... ?
Lamees: I like rice and pasta.
Huda : (3) ..... ?
Lamees: Because they give me enough energy.
Huda : Are you allergic to any kind of food ?
Lamees: (4) ..... .
Huda : What kind of food are you allergic to ?
Lamees: (5) ..... .

(Mit Ghamr - Dakahlia 2023)

Step 3 Writing
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Write a paragraph on :

"Your favourite type of food"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Your favourite snack

1. What is your favourite ..... ? وجبة خفيفة
   - I like nuts.
2. Would you like ..... more tea ? بعض
   - Yes, please.
3. Would like a ..... milk on your tea ? قليل من
   - Yes, please. Just a little.

Mona and Eman are talking about snacks.

Mona : What's your favourite snack ?
Eman : (1) ..... .
Mona : (2) ..... ?
Eman : Because it is very delicious.
Mona : (3) ..... ?
Eman : I eat it in restaurants.
Mona : What else do you eat ?
Eman : (4) ..... .
Mona : How often do you eat vegetables ?
Eman : (5) ..... .

"Your favourite snack"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

General Exercises

On Lessons 1 & 2

Understand Apply Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. We ..... order fast food from restaurants.
   a. always b. rarely c. usually d. often
2. My mum always ..... delicious food.
   a. cooks b. plays c. sells d. buys
3. Fast food is ..... .
   a. unhealthy b. healthy c. sweet d. spicy
4. I like ..... very much.
   a. fruits b. crisps c. cakes d. vegetables

(New Salhyia - Sharkia 2024)

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Aya and Dina are talking about popular snacks.

Aya : What's your favorite snack, Dina ?
Dina: (1) ..... .
Aya : I like koshari too, but I like falafel more.
Dina: (2) ..... ?
Aya : Falafel is made from beans and vegetables.
Dina: (3) ..... ?
Aya : I usually eat it for breakfast.
Dina: Well, what other popular snacks do you like ?
Aya : (4) ..... . Do you like it ?
Dina: (5) ..... . Hawawshi is delicious.

(New Cairo - Cairo 2023)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This food has a nice ..... .
   a. taste b. subject c. task d. present

(New Salhyia - Sharkia 2024)

2. ..... means food that is quick and easy to buy or cook
   a. Desert b. Fast food c. Sfenj d. Snake

3. Don't put much salt, please. I don't like ..... food.
a. salty b. sweet c. fresh d. juicy

4. Eating rice and pasta gives us ..... . *(Qaha – Qalyoubia 2024)*
a. salt b. energy c. sweet d. milk

5. WB You cook hawawshi in the ..... .
a. over b. oven c. offer d. often

6. "....." means getting ill when you eat or touch something.
a. Salt b. Taste c. Good d. Allergic

7. ..... students are absent today. *(Beni Suef 2023)*
a. A few b. A little c. A d. Any

8. Would you like ..... cake, Reham ? - No, thanks. *(Luxor 2023)*
a. any b. some c. many d. plenty

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. **A:** ..... (Will) you like some coffee? **B:** Thank you, but I prefer tea. *(Diarb Negm – Sharkia 2024)*

2. Maher eats ..... (a few) food. He wants to lose weight. *(El Wasta - Beni Suef 2022)*

3. There are ..... (a little) grapes left. *(El Hamool - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)*

4. SB I eat ..... (a lot) rice and pasta.

5. We don't eat ..... (much) snacks.

5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your favourite snack" *(Aswan 2024)*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

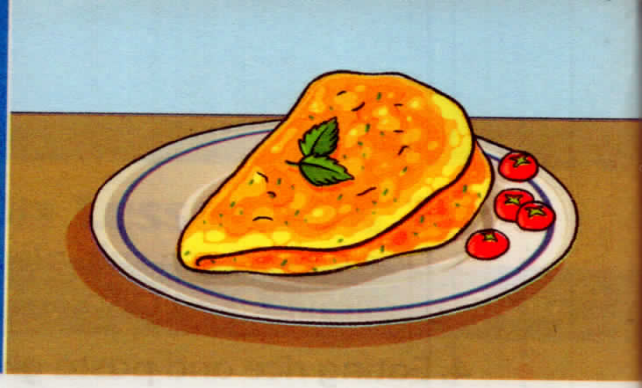
.....

.....

Lessons

3&4

SB pages 16 : 18
WB pages 79 & 80



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

dairy products (n)	منتجات ألبان	recipe (n)	وصفة [طهي]
protein (n)	بروتين	sense (n)	حاسة
bones (n)	عظام	instructions (n)	تعليمات
unusual (adj)	غريب / غير مألوف	fresh (adj)	طازج
smell (ed) (v), (n)	يشم - رائحة	fry (ied) (v)	يقلى
boil (ed) (v)	يغلى / يُسلق [طعام]	serve (d) (v)	يقدم [طعام]
heat (ed) (v)	يسخن	chop (ped) (v)	يقطع
pour (ed) (v)	يصب / يسكب	add (ed) (v)	يضيف

Special foods

أطعمة خاصة

durian fruit	فاكهة [دوريان البحرية]	champorado	شامبورادو [عصيدة أرز بالشيكولاته - أكلة فلبينية]
century eggs	بيض القرن [آكلة فى الصين]	tuyo	تويو [السمك المجفف]
ful medammas (n)	فول مدمس	fried chicken	دجاج مقلى

Lesson 3

SB pages 16 &17 WB page 79

humans (n)	البشر	fridge (n)	ثلاجة
dining room (n)	حجرة الطعام	frying pan (n)	طاسة القلى
omelette (n)	أومليت [أكلة تحتوى على البيض]	knife (n)	سكين

Lesson 4

SB page 18 WB page 80

ground (n)	أرض	centimetres (n)	سنتيمترات

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept
beat	يضرب / يخفق	beat	beaten
smell	يشم	smelt / smelled	smelt / smelled

Study these definitions — ادرس هذه التعريفات

beat	mix food quickly using a fork, wooden spoon, etc. يخفق / يضرب
bone	one of the hard parts of the skeleton هيكل عظمى inside a person or animal عظمة
chop	cut something into small pieces يقطع
dairy products	things that you can eat which are made from the milk of a cow, such as cheese and butter منتجات الألبان
durian fruit	a hard green fruit common in Malaysia, with a soft yellow inside that smells bad but tastes nice فاكهة الدوريان
fry	cook something in hot oil or fat يقلى
frying pan	a flat, metal pan used for frying food طاسة القلى
pour	make a liquid flow يتدفق out of or into something such as a cup or bowl يصب / يسكب
protein	one of the many things found in food such as meat, cheese, fish, or eggs, that is necessary for the body to grow and be strong بروتين
serve	provide food or drinks يقدم (طعام)
smell	know what something is using your nose يشم
unusual	different from others of the same type in a way that is surprising or interesting غير عادى

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms — مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
dry جاف	arid	wet رطب / مبلل
soft ناعم / لين	smooth	hard صلب / خشن
normal طبيعى	natural / typical	abnormal غير طبيعى
inside داخل	indoor	outside خارج

Prefixes & Suffixes — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
un–	تكون عكس الصفة	unusual غير عادى
–ed	تكون الصفة من الفعل	fried مقلى chopped مقطع/مفروم

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Summer is a dry season. This means it isn't ..... .
   a. fry b. high c. fresh d. wet
2. To give the antonym of the word "normal", we add the prefix "..... ".
   a. un– b. ab– c. il– d. ir–
3. "Inside" and "indoor" are ..... .
   a. opposites b. antonyms c. different d. synonyms
4. To get the adjective from the verb "chop", we add the suffix "..... ".
   a. –ed b. –tion c. –able d. –ity

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 fresh

لاحظ هذه التعبيرات مع كلمة fresh :

fresh air	هواء نقى	**fresh** water	مياه عذبة
fresh fruit	فاكهة طازجة	**fresh** bread	خبز طازج
fresh weather	طقس بارد	**fresh** news	أخبار حديثة

(SB page 79)

2 smell, taste, look, feel, sound + adj. صفة

لاحظ أن أفعال الحواس تتبع بصفة :

- SB It **smells** terrible. رائحته كريهة
- SB It **tastes** delicious. مذاقه لذيذ *(SB page 18)*

3

لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر **(for)** مع الوجبات :

- I always eat falafel **for** breakfast. *(SB page 18)*

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
make you sleep longer	يجعلك تنام لمدة أطول	quite good	جيد إلى حد ما
		have a salty taste	ذو مذاق مالح
Prepositions			
an example of	مثال لـ	take ... out of	يخرج ... من
a piece of	قطعة من	chop ... into squares	يقطع ... إلى شكل مربعات
made from	مصنوع من		
pour ..... into	يسكب ..... فى	on the outside	فى الجزء الخارجي
recipe for	وصفة لـ	different from	مختلف عن
under the ground	تحت الأرض	on the inside	فى الجزء الداخلى

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson (3) SB page 16

1. If you want to be healthy, you should eat some of all **types**(1) of food.
2. We need to drink eight glasses of water every day.
3. **Dairy products**(2) like milk and cheese help us to have **strong bones**(3).
4. You need to eat meat, nuts and cheese because they contain protein in them.
5. A lot of sugar is bad for your teeth.
6. We need protein to have a strong body.
7. Fruit and nuts are examples of healthy snacks.
8. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is fresh.
9. Omelette is a very delicious dish.
10. The **recipe**(4) of omelette is very easy and famous.
11. The recipes of ful medamas and salad are easy and they are healthy.
12. Human have 210 bones in their bodies. The biggest ones are in our legs.

on Lesson (4) SB page 18

1. Durian fruits grow in Indonesia and Malaysia.
2. Durian fruits are hard and green on the outside, but soft and yellow on the inside.
3. They are very healthy and people use them to make juice, ice creams and soup.
4. Champorado is sweet chocolate rice and tuyo. They are small **salty fish**(5). They are popular in the Philippines !
5. Century eggs are famous in China. They are black and green inside.
6. People put **fresh**(6) eggs under the ground for a long time.
7. Century eggs smell a lot and have a salty taste but a lot of people think they are delicious.

(1) أنواع	(2) منتجات الالبان	(3) عظام قوية
(4) وصفة طهى	(5) سمك مالح	(6) طازج

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

* Your favourite recipe
* Unusual food you have tried before
* Useful types of food
* How to be healthy

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على II من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 16

A healthy food quiz(1)

1. If you want to be healthy, you should eat ..... .
   a. only fruit and vegetables
   b. a lot of meat and cheese
   c. some of all types of food
2. We need to drink ..... glasses of water every day.
   a. eight
   b. two
   c. four
3. **Dairy products**(2) like milk and cheese help us to ..... .
   a. have lots of hair
   b. have strong **bones**(3)
   c. run fast
4. Meat, cheese and nuts have **protein**(4) in them and we need protein to ..... .
   a. sleep well
   b. move fast
   c. have a strong body
5. A lot of sugar ..... .
   a. makes it difficult to sleep
   b. is bad for your teeth
   c. makes you sleep longer
6. Examples of healthy snacks are ..... .
   a. fruit and nuts
   b. chocolate and sweets
   c. salty chips
7. People need to eat ..... pieces of fresh fruit and vegetables every day.
   a. one to two
   b. five to ten
   c. one
8. People often like fast food because ..... .
   a. it has lots of fat and sugar in it
   b. it gives you energy
   c. you can eat a lot of it and not **feel full**(5)
9. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is ..... .
   a. expensive
   b. **fresh**(6)
   c. from a big supermarket

Answers :
One point for each correct answer :
1c 2a 3b 4c 5b 6a 7b 8a 9b
Score 7-9 : Very good! You know all about healthy eating.
Score 4-6 : Quite good. You need to learn a little more to be really healthy !
Score 1-3 : Not good. There are a lot of things you need to learn about healthy eating.

(1) امتحان قصير | (2) منتجات ألبان | (3) عظام | (4) بروتين | (5) يشعر بالامتلاء (الشبع) | (6) طـازج

on Lesson 3 SB page 17



▶ How to make an omelette

1. **Beat**[1] two eggs in a bowl with little milk.
2. Add a little salt to the eggs and milk.
3. **Heat**[2] some butter in a **frying pan**[3].
4. Pour the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in the butter.
5. When the omelette is ready, **take it out**[4] of the frying pan and **serve**[5] with salad.



▶ How to make a tomato salad

1. Take two big tomatoes and half an onion.
2. Chop all the vegetables into small squares.
3. Put the chopped vegetables into a bowl.
4. Add a little oil, salt and lemon juice.
5. Serve the salad with your omelette.

(1) قم بخفق | (2) قم بتسخين | (3) مقلاة | (4) قم بإخراج | (5) قم بتقديم الطعام

on Lesson 3 WB page 79



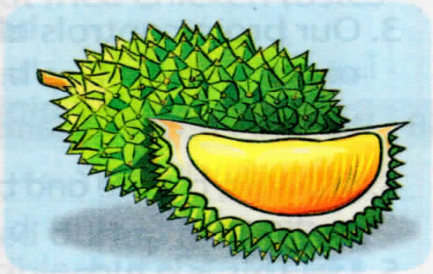
▶ How to make ful medamas

1. Wash some beans and put them in a pan.
2. Add some water to the beans.
3. Heat the beans in the water until it boils.
4. Pour some lemon juice over the hot beans.
5. Serve it with warm bread.

on Lesson 4 SB page 18

Unusual but delicious

Some food **smells**[1] bad or looks unusual - but still **tastes good**[2]! **"Durian fruits"**[3] grow in Indonesia and Malaysia. Some fruits can be 30 centimetres long. They are hard and green on the outside , but soft and yellow on the inside.



durian fruit

Some people don't want to eat them because they smell terrible, but they are very healthy and taste delicious. People use durian fruits to make juice, ice creams and soup.

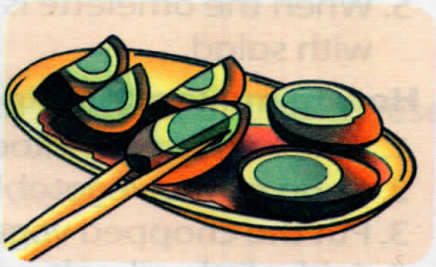
(1) يفوح منه رائحة | (2) مذاقه جيد | (3) فاكهة دوريان

In the Philippines, people eat something called **'champorado**[4]**'** with **'tuyo'** [5] for breakfast. "Champorado' is sweet chocolate rice and 'tuyo' are small salty fish. For most people, it's unusual to eat sweet and salty things together, but it is popular in the Philippines !



champorado with tuyo

In China, people eat eggs that are months or years old ! They are called **century eggs**[6] and they are black and green inside. To make them, people put fresh eggs under the ground for a long time. Century eggs smell a lot and have a salty taste, but lots of people think they are delicious.



century eggs

(4) تشامبورادو (عصيدة أرز محلى بالشيكولاته) (أكلة فلبينية)
(5) نوع سمك مجفف
(6) بيض القرن

Answer the following questions :

Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

Learn 1. What is the main idea of the passage ?

- Unusual food.

Extracting information إستخراج معلومات

Practise 2. Where do durian fruits grow ?

.....

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. The new restaurant ..... breakfast and lunch only.
   a. adds b. puts c. serves d. takes
2. Mum is cooking fish and rice. The food ..... very nice.
   a. smells b. smiles c. adds d. makes
3. Our brain controls all our ..... .
   a. senses b. objects c. subjects d. smiles

SB , WB and Previous Exams

4. SB Milk, cheese and butter are all ..... products. *(Menia El Kamh – Sharkia 2024)*
   a. diary b. dairy c. dry d. spicy
5. SB This is a nice ..... for making an omelette. *(Aswan 2024)*
   a. recipe b. receipt c. snack d. diet
6. SB Meat, fish and eggs all have ..... in them. *(Middle Cairo – Cairo 2024)*
   a. fats b. protein c. beans d. oil

7. SB You need to ..... eggs and milk before you make an omelette.
a. chop b. boil c. beat d. drink
(West Zagazig - Sharkia 2024)

8. Heat some butter in a ..... pan.
a. frying b. adding c. boiling d. heating
(Meet Ghamr –Dakahlia 2024)

9. The soup is cold. Shall we ..... it ?
a. cool b. freeze c. heat d. wash
(Qalyoub – Qalyoubia 2024)

10. SB Please, ... some tea into my cup.
a. heat b. pull c. beat d. pour
(Baltim - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)

El-Moasser Exercises

11. You should be careful when you use the sharp ..... .
a. fork b. knife c. bowl d. plate

12. To drive cars safely, you should follow a lot of ..... .
a. products b. instructions c. recipes d. menus

▸ Definitions

13. To ..... means to cook something in hot oil or fat.
a. fly b. fry c. feed d. fail

14. To ..... means to cut something into small pieces.
a. chop b. pour c. serve d. smell

▸ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. Durian fruits are hard and green ..... the outside.
a. in b. off c. at d. on

16. They chop the watermelon ..... squares.
a. out b. on to c. into d. too

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

▸ A discussion about unusual food مناقشة عن الطعام الغير تقليدي

Questions	Answers
1. What are the tastes and smells that you like and don't like ? - ما هي بعض الأطعمة والروائح التي تحبها والتي لا تحبها ؟	- I think that fried chicken tastes really good. - أعتقد أن الدجاج المقلى مذاقه جيد حقاً. - In my opinion, fish smells horrible. - في رأيي، رائحة السمك كريهة.
2. What unusual food or drink have you tried ? What was it like ? - ما الطعام / الشراب الغير تقليدي الذي جربته ؟ ماذا كان يبدو ؟	- I have tried durian fruits. They smelt terrible, but they were healthy and tasted delicious. - لقد قمت بتجربة تناول فاكهة الدوريان. رائحتها فظيعة لكنها صحية ومذاقها لذيذ.

III Language

Imperative صيغة الأمر

Formation التكوين

- It always starts with the infinitive form of the verb without "to".
تبدأ الجملة الأمرية المثبتة دائمًا بفعل فى المصدر بدون «to».

باقى الجملة . + مصدر الفعل [Inf.]

ex. - Take, Go, Change, Sit down, Open, ... etc.

1 We use the imperative when we tell someone to do something.
نستخدم صيغة الأمر عندما نريد أن نخبر شخص ما أن يفعل شيئًا.

ex. - **Chop** the tomatoes !

2 We use the imperative to give instructions or advice.
نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء تعليمات أو نصيحة.

ex. - **Heat** the beans in water until it boils.

3 We use "Don't" for the negative form of the imperative.
نستخدم « **Don't** » فى صيغة الأمر المنفى ويأتى بعدها الفعل فى المصدر .

Don't + مصدر الفعل [inf.]

ex. - **Don't add** too much salt !

لاحظ أن

١. يمكن إستخدام (Always) في بداية الجملة الأمرية المثبتة متبوعة بمصدر الفعل (inf.):

Always + مصدر الفعل [inf.] + باقى الجملة .

ex. - Always eat healthy food.

٢. يمكن إستخدام (Never) في بداية الجملة الأمرية المنفية متبوعة بمصدر الفعل (inf.):

Never + مصدر الفعل [inf.] + باقى الجملة .

ex. - Never be late for school.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. ..... the eggs in the bowl. *(El Waily – Cairo 2024)*
   a. Puts b. Put c. Putting d. To put
2. ..... out alone without telling your parents. *(Birket El Sabaa – Menoufia 2024)*
   a. Go b. Never go c. Doesn't go d. Goes
3. ..... drink many fizzy drinks. *(Sadat City - Menoufia 2024 / El Wasta - Beni Suef 2023)*
   a. Not b. Don't c. Doesn't d. Didn't
4. Don't ..... the birds. I've already done that. *(Minya El Qamh - Sharkia 2022)*
   a. feed b. feeding c. feeds d. fed
5. WB ..... the knife to chop the vegetables.
   a. Used b. Uses c. Use d. Using
6. SB ..... two eggs in a bowl with little milk to make an omelette.
   a. Beat b. Beats c. Beating d. Beaten

El-Moasser Exercises

7. SB ..... ful medammas with warm bread.
   a. To serve b. Serve c. Serving d. Serves
8. Don't ..... many sweets. They are bad for your teeth.
   a. eats b. eating c. to eat d. eat
9. ..... straight on then turn left to get to the park.
   a. Go b. Going c. Goes d. Went
10. ..... make noise at the library.
    a. Doesn't b. Don't c. Didn't d. Aren't

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. Pour the egg into the frying pan and ..... (cooking) it in the butter. *(Menouf - Menoufia 2024)*
2. SB ..... (Not boil) oil more than one time.
3. Don't ..... (touching) electric wires. *(New Cairo - Cairo 2024 / Metoubes - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)*
4. WB ..... (Turns) the lights off before you sleep. *(Toukh – Qalyoubia 2024)*
5. Don't ..... (putting) too much salt in the soup. *(West Nasr City – Cairo 2024 / Burg Al Arab - Alexandria 2023)*
6. SB Please, ... (adding) some olive oil on salad. *(Faqous - Sharkia 2022)*

El-Moasser Exercises

7. Don't ..... (heats) butter for too long.
8. ..... (Does) exercise after school.
9. When water boils, ... (turns) off the stove.

Speaking & writing corner

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة Paragraphs, E-mails & Dialogues الـ
قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & E-mails

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	Step 2 Speaking اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
Unusual food you have tried before	**Read and complete :** 1. Have you tried any ..... food ? غريب / غير معتاد - Yes, I have. 2. What did you try? - I tried ..... . بيض القرن 3. What are they like ? - They are black and green ..... . بالداخل	**Complete the following dialogue :** A : Have you tried any unusual food ? B : (1) ..... . A : (2) ..... ? B : I tried century eggs. A : (3) ..... ? B : It's from China. A : What are they like ? B : (4) ..... . A : Did you like it ? B : (5)	**Write a paragraph on :** "Unusual food you have tried before"
Your favourite recipe	1. What is your favourite ..... ? وصفة طهى - It's omelette. 2. Do you ..... much salt to your recipe ? يضيف - No, much salt is unhealthy for me.	A : Do you like trying food recipes ? B : (1) ..... . A : (2) ..... ? B : My favourite recipe is ful medames. A : (3) ..... ? B : I like it spicy. A : What do you pour over it ? B : (4) ..... . A : Do you like ful medames served with onions ? B : (5)	"Your favourite recipe"

General Exercises

On Lessons 3 & 4

Understand Apply Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking a doctor about the best healthy diet.

Ahmed : Please, doctor, what's the best way to stay healthy ?

Doctor : (1) ..... .

Ahmed : (2) ..... ?

Doctor : For example, eat a lot of fruit and vegetables.

Ahmed : (3) ..... ?

Doctor : You shouldn't eat food that has fat or much sugar.

Ahmed : Should I do exercise ?

Doctor : (4) ..... .

Ahmed : Thank you for your advice.

Doctor : (5) ..... . *(Bandar Damanhour - Beheira 2023)*

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "Soft" is the opposite of ..... . *(Menia El-Kamh – Sharkia 2024)*
   a. small b. big c. easy d. hard
2. SB Humans have 210 ..... in their bodies.
   a. eyes b. ears c. bones d. arms
3. I don't like fried eggs. I like them ..... .
   a. boiled b. juicy c. terrible d. sweet
4. WB "....." means to mix food quickly using a fork.
   a. Peel b. Beat c. Boil d. Pour
5. The teacher asked the pupils to ..... their books out of bags.
   a. make b. give c. take d. do
6. Put the food in the ..... to keep it cold. *(Khanka – Qalyubia 2022)*
   a. oven b. microwave c. kettle d. fridge
7. ..... drink fizzy drinks. *(West Cairo - Cairo 2022)*
   a. Isn't b. Don't c. Doesn't d. Didn't

8. SB Don't ..... the tomatoes into small pieces.
a. chops b. chop c. to chop d. chopping

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Don't ..... (touching) electric wires. *(Metoubes - Kafr El-Sheikh 2022)*
2. ..... (Turns) the lights off before you sleep.
3. ..... (Never) tell the truth. *(El-Waqf - Qena 2024)*
4. Always ..... (to add) olive oil to salad.
5. Please, ... (helping) me to carry that box.

4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Sami to describe how to make an omelette. Your name is Reda and your email address is reda@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is sami@gmail.com.

From	
To	
Subject	

.....,
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Lessons

5&6

SB pages 19 & 20
WB pages 81 & 82



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

balanced diet (n)	نظام غذائى متوازن	conclude (d) (v)	يختم / يستنتج
advice (n)	نصيحة	pepper (n)	فلفل
reason (n)	سبب / مبرر	spinach (n)	سبانخ
relax (ed) (v)	يسترخي	sweet potato (n)	بطاطا
conclusion (n)	خاتمة	upset (v), (adj)	يزعج - منزعج

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

reason - upset - depend on - Peppers - balanced

1. I was ..... because my dad was late for my birthday party.
2. Having ..... diet is necessary for your health.
3. ..... and lettuce are green vegetables.
4. Can you give me a ..... for coming late ?

Lesson 5

SB page 19 WB page 81

athletics club (n)	نادى ألعاب القوى	drawing (n)	الرسم
art school (n)	مدرسة لتعليم الرسم	painting (n)	التلوين
amount (n)	كمية / مقدار	perhaps (adv)	ربما
own (ed) (v)	يمتلك	explain (ed) (v)	يشرح - يفسر

Lesson 6

SB page 20 WB page 82

sort (n)	نوع	introduce (d) (v)	يقدم
Okinawa Island	جزيرة أوكيناوا [في اليابان]	purple (adj)	أرجواني اللون
Okinawan (adj)	خاصة بجزيرة أوكيناوا	situation (n)	موقف
unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ	point (ed), (v), (n)	يشير / نُقطة - فكرة
surprise (d) (v)	يفاجئ / يدهش	olive oil (n)	زيت الزيتون

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
upset يزعج	upset	upset
forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

pepper	a kind of vegetable that is usually green, red or yellow, with seeds in the middle فلفل
spinach	a vegetable with wide, dark green leaves that go soft when you cook them سبانخ
sweet potato	a vegetable that looks like a potato and has purple, yellow or white flesh and a sweet taste بطاطا

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 Furthermore (adv) إضافة لذلك - علاوة على ذلك

- Ayman is a teacher. **Furthermore**, he is a trader تاجر. *(SB page 20)*

2 To conclude, ... = To sum up, ...

تستخدم لتلخيص أهم النقاط أو الفكرة الرئيسية كخاتمة للموضوع

- SB **To conclude**, a healthy diet means eating enough healthy things. *(WB page 82)*

3 * dish (es) طبق [أطباق - صحون]

- I will wash the **dishes** for mum.

*** dish (es)** أكلة - صنف من الطعام

- I like Egyptian **dishes**. They taste delicious. *(SB page 19)*

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
have a snack	يتناول وجبة خفيفة	live on	يعيش على / يتغذى على
make sure	يتأكد من	stay up late	يسهر لوقت متأخر
do some drawings	يقوم ببعض الرسومات	revise for the exam	يراجع للامتحان
eight hours' sleep	النوم لمدة ٨ ساعات	depend on	يعتمد على
have athletics club	لديه تمرين فى نادى ألعاب القوى	for about 14 or more hours	لمدة حوالى [١٤]ساعة أو أكثر

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson [5] SB page 19

1. It isn't good to eat **fast food**(1) when you are hungry.
2. It's a good idea to have a healthy snack.
3. You could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning.

on Lesson [5] WB page 81

1. Very small babies sleep for about 14 or more hours a day.
2. Children aged six to seventeen should sleep for about ten hours a night.
3. Most people aged 18 - 65 need about eight hours' sleep.
4. **West African countries**(2) have one of the healthiest diets in the world.

on Lesson [6] WB page 82

1. People in Senegal, Mali and Sierra Leone eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, rice, nuts and fish.
2. People of West Africa don't eat much food with a lot of salt and sugar in it.
3. **A healthy diet**(3) means eating enough healthy things like fish and vegetables, and not eating a lot of salt, sugar and fast food.

on Lesson [6] SB page 20

1. **Okinawan people**(4) are healthy because they eat a lot of fresh vegetables.
2. They eat **spinach**(5), **sweet potato**(6) and **peppers**(7).
3. They don't have much fat in their diet, they eat only a little meat and a few dairy products.
4. For breakfast, they have **soup**(8) with spinach or eggs with rice to give them lots of energy to start the day.
5. Okinawans live a long time because of eating healthy food.

(1) وجبة سريعة	(2) دول غرب أفريقيا	(3) نظام غذائي صحي	(4) شعب جزيرة أوكيناوا
(5) سبانخ	(6) بطاطا	(7) فلفل	(8) حساء (شوربة)

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

* Fast food
* How to be healthy
* Healthy diet
* Balanced diet

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على II من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

on Lesson 5 SB page 19

It's good that you don't eat fast food, but if you feel very hungry between **meals**(1), it's a good idea to have a snack. How about **bringing**(2) a few healthy snacks to school on the days when you have **athletics club**(3) ?
If you want to have more **energy**(4), why don't you try eating more food that gives you energy like rice and pasta ? Perhaps you could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning, too.

(1) وجبات | (2) إحضار | (3) نادى ألعاب القوى | (4) طاقة

on Lesson 5 WB page 81

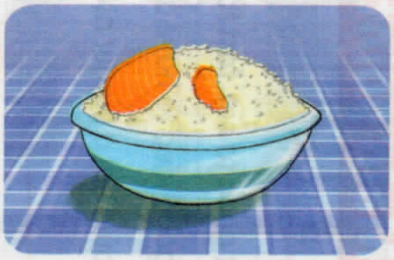


How much **sleep**(1) should we have ? The answer **depends on**(2) your age. Very small **babies**(3) sleep for about 14 or more hours a day ! Children **aged**(4) six to seventeen should sleep for about ten hours a night. Then you need less sleep. Most people aged 18 – 65 need about eight hours' sleep.

(1) نوم | (2) يعتمد على | (3) أطفال رضع | (4) بالغ من العمر

on Lesson 6 WB page 82

A healthy diet



It may **surprise**(1) you to know that **West African countries**(2) have one of the healthiest diets in the world. Why is this ?
Firstly, people in countries such as **Senegal**(3), Mali and **Sierra Leone**(4) eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, which are very healthy. Furthermore, the people eat a lot of rice, nuts and fish. These have a lot of protein.

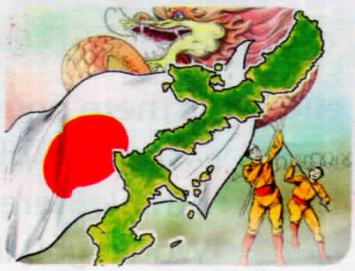
(1) يدهش / يفاجئ | (2) دول غرب أفريقيا | (3) دولة السنغال | (4) دولة سيراليون

Another important **point**(5) is that the people of West Africa don't eat much food with a lot of salt and sugar in it.
To **conclude**(6), a healthy diet means eating enough healthy things like fish and vegetables, and not eating a lot of salt, sugar and fast food.

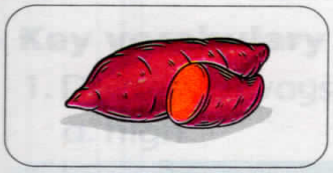
(5) نقطة / فكرة	(6) يختم/ يستنتج

on Lesson 6 SB page 20

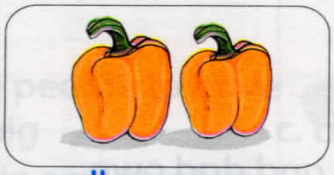
The Okinawan(1) diet



I come from **Okinawa**(2) in Japan and the diet on my **island**(3) is very healthy.
This is for three **main reasons**(4).
Firstly, we eat a lot of fresh vegetables.
We eat green, **purple**(5) and yellow vegetables like **spinach**(6), **sweet potato**(7) and **peppers**(8).
Furthermore(9), we don't have much fat in our diet : we only eat a little meat and a few dairy products. Another important thing is that we eat a very healthy breakfast. We have **soup**(10) with spinach or eggs with rice, and this gives us lots of energy to start the day.



sweet potato



yellow pepper



spinach

As you can see, our diet is healthy.
That's why Okinawans live a long time. Some of the oldest people in the world live on my island !



(1) خاصة بجزيرة أوكيناوا	(2) جزيرة أوكيناوا	(3) جزيرة	(4) الأسباب الرئيسية	(5) أرجوانى اللون
(6) سبانخ	(7) بطاطا	(8) فلفل	(9) بالإضافة إلى	(10) شوربة

on Lesson 7 WB page 83

The recipe for pizza



Firstly, chop some tomatoes.
Then put the tomatoes onto the **pizza bread**(1).
Add some cheese and pour on a little olive oil.
Cook the pizza in the oven for ten minutes.
Add a few olives and a little salt.
Serve with a fresh salad.

(1) عجينة البيتزا

on Lesson 7 SB page 21

Leila : Is there any cheese in the **fridge**(1) ? I don't need any now, but I want to make a salad later.

Mother: I think there is a little cheese. I'm going **shopping**(2) now. Would you like me to buy some cheese at the market ?

Leila : Yes, please ! Could you get a few tomatoes, too ? I don't have **enough**(3) for the salad.

(1) ثلاجة | (2) التسوق | (3) كاف

Listening

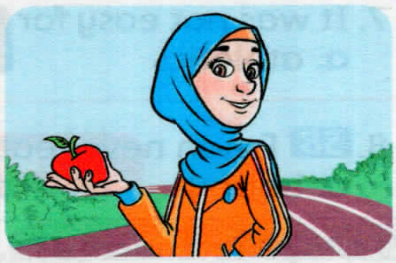
on Lesson 5 SB page 19



Ali : My name's Ali. My mum and dad own a restaurant and I often help in the kitchen. The **cook**(1) is my friend and he is teaching me to make different cakes. The problem is, I'm always **trying**(2) them, so I eat too many cakes. I also know I don't do enough **exercise**(3), but that's because I don't have time. When I'm not at school or doing my homework, I'm usually at the restaurant.

I don't want to stop helping my parents, so I don't know what to do.

(1) طباخ | (2) يجرب | (3) تدريب



Eman : I'm Eman. I do a lot of sport and I have a very **healthy diet**(4). I eat lots of fruit and vegetables and I almost never eat fast food. I never eat snacks either, not even when I'm really hungry after athletics club. I know eating snacks isn't good for you. But I'm tired all the time. I never feel I get enough sleep, even when I go to bed early ! I want to have more energy.



Tamer : I'm Tamer. I want to go to **art school**(5) when I'm older, but I don't have enough time to do any drawing or painting at the moment. I'm working really hard at school. I'm worried about my exams. When I feel worried, I don't feel hungry. My mother doesn't think I eat enough, so then she gives me even more food. I don't want to **upset**(6) her, so I can't tell her it's too much !

(4) نظام غذائى صحى | (5) مدرسة لتعليم الرسم | (6) يزعج / يضايق

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Doctors always advise people to have ..... diets to stay healthy.
   a. high b. big c. balanced d. full
2. Listening to quiet music can help you ..... .
   a. eat b. mix c. relax d. write
3. You have to write a/an ..... at the end of the paragraph.
   a. introduction b. conclusion c. photo d. drawing
4. In Egypt, we buy roasted sweet ..... on the streets.
   a. salad b. potatoes c. pizza d. eggs

SB , WB and Previous Exams

5. SB Take small ..... of food but finish them. *(Al-Sideeq - Fayoum 2024)*
   a. amounts b. bins c. balls d. baskets
6. SB You want to make something for them. ....., you do not know how to cook !
   a. Luckily b. Unfortunately c. Happily d. So

7. It was not easy for him to join the ..... club in his city.
a. athletics b. allergic c. tests d. athlete

(Shebin El Kom - Menoufia 2023)

8. SB Eman never eats fast food or snacks. She feels ..... all the time.
a. happy b. strong c. hungry d. allergic

El-Moasser Exercises

9. My dad ..... me with a cute puppy.
a. calmed b. upset c. surprised d. ordered

10. I asked the science teacher to ..... the causes of pollution to me.
a. explain b. have c. protect d. paint

11. My father ..... a small shop in Cairo. He bought it three years ago.
a. brings b. owns c. finds d. makes

Definitions

12. ..... is a vegetable with wide, dark green leaves that go soft when you cook them.
a. Spinach b. Okra c. Pepper d. Peas

13. ..... is a plant that can be green, red and yellow.
a. Lemon b. Pepper c. Fig d. Sweet potato

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Don't ..... up late. It's an unhealthy habit.
a. spend b. stay c. keep d. practise

15. Our future depends ..... our hard work.
a. all b. in c. off d. on

16. Next Sunday, we have a maths test. I need to revise ..... the exam.
a. for b. of c. on d. in

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Giving advice about being healthy إعطاء النصيحة بشأن كيف تكون صحي

Questions	Answers
1. What should I eat if I want to have more energy ? - ماذا ينبغي أن أتناول إذا أردت أن يكون لدى طاقة أكثر؟	- If you want to have more energy, why you don't try eating rice and pasta? - إذا أردت أن يكون لديك طاقة أكثر، لما لا تأكل أطعمة مثل الأرز والمكرونة؟
2. What should I do if I want to relax ? - ماذا ينبغي أن أفعل عندما أريد أن أسترخى ؟	- It's a good idea to exercise. Exercise can help you relax. - إنها فكرة جيدة أن تمارس بعض التمارين. ممارسة التمارين قد يساعدك على الاسترخاء.

III Language

enough, too much, too many

1 enough كافٍ

تستخدم " enough " قبل الاسم بمعنى «كافٍ».

enough + noun اسم

ex. - Sleeping for **enough time** is important.
- I think she doesn't sleep for **enough hours**.

تستخدم " not enough " قبل الاسم بمعنى «غير كاف» .

[not] enough + noun اسم

ex. - Mr Hesham goes to bed at 1 a.m. and gets up at 7 a.m. This is **not enough sleep**.

2 too many عدد أكثر من اللازم / too much كمية أكثر من اللازم

+ countable noun اسم يعد جمع

ex. - I think she sleeps for **too many hours**.

+ uncountable noun اسم لا يعد

ex. - Malek sleeps from 10 p.m. to 9 a.m. I think this is **too much sleep**.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. There are too ..... people on this beach. Let's go to a different one.
a. many b. much c. enough d. few
(East Tanta – Gharbia 2024)

2. I can't go to the cinema today because I have too ..... work.
a. little b. many c. few d. much
(East Alexandria – Alexandria 2024)

3. WB Can I have some more sugar, please ? - There is ..... in this tea.
a. too much b. too many c. a few d. not enough
(Aswan 2023)

4. There are too ..... books in the bag. I can't carry it. *(6th October - Giza 2023)*
   a. few b. much c. many d. enough

5. WB I don't like this soup. There is too ..... salt in it.
   a. much b. many c. enough d. few

(Borg Al Arab – Alexandria 2024 / Abu Tesht - Qena 2023)

6. SB Could you get a few tomatoes ? - I don't have ..... for the salad.
   a. enough b. much c. a little d. a few

7. Heba spends too ..... time watching TV. *(Edfu – Aswan 2024)*
   a. lot b. a few c. much d. many

El-Moasser Exercises

8. There are ..... many mistakes in this email.
   a. two b. toe c. too d. to

9. I think too ..... technology can give you a headache.
   a. many b. few c. less d. much

10. She doesn't have ..... oil for her food.
    a. too many b. enough c. a few d. a lot

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. There is so ..... (many) pollution in Cairo because of the traffic.
   (El-Santa – Gharbia 2024)

2. SB I try not to eat ..... (to) much fast food.

3. She ate ..... (much) sweets yesterday. *(Manshiyat Naser - Cairo 2022)*

4. There is ..... (salt enough) in the soup. *(East Alexandria - Alexandria 2024)*

5. SB Tamer's mother gives him too ..... (many) food.

6. SB Eman feels tired all the time and doesn't get ..... (sleep enough).

7. She is fat as she eats ..... (many) rice. *(Kafr El Zayat - Gharbia 2023)*

El-Moasser Exercises

8. Last summer holiday, I earned ..... (money enough).

9. I spent too ..... (many) money on clothes yesterday.

General Exercises

On Lessons 5 & 6

Understand Apply Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. Make sure you have a ..... diet.
   a. balanced b. boiled c. fried d. grilled
2. Eat some of all the ..... of food.
   a. seeds b. tastes c. types d. smells
3. To be healthy, you have to ..... well.
   a. play b. sleep c. study d. fry
4. Don't ..... too much to be healthy. *(Gomrok - Alexandria 2024)*
   a. worry b. bring c. practise d. sleep

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I don't like ..... food. It's unhealthy.
   a. slow b. quick c. fast d. fresh
2. I haven't eaten anything. I feel ..... .
   a. worried b. hungry c. thirsty d. excited
3. Rice and pasta give us more ..... .
   a. oil b. olive c. energy d. taste
4. Spinach is a kind of ..... .
   a. fruit b. snacks c. vegetables d. fats
5. Try to have a ..... diet to keep you healthy. *(Qalyoub - Qalyoubia 2023)*
   a. balanced b. long c. bad d. young
6. **A:** What ..... of music do you like ? **B:** jazz.
   a. port b. sort c. reason d. season
7. ..... sugar is bad for your health.
   a. Enough b. Too many c. Too much d. A little
8. He doesn't have ..... money to buy the mobile. It is expensive.
   a. enough b. too many c. many d. a few

(Nekhel - North Sinai 2022)

3 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Healthy food" *(Luxor 2023)*

.....

.....

.....

.....

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Critical thinking

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [Critical Thinking] وهنا تحتاج لقراءة النص جيدًا [لإعطاء رأى مناسب].

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question :

We don't live alone in this world. There are animals and birds living with us, too. Farmers have got a lot of animals on their farms. They keep cows, camels, buffaloes, horses and goats. Animals can't speak in the way people can, but some animals like birds can copy sounds. Animals do communicate, both to us and to each other. Some animals use body language. For example, horses touch their noses to say (hello) to another horse they like. Bees, dance when they find a good flower. To understand what animals want, you should be careful, watch and listen to what they are trying to tell you.

- Why do you think we should watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell us ?

.....

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى إبداء الرأى.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تستطيع [أن تبدى رأيك حسب الفكرة المذكورة].

2 Speaking

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] معرفتك لقدر كاف من [Language Functions] والتى غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue :

Abdo is at the restaurant.

Waiter : How can I help you ?

Abdo : (1) ..... .

Waiter : OK. Here you are. What would you like to have ?

Abdo : (2) ..... .

Waiter : (3) ..... ?

Abdo : Yes, I would like a salad.

Waiter : (4) ..... ?

Abdo : I would like some orange juice.

Waiter : Anything else !

Abdo : (5) ..... .

(El Omrania - Giza 2023)

التحدى تريد [التحدث عن الأطعمة] وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التى قد تحدث بينك وبين زميلك.

3 Correction notes

• الهدف من هذا الجزء
- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

Review

◄ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

a lot of	- تستخدم بمعنى كثير من ويأتى بعدها الاسم الجمع والاسم الذى لا يعد فى الجمل المثبتة.
a little	- تستخدم بمعنى قليل من قبل الاسماء التى لا تعد فى الجمل المثبتة.
a few	- تستخدم بمعنى قليل من قبل الاسماء الجمع فى الجمل المثبتة.
many	- تستخدم بمعنى كثير من قبل الاسماء الجمع فى الجمل المنفية والاستفهامية
much	- تستخدم بمعنى كثير من قبل الاسماء التى لا تعد فى الجمل المنفية والاستفهامية.

صيغة الأمر Imperative

نبدأ بالفعل فى المصدر عندما يكون أمر مثبت

نبدأ بـ Don't + inf. عندما يكون الأمر منفى

Learn

◄ تعلم

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 We shouldn't eat too ..... [many] food.	much	لان كلمة [food] لا تعد
2 We should eat ..... [a few] rice and pasta.	a little	الجملة تعطى معنى القلة والكلمات لاتعد
3 Can I have some more sugar? There is ..... [enough] in this tea.	not enough	معنى الجملة يعطى عدم الكفاية لذا يجب نفى الجملة.

Practice

◄ تدرب

Write the Reason : ◄ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة

1 Would you like to have ..... [any] tea ?	some	.....
2 Don't put too ..... [many] sugar. It's unhealthy.	much	.....
3 Ola isn't hungry, so she only wants to eat..... [much] rice.	a little	.....
4 Don't ..... [adding] too much salt. It's unhealthy	add	.....

Write the Correction : ◄ اكتب التصحيح

1 ..... [opens] the windows, please.	.....	الجملة الأمر تبدأ بالمصدر
2 There aren't ..... [some] sugar left.	.....	الجملة تعبر عن النفى
3 People spend too ..... [many] time looking at their mobile.	.....	كلمة time لا تعد
4 Don't ..... [turns] the light off. I'm doing my homework.	.....	جملة الأمر المنفى نضع الفعل فى صيغة المصدر بعد Don't

مراجعة عامة على Unit 8 فى ورقة واحدة

Review on unit 8
قيم مستواك يقوم معلماك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary

spicy	متبل
snack	وجبة خفيفة
juicy	ملئ بالعصير
allergic to	لدية حساسية تجاه
energy	طاقة
fast food	الوجبات السريعة
bones	عظام
protein	بروتين
dairy products	منتجات الألبان
fresh	طازج
beat	يخفق / يضرب
heat	يسخن
fry	يقلى
chop	يقطع إلى شرائح
pour	يصب / يسكب
serve	يقدم (طعام)
athletics club	نادى العاب القوى
balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن
sweet potato	بطاطا
pepper	فلفل
spinach	سبانخ

Language

Some & any :

1. Use some in positive sentences with uncountable nouns and plural countable nouns.

• تستخدم (some) في الجمل المثبتة مع الأسماء غير المعدودة والأسماء المعدودة الجمع.

- We sometimes eat some cookies with tea.
- People often put some salt on their chips.

2. Use any in negative sentences and yes/no questions with uncountable nouns and plural countable nouns.

• تستخدم (any) مع الجمل الاستفهامية المبدوء بفعل مساعد والجمل المنفية مع الأسماء غير المعدودة والأسماء المعدودة الجمع .

- I don't put any salt on food. Is there any salt in this?

A lot of, a little and a few :

1. Use a lot of with countable and uncountable nouns.

• تستخدم (a lot of) مع الأسماء المعدودة الجمع والأسماء غير المعدودة.

- I have a lot of oranges/fruits. I also eat a lot of rice and pasta.

2. Use a few with countable nouns and a little with uncountable nouns.

• تستخدم (a few) مع الأسماء المعدودة و (a little) مع الأسماء غير المعدودة

- I eat a few healthy snacks. (= I don't eat many snacks.)
- I only have a little salad. (= I don't have much salad.)

Speaking

1. Offering, accepting and refusing offers of food politely :

A : Would / Do you like a sandwich ?

B : Thank you, but I'm really full.

A : Would you like a little salt on your chips ?

B : No, thank you.

2. Giving advice about being healthy :

- It's a good idea to have a snack.
- You could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning.
- It's good that you don't eat fast food.
- If you want to have more energy, why don't you try eating some rice or pasta ?

Questions collected from previous exams

تدريبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My grandmother spends ..... time cooking in the kitchen. *(Qalyoub - Qalyoubia 2024)*
   a. a lot of b. a few c. lots d. many
2. There are ..... grapes left. Would you like some?
   a. little b. a lot c. a few d. a little
   (Belkas – Dakahlia 2024 / Komombo - Aswan 2023)
3. There isn't ..... rice. We should buy some.
   (Abou Homous - Beheira 2023)
   a. many b. enough c. a little d. some
4. ..... can be green, red or yellow. It is healthy, I like eating it very much.
   (Talkha - Dakahlia 2024 / Rod El Farag - Cairo 2023)
   a. Paper b. Pepper c. Diet d. Meat
5. In many places, people use fava beans to make ..... . *(Luxor 2023)*
   a. pasta b. falafel c. soup d. dessert
6. Your ..... is the kind of food that you eat every day. *(Bander Damanhour – Beheira 2023)*
   a. work b. exercise c. diet d. situation
7. We ..... with our noses. *(North Sinai - Sinai 2023)*
   a. hear b. taste c. touch d. smell
8. He doesn't eat any cakes because he is ..... to them. *(West Shoubra El Kheima / Qalyoubia 2023)*
   a. balanced to b. long
   c. old d. allergic
9. Eat some of all the ..... of food. *(Alexandria 2023)*
   a. sizes b. colours c. flavours d. types
10. Humans have 210 ..... in their bodies.
    (Kafr El Dawar - Beheria 2023)
    a. eyes b. ears c. bones d. hairs

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. ..... (Didn't) make noise in the library. *(Aswan 2024)*
2. I eat ..... (a little) healthy snacks. *(Nag Hamadi - Qena 2024)*
3. ..... (Added) some butter in a frying pan. *(Nasser - Beni Suef 2023)*
4. There are too ..... (much) people in the market today. *(Ezbet El Borg - Damietta 2023)*
5. ..... (Not forget) to add some salt. *(Youssef El-Sadeek - Fayoum 2023)*
6. Don't ..... (touching) electric wires. *(Motobis - Kafr El-Sheikh 2023)*
7. There is too ..... (many) salt in the soup. *(Shohada - Menoufia 2023)*
8. ..... (Doesn't) play in the street. *(Omraniya - Giza 2023)*
9. Maher eats ..... (a few) food. He wants to lose weight. *(El Wasta - Beni Suef 2023)*
10. I sometimes eat ..... (a little) grapes for breakfast. *(Port Said 2023)*

Test on unit 8

● Understand ○ Apply ● Create

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصويبه

قم بحل إختبار تراكمي في الملحق

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. Omar is ..... to nuts.
   a. energetic b. addicted c. allergic d. normal
2. Some kinds of food make Omar ..... .
   a. noisy b. ill c. tall d. beautiful
3. Omar must be ..... with what he eats.
   a. careless b. naughty c. careful d. tidy
4. Omar can eat food that has ..... nuts in it.
   a. no b. too many c. some d. lots of

(West Mansoura – Dakahlia 2024)

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sara and Aseel are talking about healthy food.

Sara : What types of food should we eat to be healthy ?
Aseel : (1) ..... .
Sara : (2) ..... ?
Aseel : Because dairy products help us to have strong bones.
Sara : (3) ..... ?
Aseel : No. Sugar is bad for our teeth.
Sara : What else should we do to be healthy ?
Aseel : (4) ..... .
Sara : Do you have any other advice for me?
Aseel : (5) ..... . *(Bab El Shaeria - Cairo 2023)*

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

When we taste food, our mouths tell us if the food is sweet, salty or spicy. But why do some people like some types of food and not others ? There are many reasons. For example, some people don't like a type of food because they remember being ill after they ate it.

However, it is believed that you can change what you like. We often don't like unusual food because our brain doesn't understand **it**. So, if you want to start liking food that is healthy, such as green vegetables, you should eat it more often. Then your brain will **recognize** it. You can also train your brain not to like something. For example, many people who stopped putting sugar on things found, after a time, that they didn't like sweet things. So, if you like sweets and don't like vegetables, you should train your brain to eat more healthy!

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. What does the word "**recognize**" mean ?
   a. Know because you have seen it before
   b. Photograph
   c. Learn about
   d. Like
2. If you want to stop liking unhealthy food, ...
   a. eat unhealthy food instead.
   b. stop eating this type of food
   c. eat this type of food often
   d. cook it well

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why do people often not like unusual food ?
   .....
4. Why do you think people trained their brains not to like sugar ?
   .....
5. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   .....
6. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to ?
   .....

(West Cairo - Cairo 2024)

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My mother cooks most of our food in the ..... . *(Kafr El Sheikh 2024)*
   a. oven b. fridge c. table d. wardrobe
2. In restaurants waiters usually ..... the food for customers.
   a. serve b. pour c. try d. fry

(Qeft - Qena 2024)

3. I like cakes with ..... in them. *(New Cairo - Cairo 2023)*
   a. meat b. vegetables c. nuts d. salad
4. Carrots need to be ..... into small pieces. *(Malawy - Menia 2023)*
   a. shopped b. shipped c. chopped d. clapped
5. Fruit and nuts are examples of healthy ..... .
   a. snakes b. snacks c. snails d. sails
6. I like my tea with ..... sugar.
   a. a few b. many c. a lot d. a little
7. ..... touch the machine with wet hands.
   a. Doesn't b. Don't c. Haven't d. Aren't
8. Fruits give us a lot of ..... to be active all the day. *(6th October - Giza 2022)*
   a. salt b. energy c. sleep d. allergy

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Don't ..... (wastes) time. Time is money. *(El Mahmoudia - Beheira 2024)*
2. Would you like to have ..... (any) tea ? *(Rod El Farag - Cairo 2023)*
3. His bag is light, it has ..... (a little) books.
4. There is ..... (a few) tea in the cup. I have drunk most of it.
5. Would you like ..... (lots) cold orange juice ?

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Fast food"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Fast food is very ..... .
   a. taste b. tasteful c. tasty d. healthy
2. It's a good idea to have ..... between the meals.
   a. snakes b. snacks c. snails d. snaps

2. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Ali and Samy are talking about snacks.

Ali : What is your favourite snack, Samy ?
Samy : (1) ..... .
Ali : I like koshari, too but I prefer pizza.
Samy : (2) ..... ?
Ali : Because it is very delicious.
Samy : (3) ..... ?
Ali : I eat it in restaurants.
Samy : What else do you eat ?
Ali : I eat fruits.
Samy : How often do you eat fruits ?
Ali : I eat fruits every day.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My mother likes ..... sugar in her tea, not much.
   a. any b. a little c. many d. a few
2. Would you like ..... coffee ?
   a. few b. any c. a lot d. some
3. Lemons and oranges are ..... fruits.
   a. spicy b. juicy c. salty d. thirsty
4. What is the ..... for coming late today ?
   a. reason b. point c. season d. cause
5. Healthy ..... are good for your health.
   a. snakes b. snacks c. talks d. looks

4. Read the following, then answer the questions :

Most people have three meals every day, breakfast, lunch and dinner. They eat these meals at known times; in the morning, in the afternoon and in the evening. But in fact most of **them** don't care about what they should eat for each meal. Doctors say that people should eat lots of fruits and vegetables. People shouldn't eat too many cakes. Doctors advise people to drink much water. To keep healthy, doctors advise people not to stay at home all the time. They should go for walks, do exercise or practice any sport.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. How many meals in the day ?
   .....
2. What do doctors advise people to eat ?
   .....
3. How can people keep healthy ?
   .....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. ..... people care about food.
   a. All b. Many c. Few d. No
5. The underlined word "**them**" refers to ..... .
   a. doctors b. people c. fruits d. meals

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. We don't have **some** sugar in the kitchen. (.....)
2. **Turns** the lights off before you sleep. (.....)
3. Eating **a lot** fruit and vegetables is good for you. (.....)
4. She is fat as she eats **many** rice. (.....)

6. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

"Healthy food"

.....

.....

نموذج الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

Mira is talking with her friend Mona about food.

Mira : Can I ask you some questions about food ?

Mona : (1) ..... .

a. No, you're busy
b. Yes, of course
c. Yes, it's better to stay here
d. No, I can't read this story

Mira : What is your favourite food ?

Mona : (2) ..... .

a. Nuts b. Beans c. Salad d. Flafel

Mira : Why do you like nuts ?

Mona : (3) ..... .

a. We need to sleep all the time
b. We shouldn't be strong
c. Nuts give me energy
d. I don't need food that gives me energy

Mira : (4) ..... ?

a. Why do you need fats
b. Why do you need sweets
c. Why do you need salty fish
d. Why do you need energy

Mona : We need energy to be able to do many things.

Mira : (5) ..... ?

a. What should we eat
b. What should we drink
c. What should we read
d. What should we study

Mona : We should eat healthy food.

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in brackets from a, b, c, or d :

6. There are ..... **(much)** cars in the centre of the city.
a. a lot b. a lot of c. a little d. little

7. We don't like this soup. There is too ..... **(many)** salt in it.
a. a lot b. much c. enough d. few

8. Don't ..... **(adding)** salt in your food. It's unhealthy.
a. add to b. added c. add d. adds

9. Omar doesn't do ..... **(a lot)** exercise.
a. few b. little c. enough d. a little

10. I don't like ..... **(some)** sugar in my coffee.
a. any b. many c. a lot d. few



UNIT NINE

Watch, listen and make

SB pages 22:31 WB pages 84:90

Unit Objectives :

- **Reading :**
  An internet chat message; a review of an art gallery; Little Women; a review of a film
- **Writing :**
  A short review; a paragraph on a musician
- **Listening :**
  A report about an orchestra; an invitation on the telephone
- **Speaking :**
  Saying what people can do; talking about preferences and giving recommendations; inviting a person somewhere
- **Language :**
  Talking about ability : can, know how to and be able to
- **Life Skills :**
  Collaboration; respect for diversity

Lessons

1 & 2

SB pages 22 : 25
WB pages 84 & 85



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

scenery (n)	منظر طبيعي - خلفية المسرح	century (n)	قرن [١٠٠ سنة]
script (n)	نص - سيناريو [فيلم أو مسرحية]	view (n)	رأى / وجهة نظر
costumes (n)	أزياء المناسبات الخاصة	sculpture (n)	فن النحت - قطعة فنية منحوتة
make-up (n)	المكياج [فن التجميل]	recommend (ed) (v)	يزكى - يوصى
show(ed) (v), (n)	يعرض / عرض	review (n)	مقال نقدي
acting (n)	التمثيل	pottery (n)	صناعة الأواني الفخارية
musical instruments (n)	آلات موسيقية	artist (n)	فنان / رسام
cartoons (n)	رسوم متحركة	portrait (n)	لوحة فنية/صورة [لشخص]

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

costumes - script - recommend - artist

1. Sewing ..... is Ghada's favourite hobby.
2. An ..... is someone who paints, draws or makes sculptures.
3. Writing a ..... is not an easy job for the writer.

Lesson 1

SB pages 22 & 23 WB page 84

concert hall (n)	قاعة حفلات موسيقية	play (n)	مسرحية
theatre (n)	مسرح	act(ed) (v)	يؤدى - يمثل
firefighter (n)	رجل الإطفاء	drama club (n)	نادى الدراما [المسرح]

Lesson 2

SB pages 24 & 25 WB page 85

painting (n)	لوحة مرسومة	clay (n)	فخار - صلصال
colourful (adj)	ملون	stone (n)	حجر
recommendations (n)	توصيات	Textile Museum (n)	متحف المنسوجات
calligraphy (n)	فن الخط	statue (n)	تمثال
TV programme	برنامج تليفزيوني	Islamic area (n)	المنطقة الإسلامية

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
sew يخيط / يحيك	sewed	sewn
pay يدفع [ثمن]	paid	paid

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

artist	someone who does paintings and drawings	فنان / رسام
instrument	an object that is used for playing music	آلة موسيقية
make-up	what people put on their faces in order to make themselves look nice or different	مكياج
portrait	a painting, photograph, drawing, etc. of a person's face	لوحة فنية/صورة [لشخص]
cartoon	a funny drawing usually showing people or animals	رسم كاريكاتيري
pottery	• the activity of making pots, cups, plates, etc. from clay • things that are made from clay, such as cups and plates	صناعة الأواني الفخارية
view	your opinion about something	وجهة نظر/رأى
preference	the fact that you like something or someone more than another thing or person	تفضيل
recommend	advise someone to do something or go somewhere because it is good or you like it	يوصى/يزكى
recommendation	a suggestion that something is good to do or see	توصية/تزكية
scenery	the painted background of a theatre stage	خلفية المسرح
show	a play or performance for people to watch	عرض
sculpture	art made from stone or wood that looks like people, animals or other things	النحت - قطعة فنية منحوتة
costumes	clothes that you wear to look like someone or something else	أزياء / ملابس لمناسبة خاصة
script	the words for a film or a play which the actors learn	نص سيناريو

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

do	make-up [مساحيق التجميل] يضع مكياج	give	opinions يقدم آراء
play	instrument يعزف على آلة موسيقية		recommendations يقدم توصيات
use	a computer يستخدم الحاسب الآلي	take	photos يلتقط صور

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms — مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
ancient قديم / عتيق الطراز	old / old-fashioned	modern / new حديث / جديد
dark مظلم / غامق اللون	dim / black	light مضئ / فاتح اللون
amazing رائع / مدهش	surprising / incredible	ordinary / usual عادى
busy مشغول / مزدحم	crowded / engaged	free فاضى / غير مشغول

Prefixes & Suffixes — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
–ist	تحول إلى الاسم المشير للوظيفة	artist فنان
–al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	musical موسيقىّ
–ation	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	recommendation توصية
–ence	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	preference تفضيل
–ful	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	colourful ملون

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This car is old-fashioned. It is not ..... .
   a. old b. modern c. dirty d. free
2. To get the job of the person from the word "art" we add "..... ".
   a. –ity b. –able c. –y d. –ist
3. The word "amazing" can be the antonym of the word "..... " .
   a. surprising b. incredible c. crowded d. ordinary
4. The room is crowded. I will look for a/an ..... one.
   a. free b. crowded c. busy d. engaged
5. "Recommend" can be a noun by adding the suffix "..... ".
   a. –ion b. –ation c. –ity d. –able

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 scenery - view

* **scenery** منظر طبيعي [يقصد به التضاريس الطبيعية لمكان ما]
  - The countryside الريف has an attractive **scenery**.
* **scenery** الأثاث - الخلفية - الرسومات المستخدمة على خشبة المسرح لتجعل المشهد حقيقيًا
  - The **scenery** on the stage seems to be a real hospital.
* **view** منظر [ويقصد به ما تراه من خلال النافذة أو من أعلى برج مثلًا]
  - There is a wonderful **view** of the sea from our hotel room.

(SB page 23)

2 costume - custom

* **costume (n)** زى خاص [لمناسبة معينة]
  - We often wear **costumes** on special occasions.
* **custom (n)** عادة - عُرف
  - The villagers have their own **customs**.

(SB page 23)

3 sculpture - sculptor

* **sculpture (n)** فن النحت / تمثال منحوت
  - **Sculpture** is making objects from stone, wood, clay, etc. فن النحت
  - There are a lot of **sculptures** in the museum. تمثال منحوت
* **sculptor (n)** نحات
  - A **sculptor** is a person who makes figures and objects of stone, wood, clay, etc.

(SB page 24)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
have an end-of-year show	يقيم عرض نهاية العام	get ready for	يستعد لـ
answer the phone	يرد على الهاتف	help with (music)	يساعد فى [الموسيقى]
quite dark	مظلم إلى حد ما	act in a play	يمثل فى مسرحية
recommend + (inf. + ing/n)	يوصى - يزكى	famous for	مشهور بـ
such as	مثل	learn to + (inf.)	يتعلم أن

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson [1] SB page 23

1. Habiba assured that Mrs Medhat said they could have an end-of-year show.
2. It will be about the play they read in the English class.
3. They need people who are able to do make up, **sew costumes**(1), paint **scenery**(2) and **play instruments**(3).
4. Mariam and Azza know how to sew costumes and Lara is the best at doing make-up.
5. Manal can paint the scenery and Habiba can write the **script**(4).

on Lesson [2] SB page 24

1. Last month, Wagdy visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo.
2. Egypt is famous for its ancient art.
3. From Wagdy's point of view, the artists were really good because they showed what life was like in Egypt in the past and now.
4. His favourite thing in the museum was a painting called Al Madina by Mahmoud Said.
5. The best thing about the museum is that it is free to visit!
6. It is a good idea to go early when the museum is not very busy.

on Lesson [2] WB page 85

1. Injy visited the **Textile Museum**(5) in Cairo last month.
2. The museum has lots of clothes from different times in history.
3. The **statues**(6) showing people wearing the clothes really teach Injy about life in the past.
4. Her favourite thing in the museum was the Islamic area where she could see different kinds of **calligraphy**(7).

(1) تخيط الأزياء	(2) منظر طبيعى / خلفية المسرح	(3) يعزف على الآلات الموسيقية	
(4) نص أو سيناريو	(5) متحف المنسوجات	(6) تماثيل	(7) فن الخط

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

* Review of the Modern Egyptian Art Museum
* Review of the Textile Museum in Cairo

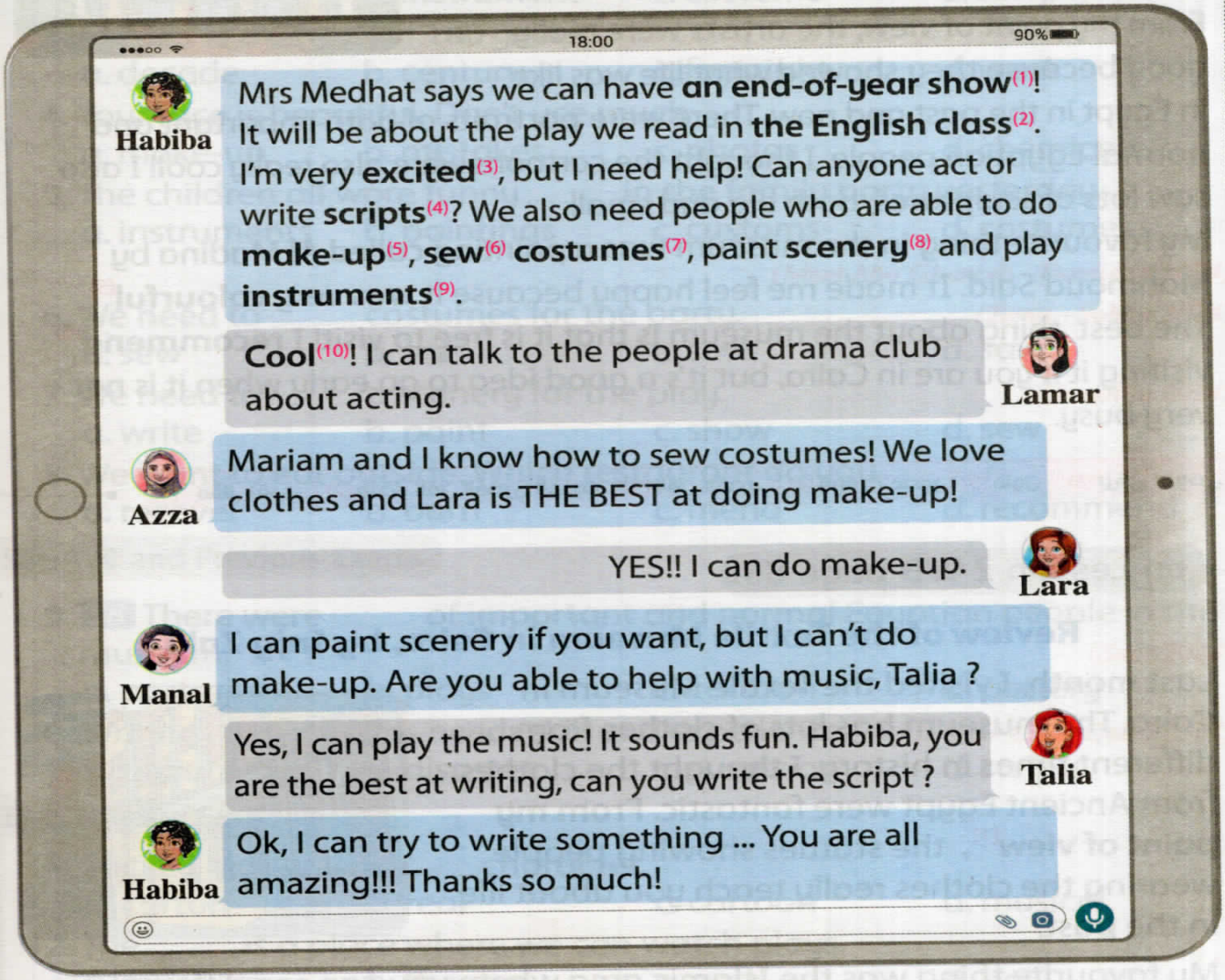
II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على II من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 23

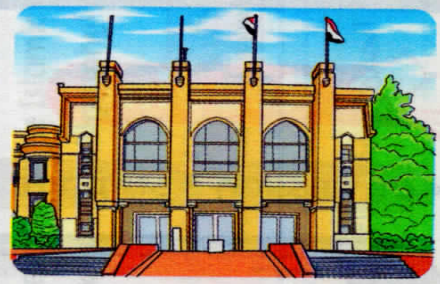


(1) عرض نهاية العام	(2) حصة لغة إنجليزية	(3) متحمس	(4) نصوص مسرحية	(5) مكياج
(6) يخيط/يحيك	(7) زى المناسبات الخاصة	(8) خلفية المسرح	(9) آلات موسيقية	(10) رائع

on Lesson 2 SB page 24

Review[1] of the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art[2]

By Wagdy Badr



Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its **ancient art**[3], but I was interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20th and 21st **centuries**[4]. From my point of view, the artists were really good because they showed what life was like in Egypt in the past and now. There were portraits of both important and normal Egyptian people. I thought the cartoons were also really cool! I also saw lots of sculptures, both big and small.

My favourite thing in the museum was a painting called Al Madina by Mahmoud Said. It made me feel happy because it was very **colourful**[5]. The best thing about the museum is that it is free to visit! I **recommend**[6] visiting it if you are in Cairo, but it's a good idea to go early when it is not very busy.

(1) مقال نقدي | (2) متحف الفن المصري الحديث | (3) الفن القديم | (4) قرون / عصور | (5) ملون | (6) يزكى / يوصى بـ

on Lesson 2 WB page 85

Review of the Textile Museum in Cairo, by Injy Zaki



Last month, I visited the Textile Museum in Cairo. The museum has lots of clothes from different times in history. I thought the clothes from Ancient Egypt were fantastic. **From my point of view**[1], the statues showing people wearing the clothes really teach you about life in the past.

My favourite thing was the Islamic area where you can see different **kinds of**[2] calligraphy. I recommend looking at the clothes from other countries, too, **such as**[3] Iran. They are very interesting. If you want to **take photos**[4], it is a good idea to take a good camera, because the museum is quite dark.

(1) من وجهة نظرى | (2) أنواع من | (3) مثل | (4) يلتقط صور

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. I read many ..... about the film. Let's watch it !
   a. cartoons b. revisions c. reviews d. previews
2. **A :** What a musical ..... can you play ? **B :** The guitar.
   a. machine b. instrument c. costume d. sculpture
3. A ..... is a period of 100 years.
   a. decade b. century c. fortnight d. week
4. Your face is beautiful. Don't use much ..... .
   a. make-up b. mistakes c. photos d. chemicals
5. The children all wore funny ..... in the family party yesterday.
   a. instruments b. paintings c. customs d. costumes

(Meet Abo Ghareeb - Damietta 2024)

6. We need to ..... costumes for the party. *(Tema - Sohag 2024)*
   a. sew b. see c. sow d. saw
7. We need to ..... a scenery for the play. *(Ismailia 2024)*
   a. write b. paint c. show d. sew
8. We want to eat outside. Which restaurant do you ..... ?
   a. recover b. burn c. mend d. recommend

SB , WB and Previous Exams

9. SB There were ..... of important and normal Egyptian people in the museum. *(Suez 2024)*
   a. portraits b. plays c. cartoon d. pottery
10. Writing ..... of films needs skill and experience. *(West Nasr City - Cairo 2023)*
    a. texture b. disaster c. suspicion d. scripts

El-Moasser Exercises

11. Mickey Mouse is a ..... character.
    a. carton b. real c. cartoon d. musical
12. The ..... is a place where we can watch plays.
    a. museum b. theatre c. park d. hall

Definitions

13. ..... is art made from stone or wood that looks like people , animals or other things. *(Aswan 2024)*
    a. Pottery b. Sculpture c. Cartoon d. Portrait
14. ..... is the painted background of a theatre stage.
    a. Script b. Sculpture c. Show d. Scenery

15. A/An ..... is someone who does paintings and drawings. *(Port Said 2024)*
a. writer b. pianist c. artist d. musician

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

16. I must hurry. I have 30 minutes to ..... ready for the concert.
a. give b. take c. get d. play

17. Mona can't ..... the phone as she is busy now.
a. make b. call c. answer d. have

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

1. Talking about preferences ١. التحدث عن الأشياء المفضلة

I'd rather + inf. مصدر الفعل - أفضل أن .....
ex. - I'd rather go to bed early. أفضل الذهاب إلى النوم مبكرًا.

I prefer + noun / inf. + ing - أفضل .....
ex. - I prefer playing football at the club. أفضل لعب كرة القدم بالنادي.

My favourite thing is / was ... [كان] الشيء المفضل بالنسبة لي هو ...
ex. - My favourite thing in the museum was a painting called Al Madina by Mahmoud Said.
كان الشيء المفضل بالنسبة لي في المتحف هو لوحة فنية تسمى المدينة بواسطة محمود سعيد.

I am interested in + inf. + ing/n. - إنني مهتم بـ .....
ex. - I am interested in reading funny stories. - إنني مهتم بقراءة القصص المضحكة.

2. Giving opinions ٢. إبداء الأراء

• **يمكن أن تستخدم هذه العبارات عند إبداء الأراء:**
- **From my point of view** من وجهة نظري - **It made me feel** لقد جعلني هذا أشعر
- **I think** أفكر / اعتقد - **In my opinion** من رأيي
ex. - From my point of view, the artists were really good.

3. Giving recommendations ٣. إعطاء التوصيات / التزكية

• **يمكن أن تستخدم هذه العبارات عند إعطاء التوصيات:**
- **I recommend + (inf. + ing)** - أوصى بـ .....
- **It's a good idea to + inf.** - إنها لفكرة جيدة أن .....
- **You should + inf.** - ينبغي أن .....
- **The best thing about ..... is that .....** - أفضل شئ عن ..... هو أن .....

ex. - I recommend visiting the Textile Museum in Cairo. It is fantastic.
- It's a good idea to go early when it is not very busy.
- You should see a doctor if you are sick.
- The best thing about the museum is that it is free to visit.

III Language

Expressing ability and inability in the present

التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة في المضارع

نستخدم **can / can't + inf.** للتعبير عن القدرة أو عدم القدرة للقيام بفعل شيء ما فى المضارع.

1 Can
يستطيع

Affirmative الإثبات → Subject الفاعل + can + inf. مصدر الفعل .

ex. She can draw a picture.

Negative النفى → Subject الفاعل + can't + inf. المصدر .

ex. I can't do make-up.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام → Can + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر ?

ex. Can you drive a car ? - Yes, I can.

تستخدم **(know how to)** للتحدث عن القدرة على فعل شيء ما.

2 know how to
يعرف كيف أن ....

Affirmative الإثبات → Subject الفاعل + know / knows + how to + inf. المصدر .

ex. - Habiba knows how to write a script.
- I know how to sew clothes.

Negative النفى → Subject الفاعل + don't / doesn't + know how to + inf. المصدر .

ex. - I don't know how to do calligraphy.
- He doesn't know how to write stories.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام → Do / Does + subject الفاعل + know how to + inf. المصدر ?

ex. - Do you know how to play an instrument ?
- Does she know how to sew costumes ?

تستخدم **(be) able to** للتعبير عن القدرة على فعل شيء ما.

3 (be) able to يكون قادر على

Affirmative الإثبات → Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + able to قادراً على + inf. المصدر .

ex. - Tamer is able to swim.
- I am able to draw.

Negative النفى → Subject الفاعل + am not / isn't / aren't + able to قادراً على + inf. المصدر .

ex. Mostafa isn't able to act.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام → Am / Is / Are + subject الفاعل + able to قادراً على + inf. المصدر ?

ex. - Are you able to help with music ?
- Is she able to play the drums ?

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. He ..... how to use a computer. *(Samanoud - Gharbia 2024)*
   a. know b. is known c. knowing d. knows
2. Are you ..... remember your dreams ? *(South Suez - Suez 2024)*
   a. able to b. can c. know how to d. knows how it
3. Lamia and I ..... how to use computer. *(Samalout - Minia 2023)*
   a. knows b. knowing c. to know d. know
4. Do you know ..... to use a computer ? *(Zefta - Ghariba 2023)*
   a. what b. who c. how d. which
5. ..... you able to draw and paint ? *(Obour - Qalyubia 2022)*
   a. Can b. Are c. Will d. Would
6. SB I ..... talk to people at drama club about acting.
   a. can b. able to c. is able d. able
7. WB I can't play football but I know how to ..... tennis.
   a. plays b. play c. played d. playing

El-Moasser Exercises

8. Do you ..... play the piano ?
   a. know how b. know how to c. able to d. are able
9. Dalia ..... swim, but she can fly a kite.
   a. don't b. isn't c. can't d. hasn't
10. ..... Rokaya able to ride her motorbike well ?
   a. Can b. Is c. Does d. Did

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. My mother can ..... (making) a cake. *(El Zarka - Damietta 2024)*
2. They ..... (able) to write the script. *(Boulak El Dakrour - Giza 2024)*
3. At clubs, players learn ..... (how) play well. *(Qeft - Qena 2024)*
4. Ali ..... (able) play tennis. *(West Shubra El Kheima - Qalyubia 2022)*
5. SB I can ..... (playing) the guitar. *(El Marg - Cairo 2022)*
6. SB ..... (You know) how to do any of the types of art ?
7. SB I know how ..... (sew) costumes.
8. WB Can you ..... (to play) football or tennis ?

El-Moasser Exercises

9. Sara ..... (know) how to paint a scenery.
10. What can you ..... (did) in your free time ?
11. I ..... (be) able to ride a bike.
12. Adel ..... (isn't) know how to speak French.

A week is enough
EL-MOASSER
مراجعة المنهج
والتمكن منه فى
اسبوع واحد فقط



Speaking & writing corner

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات فى أسئلة Paragraphs, E-mails & Dialogues الـ
قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & E-mails

The Modern Egyptian Art Museum

Step 1 Vocabulary
اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. Did you visit the Modern Egyptian ..... ?
   متحف الفن
   - Yes, I did.

2. What were there in the museum ?
   - There were ..... of both important and normal Egyptian people.
   لوحات فنية

Step 2 Speaking
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث

Complete the following dialogue :

Eman is talking to Heba who went to the Modern Egyptian Art Museum yesterday.

Eman : Hello, Heba. How are you ?
Heba : Hello, Eman. (1) ..... .
Eman : (2) ..... ?
Heba : I went to the Modern Egyptian Art Museum yesterday.
Eman : (3) ..... ?
Heba : I went by taxi.
Eman : What did you see ?
Heba : (4) ..... .
Eman : Did you enjoy it ?
Heba : (5) ..... .

Step 3 Writing
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Write a short review on :

"The Modern Egyptian Art Museum"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

The Textile Museum in Cairo

1. When did you visit the ..... ?
   متحف المنسوجات
   - Last week.

2. What was your ..... about the museum ?
   وجهة نظر
   - From my point of view, the statues showing people wearing the clothes really teach you about life in the past.

A : Can I ask you some questions ?
B : (1) ..... .
A : (2) ..... ?
B : The Textile Museum is in Cairo.
A : (3) ..... ?
B : Yes, it is far from here.
A : How can I go there ?
B : (4) ..... .
A : What do you think about the museum ?
B : (5) ..... .

"The Textile Museum in Cairo"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

General Exercises

On Lessons 1 & 2

Understand Apply Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. Where did they go ? - To ..... .
   a. Cairo b. Aswan c. Luxor d. Paris
2. They visited the ..... .
   a. Pyramids b. funfair
   c. Egyptian Museum d. cinema
3. How did they go there ?
   a. On foot b. By taxi c. On a bus d. By car
4. They saw a lot of ..... .
   a. cars b. metros c. trains d. monuments

(Itsa - Fayoum 2024)

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Jana is talking to Judy about a visit to Luxor by plane.

Jana: Good morning. Where are you going ?
Judy: (1) ..... .
Jana: I'm going to Luxor, too.
Judy : Fantastic ! (2) ..... ?
Jana: It will take about an hour.
Judy : (3) ..... ?
Jana: With my family. Would you like to visit temples ?
Judy : (4) ..... .
Jana: Do you have a good camera ?
Judy : (5) ..... .

(Sinnours - Fayoum 2024)

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My dress is damaged, so my mother is ..... it. *(Omrania – Giza 2024)*
   a. cleaning b. sewing c. tidying d. washing
2. Samy ..... visiting Alexandria. It is very good in summer.

(Borg Al Arab - Alexandria 2022)

a. recommends b. listens c. reads d. mends

3. Old bowls were made of ..... from the river in Ancient Egypt.
a. wood b. glass c. clay d. stone

4. My friend is good at writing ..... for plays. *(Maadi - Cairo 2023)*
a. scripts b. scenery c. costumes d. instruments

5. Ahmed Zaki was a famous ..... . He played many amazing roles in many films.
a. actor b. doctor c. nurse d. farmer

6. You don't pay money for getting into the museum. It's for ..... .
a. expensive b. free c. cheap d. ancient

7. I don't ..... how to send any e-mails. *(Samalut - Minya 2022)*
a. knows b. knowing c. knew d. know

8. WB ..... you know how to use the computer ?
a. Have b. Were c. Do d. Are

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Does Ali ..... (knows) how to spell words ? *(Helioplis - Cairo 2024)*
2. My father knows ..... (what) to climb the mountain.
3. She can ..... (cooking) koshari.
4. ..... (Be) you able to do sport ? *(Fayid - Ismailia 2022)*
5. I ..... (am able) play music.

5 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Soha telling her about your visit to the Egyptian Museum and the things you saw there. Your name is Khalid and your email address is khalid@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is soha@gmail.com

From
To
Subject

....., ...

Lessons

3&4

SB pages 26 : 28
WB pages 86 & 87



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

orchestra (n)	فرقة موسيقية	wonder (ed) (v)	يتعجب - يتسائل
musician (n)	موسيقار	hug (ged) (v)	يحضن
radio reporter (n)	مراسل إذاعي	blind (n), (adj)	أعمى - كفيف
disabled (n), (adj)	عاجز - لديه إعاقة	deaf (n), (adj)	أصم
concert (n)	حفلة موسيقية	Braille (n)	طريقة برايل للمكفوفين
proud (adj)	فخور	public transport	وسائل المواصلات العامة

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

wonders - disabled - public transport - deaf

1. That man is ..... . He isn't able to hear.
2. Ahmed ..... if he can travel to Aswan alone.
3. Using ..... can help to reduce pollution.

Lesson 3

SB pages 26 & 27 WB page 86

skills (n)	مهارات	violin (n)	آلة الكمان
surprising (adj)	مدهش - مفاجئ	classical music	موسيقى كلاسيكية
traffic lights (n)	إشارات المرور	wheelchair (n)	كرسي متحرك
stairs (n)	درجات السلم	difficulty (n)	صعوبة - عائق

Lesson 4

SB page 28 WB page 87

relationship (n)	علاقة	events (n)	أحداث
carefully (adv)	بحذر - بحرص	blog (n)	مدونة إلكترونية
imagine (d)(v)	يتخيل	newspaper (n)	جريدة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
fall يسقط	fell	fallen
leave يترك - يغادر	left	left

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

blind	not able to see	كفيف البصر
deaf	not able to hear	أصم
disabled	not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can	عاجز - لديه إعاقة
wonder	think about something and want to know why it is true.	يتعجب - يتسائل
hug	put your arms around someone and hold them closely, usually because you love them.	تحتضن
orchestra	a large group of musicians who play many different instruments together	أوركسترا [فرقة موسيقية]
hide	go to a place where you cannot be seen or found, or put something in a place where it cannot be seen or found	يخفى /يختبئ
musician	someone who is very good at playing music, usually as a job	موسيقار
cry	produce water from eyes, usually because you are sad, angry or hurt	يبكي

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
interesting شيق / ممتع	exciting / fantastic	boring ممل
international دولى / عالمى	global / universal	local محلى
special خاص / مميز	important / particular	common / ordinary عادى
difficult صعب / شاق	hard	easy سهل

Prefixes & Suffixes		مقاطع بادئة وناهية
Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
–ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	carefully بحرص / بحذر
–ship	تكون اسمًا	relationship علاقة / صلة
–al	تكون صفة	classical تقليدى / كلاسيكى
–ian	تكون اسمًا [يدل على وظيفة]	musician موسيقار

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The antonym of the word "local" is ".....".
   a. national b. international c. classical d. historical
2. The exam was difficult, it wasn't ..... .
   a. hard b. unavailable c. common d. easy
3. To get the adverb from the adjective "careful", we add the suffix ".....".
   a. –ly b. –al c. –ous d.–y
4. To get the job from the word "music", we add the suffix ".....".
   a. –ance b. –tion c. –ian d. –ship
5. The word "special" has the same meaning as the word ".....".
   a. particular b. common c. ordinary d. easy

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 orchestra / band / concert

* **orchestra** فرقة موسيقية [دائمًا تعزف الموسيقى الكلاسيكية]
  - Om Kalthoum had a great **orchestra**.
* **band** فرقة موسيقية [دائمًا تعزف الموسيقى الشعبية أو موسيقى الجاز]
  - Tamer's **band** plays pop music well.
* **concert** حفلة موسيقية
  - I love music. I will go to the **concert**.

(SB page 26)

2 disabled / the disabled / unable

* **disabled (adj)** لديه إعاقة - عاجز
  - He has lost his leg. He is **disabled**.
* **the disabled** متحدي الإعاقة [تعامل كإسم جمع]
  - **The disabled** have a private gate to get into the cinema.
* **unable (adj)** غير قادر
  - He's **unable** to use the computer. *(SB page 27)*

3 instrument - tool

* **instrument (n)** آلة [موسيقية]
  - The violin is a musical **instrument**.
* **tool (n)** أداة [مثل الأدوات التي يستخدمها النجار]
  - Hammers and nails are **tools** used by carpenters. *(SB page 28)*

4

عند استخدام (the) أمام بعض الصفات تتحول إلى اسم جمع

- The blind المكفوفين
- The deaf الصم

Important Expressions & Prepositions

Expressions			
make notes	يدون ملاحظات	have a good relationship	لديه علاقة طيبة [جيدة]
Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra	أوركسترا جمعية النور والأمل	become blind	يصبح كفيف
spend a long time	يقضى وقتًا طويل	practise instruments	يتدرب على الآلات الموسيقية
swap roles	يتبادل الأدوار	read the music	يقرأ النوتة الموسيقية
Prepositions			
on the floor / street	على الأرضية / في الشارع	a list of	قائمة من
a person in a wheelchair	شخص على كرسي متحرك	in the way	بالطريقة
be in the orchestra	يكون عضو في الفرقة الموسيقية	a school for girls	مدرسة بنات
special about	مميز بخصوص	throw .... down	يطرح [شيء] أرضًا
an introduction to	مقدمة لـ	shout at	يصيح / يصرخ في
at the end	في النهاية	on public transport	في وسائل المواصلات العامة

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson (3) SB page 26

1. The radio reporter is visiting a very **special** (1) school in Cairo for **blind** (2) students.
2. The students study their usual subjects in the morning and then **practise** (3) their instruments in the afternoon.
3. Many students join Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra.
4. The orchestra plays **concerts** (4) in Australia, Germany, China and all around the world.
5. All the students learn to read the music using **Braille** (5), a type of reading you can do with your hands.
6. They have to remember the music because they can't read and play **at the same time** (6).

on Lesson (4) SB page 28

1. Jo came into the room with a **newspaper** (7) while Meg, Beth and Amy were sewing.
2. She shouted and read them a story called "The Rival Painters".
3. Meg liked the story but found that the **characters** (8) are named after two of their favourite names.
4. Meg found out Jo was the writer of the story, and they **hugged** (9) her.

(1) خاص	(2) كفيف البصر	(3) يتدرب / يمارس	(4) حفلات موسيقية
(5) طريقة برايل للمكفوفين	(6) فى نفس الوقت	(7) جريدة - صحيفة	(8) شخصيات القصة
(9) يحتضن			

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

* Blind people
* How to help the disabled
* An exciting story you have read

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ال من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 26

Radio Reporter(1) :



Today I'm visiting a very **special school**(2) in Cairo. This is a music school for girls. All the students study their usual subjects in the morning and then **practise**(3) their instruments in the afternoon. Many of the students at this school **join**(4) **an orchestra**(5) called the Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra. This orchestra plays **concerts**(6) in Australia, Germany, China and all around the world. What is most special about the school and the orchestra is that all the students here are **blind**(7)!

The orchestra plays **international**(8) **classical**(9) and Arabic music.

All the students learn to read the music using Braille, a type of reading you can do with your hands. Then, they have to remember the music because they can't read and play at the same time. Let's go to meet some of the **musicians**(10).

(1) مراسل إذاعي	(2) مدرسة خاصة	(3) يمارس / يتدرب	(4) يلتحق بـ / ينضم	(5) أوركسترا (فرقة موسيقية)
(6) حفلات موسيقية	(7) كفيف البصر	(8) دولي / عالمي	(9) تقليدى / كلاسيكى	(10) عازفي الموسيقى

Reading

on Lesson 3 WB page 86

The Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra is at a school for blind girls in Cairo.

Eman Badr is one of the musicians.

She is able to play the **violin**(1) very well.

She started playing when she was six. Eman became blind when she was two years old. She likes playing in the orchestra because she loves music and being with her friends.



(1) آلة الكمان

Recently(2), she visited **Oman**(3) and **France**(4) with the orchestra.
I think the orchestra is **amazing**(5). It must be very difficult to read music with your hands and then remember it. I would like to go to one of their concerts.

Answer the following questions :

Extracting information إستخراج معلومات

Learn 1. When did Eman Badr become blind ?
- She became blind at the age of two.

Practise 2. What countries has Eman visited recently with the orchestra ?
.....

(2) حديثًا / مؤخرًا
(3) دولة عمان
(4) دولة فرنسا
(5) رائع / مدهش

on Lesson 4 SB page 28

Little Women by Louisa May Alcott

Meg, Beth and Amy were **sewing**(1) when Jo came into the room with a **newspaper**(2). She sat down and started to read it.
"Anything interesting ?" asked Meg.
"Oh, only a story," Jo replied.
"What's it called?" asked Beth.
She **wondered**(3) why Jo was **hiding**(4) behind the newspaper.



"It's called *The Rival Painters,*" said Jo.
"Why don't you read it to us?" asked Amy.
Jo started to read it very quickly. The girls listened carefully. The story was very sad.
"I liked it," said Meg at the end. She was **crying**(5) a little. "Isn't it strange that the **characters**(6) are called two of our favourite names ?"
Beth saw Jo's face. "Who wrote the story?" she asked.
Jo jumped up, threw the paper down and said, "Your sister!"
"You?" shouted Meg. "It's very good!" said Amy.
"I knew it ! I knew it! Oh, I am so **proud**(7)!" said Beth, **hugging**(8) her sister.

(1) يخيط / يحيك	(2) جريدة	(3) تسائلت	(4) يخفى / يختفى
(5) يبكي	(6) شخصيات (القصة)	(7) فخور	(8) يحضن

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. My mother ..... me when I do something good.
   a. punishes b. hugs c. hits d. drives
2. Using ..... transport can reduce pollution in Cairo.
   a. public b. private c. cheap d. expensive
3. She ..... why Jasmin was hiding behind the newspaper.
   a. wandered b. wondered c. read d. cried

SB , WB and Previous Exams

4. The ..... man can't see the traffic light. *(Maadi - Cairo 2024)*
   a. blind b. deaf c. disabled d. dump
5. Ali used a/an ..... because he cannot walk. *(El Marg - Cairo 2024)*
   a. armchair b. wheelchair c. stool d. stair
6. My brother is a/an ..... in the orchestra. *(El Dokki - Giza 2023)*
   a. owner b. maker c. musician d. pair
7. The ..... is my favourite musical instrument. *(Sheikh Zayed - Giza 2023)*
   a. carriage b. ruler c. violin d. hammer
8. If a person is ....., they are not able to hear. *(Minya - Minya 2022)*
   a. blind b. deaf c. strong d. weak
9. ..... people can't walk. *(Al Amerya - Alexandria 2022)*
   a. Blind b. Deaf c. Dumb d. Disabled
10. SB What ..... do you think musicians need ?
    a. money b. skills c. time d. power

El-Moasser Exercises

11. We must stop when the ..... are red.
    a. books b. people c. traffic lights d. houses
12. ..... you were flying, where would you like to fly ?
    a. Join b. Imagine c. Put d. Decide

Definitions

13. A/An ..... is a large group of musicians who play different instruments together.
a. concert b. orchestra c. opera d. staff

14. " ....." means to think about something and want to know why it is true.
a. Imagine b. Wonder c. Leave d. Fall

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. We are doing an experiment and ..... notes.
a. talking b. making c. playing d. diving

(Al Bagour - Menoufia 2024)

16. Don't shout ..... children. You should be kind to them.
a. on b. at c. of d. from

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Discussion on helping disabled people

مناقشة عن مساعدة ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة

Questions	Answers
1. How do you think we can help disabled people ? - كيف تعتقد يمكننا مساعدة ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة ؟	- I think we should ask a person in a wheelchair if they need help. - أعتقد أنه ينبغي أن نسأل أي شخص يستخدم كرسي متحرك إذا كان يحتاج أي مساعدة.
2. Do you think it is a good idea to have special schools for blind people ? Why / Why not ? - هل تعتقد إنها فكرة جيدة ان تؤسس مدارس خاصة للمكفوفين ؟ لما/لما لا ؟	- Yes, I do. Because they need special help to learn well. - نعم، أعتقد ذلك، لأنهم يحتاجون للمساعدة بشكل خاص ليحصلوا على تعليم جيد.

How to help disabled people

Step 1 Vocabulary
اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. How can we help ..... people? ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة
   - I think we should ask any person in a wheelchair if they need help.
2. What does the word "disabled" ..... ?
   تعنى - تقصد
   - It means not able to use a part of the body in the way other people can.

Step 2 Speaking
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث

Complete the following dialogue :

A : Can I ask you some questions ?
B : (1) ..... .
A : (2) ..... ?
B : It means not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can.
A : (3) ..... ?
B : Yes, blind and deaf people are disabled.
A : Are there any schools for disabled people ?
B : (4) ..... .
A : How can blind people read and write ?
B : (5) ..... .

Step 3 Writing
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Write a paragraph on :

"How to help disabled people"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Blind people

1. Who was Taha Hussien ?
   - He was one of the most famous Egyptian ..... . كُتّاب
2. Do you think ..... people can participate in creative activities ? المكفوفين
   - I think blind people can do fantastic things.

A : What are you doing ?
B : (1) ..... .
A : What is the article about ?
B : (2) ..... .
A : (3) ..... ?
B : Taha Hussien was one of the most famous Egyptian writers.
A : (4) ..... ?
B : He went blind when he was a child.
A : Do you like his books ?
B : (5) ..... .

"Blind people"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

General Exercises

On Lessons 3 & 4

Understand Apply Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. Rawan is a ..... girl.
   a. brave b. blind c. dumb d. deaf
2. She likes ..... .
   a. English b. sport c. cooking d. calligraphy
3. She plays ..... .
   a. table tennis b. basketball c. volleyball d. tennis
4. She came ..... in the last competition.
   a. first b. second c. third d. fourth

(Menouf - Menoufia 2023)

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Eman is talking with Dina about musical instruments.

Eman : Hi, Dina. Where are you going ?
Dina : Hi, Eman. (1) ..... .
Eman : (2) ..... ?
Dina : I started the guitar lesson two months ago.
Eman : (3) ..... ?
Dina : I go there three times a week.
Eman : Is it near ?
Dina : (4) ..... .
Eman : Can I come with you ?
Dina : (5) ..... .

(El Salam - Cairo 2022)

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. **A :** What is your favourite musical instrument ? **B :** The .....
   a. violin b. cook c. laptop d. TV

(Ashmoun - Menoufia 2024)

2. "Braille" is a special writing for the ..... .
   a. blind b. deaf c. dump d. disabled

(Mataryia - Cairo 2022)

3. My cousin is ..... . She uses sign language.
   a. tired b. strong c. deaf d. interested

4. " ..... " is not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can.
   a. Disabled b. Surprising c. Proud d. Careful

5. WB My little sister started to ..... after she fell and hurt her hand.
   a. hide b. wonder c. hug d. cry

6. I love my cousins. We ..... a good relationship.
   a. are b. have c. shout d. cry

7. Farid ..... fix the car. He is able to do it.
   a. isn't able b. cannot c. can d. is able

8. They ..... able to know who the writer of the story is.
   a. isn't b. aren't c. wasn't d. doesn't

(Agouza - Giza 2023)

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. He ..... (not know) how to make falafel. *(El Dokki - Giza 2024)*
2. ..... (Be) he able to read French ? *(Heliopolis - Cairo - 2022)*
3. Amira is able ..... (play) a musical instrument.
4. What can you ..... (doing) to help disabled people ?
5. Does she know how ..... (answer) the test ?

5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

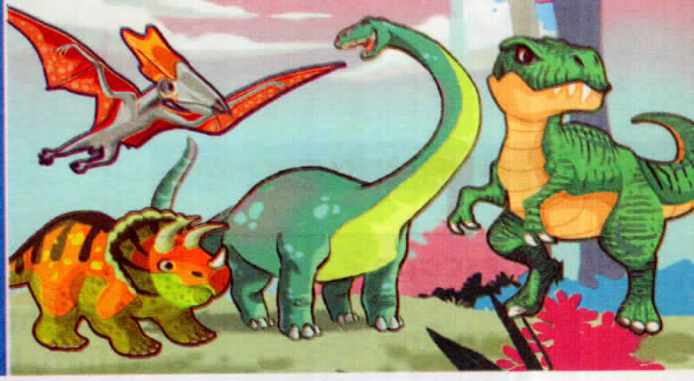
"How to help the disabled"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Lessons

5&6

SB pages 29 & 30
WB pages 88 & 89



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

invitation (n)	دعوة	adventure film (n)	فيلم مغامرات
request (n)	طلب	star (n)	نجم / ممثل مشهور
escape (d) (v)	يهرب	reviewer (n)	ناقد أدبي
theme park (n)	مدينة ملاهي	invite (d) (v)	يدعو
actions (n)	أحداث [فى فيلم أو رواية]	view (n)	منظر

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

escaped - invitation - star - theme park

1. Mayar sent me a/an ..... to go to the concert.
2. A large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc is called ..... .
3. The thief climbed the garden fence and ..... .

Lesson 5

SB page 29 WB page 88

telephone conversation	محادثة تليفونية	table tennis (n)	لعبة تنس الطاولة
family party (n)	حفلة عائلية	complete (d) (v)	يكمل

Lesson 6

SB page 30 WB page 89

Jurassic (n)	العصر الجوراسي	hidden (adj)	مخفي - مخبأ
scary (adj)	مخيف	summary (n)	ملخص
real (adj)	حقيقى	fires (n)	حرائق
recycle (d)(v)	يعيد تصنيع	present (ed) (v),(n)	يقدم - يعرض - هدية
land (ed)(v), (n)	يهبط / أرض يابسة	schoolboys (n)	تلاميذ

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

action	the things that happen in a film	أحداث [في فيلم أو رواية]
adventure film	a film that has a lot of exciting events	فيلم ذو أحداث مثيرة
adventure	an exciting and sometimes dangerous experience	مغامرة

escape	to leave a place that you should stay in	يهرب
review	to present a summary, an opinion and recommendation of a film, book or play	ينتقد - ينقد
theme park	a large park with machines to ride on or play games on, and with cafés, restaurants, etc.	مدينة ملاهي

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

give	information	يقدم معلومات	**have**	a picnic	يقوم بنزهة فى الهواء الطلق
	a presentation	يقدم عرض	**make**	a presentation	يعد عرض
	advice	يقدم نصيحة		films	يصور / يصنع أفلام
do	calligraphy	يمارس فن الخط		sculptures	يصنع قطع فنية منحوتة
stop	fires	يطفئ الحرائق			

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
escape	يهرب	run away	stay	يبقى / يظل
horrible	فظيع / رهيب	terrible	good - fantastic	جيد - رائع

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
re–	تشير إلى أداء الفعل مرة ثانية	recycle	يعيد تصنيع
–ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	action	حركة
–er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	writer	كاتب

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The prefix "....." is used to add the meaning "do again".
   a. un– b. re– c. im– d. dis–
2. The antonym of the word "horrible" is ".....".
   a. bad b. ugly c. fantastic d. sad
3. To get the noun from the verb "act", we add the suffix ".....".
   a. –er b. –ion c. –ness d. –ed

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 adventure (n) مغامرة [اسم يعد]

- Basem likes **adventures**.

عند استخدام كلمة (adventure) قبل اسم آخر تتحول لصفة للاسم ولا تجمع أبدًا.

- adventure stories قصص مغامرات - adventure film فيلم مغامرات

(SB page 30)

2 star (n) نجم [اسم يعد]

- The **stars** are shining in the sky.

وتشير أيضًا إلى شخص مشهور في [التمثيل - الموسيقى أو الرياضة].

- a football star لاعب كرة قدم مشهور - a film star ممثل سينمائي مشهور

(SB page 30)

3 park - bark

* **park (n)** حديقة

- Cairo has a lot of public **parks**.

* **park (v)** يركن سيارة

- Don't **park** your car here. It's not allowed.

* **bark (v)** ينبح

- Dogs **bark** when they see strangers.

(SB page 30)

4 scary - scared

* **scary (adj)** مخيف

- I don't like **scary** films.

* **scared (adj)** خائف / مرعوب

- Rahma feels **scared** when seeing dogs.

(SB page 30)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
See you then.	أراك لاحقًا.	instead of	بدلًا من
leave my house	أغادر منزلي	decide to	يقرر أن
How's it going ?	كيف تسير الأمور ؟	decide on	يحدد / يختار
nearly dark	مظلم تقريبًا	on the radio	على / عبر الراديو
present your ideas	اعرض أفكارك	summary of ...	ملخص لـ ...

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

on Lesson [5] SB page 29

1. Warda was **wondering**(1) if Rawia would like to come to watch a film at her house tonight.
2. The film was of a famous book called "Little Women".
3. Warda had lots of **snacks**(2) and Rawia would bring some **fruit juice**(3).

on Lesson [5] WB page 88

1. Salem was wondering if Nader would like to come to his cousin's house the next day.
2. They would play table tennis.
3. Nader would **bring**(4) some sandwiches and they had a picnic.

on Lesson [6] SB page 30

1. **Jurassic world**(5) is an **adventure**(6) film.
2. It is about a theme park where scientists have helped dinosaurs to live again !
3. The stars of the film are Chris Pratt and Bryce Dallas Howard.
4. Some of the dinosaurs **escaped**(7).
5. The film was exciting and **scary**(8).
6. I recommend this film if you like exciting and scary films.

(1) يتسائل	(2) وجبات خفيفة	(3) عصير فواكه	(4) يحفر
(5) عالم الديناصورات	(6) مغامرة	(7) يهرب	(8) مخيف

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

* A review of a film you have already watched * A picnic you had last weekend

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١١ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 29





Rawia : Hi, Warda!
Warda : Hi Rawia, how's it going ?
Rawia : Fine thanks, how are you ?
Warda : Yeah, I'm good. I was **wondering**(1) if you would like to come to watch a film at my house tonight.
Rawia : Yeah, cool, I'd love to. Which film ?
Warda : I've got the film of a famous book. Would you like to watch Little Women ?
Rawia : Oh, yes please - I love the book! Shall I **bring**(2) some **drinks**(3) or **snacks**(4) ?
Warda : I have lots of snacks but not much to drink. Could you bring some **fruit juice**(5) ?
Rawia : Of course, no problem. What time should I come ?
Warda : About 7 pm ?
Rawia : Great ! See you then.

(1) يتسائل | (2) يحضر | (3) مشروبات | (4) وجبات خفيفة | (5) عصير فواكه

on Lesson 7 SB page 31

Sami : Hi Omar, I was wondering if you were busy tonight.
Omar : No, I'm not busy. Why ?
Sami : Would you like to come to my house to listen to some music ?
Omar : Yes, that sounds cool! Shall I bring anything ?
Sami : Yes, could you bring your guitar and we can play some songs, too ?
Omar : Good idea! What time should I come ?
Sami : About 8 pm. See you then !

Reading

on Lesson 6 SB page 30

A review(1) of Jurassic World

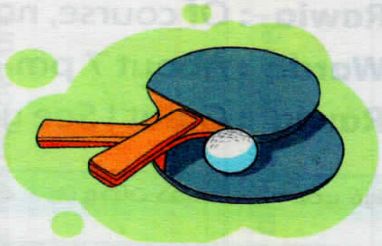


Jurassic World(2) is an **adventure**(3) film. The **stars**(4) of the film are Chris Pratt and Bryce Dallas Howard. It is about a **theme park**(5) where **scientists**(6) have helped dinosaurs to live again! Then some of the dinosaurs **escape**(7). What will happen ?

I thought the **action**(8) was exciting and my favourite thing was the **scary**(9) dinosaurs; they look very **real**(10). But, in my opinion the story isn't very interesting or new. I recommend this film if you like exciting and scary films, but not if you want a good story.

(1) مقال نقدى	(2) عالم الديناصورات	(3) مغامرة	(4) نجوم (الفيلم)	(5) مدينة ملاهى
(6) علماء	(7) يهرب	(8) حدث	(9) مخيف	(10) حقيقى

on Lesson 5 WB page 88



Salem : Hi Nader. I was wondering if you would like to come to my cousin's house tomorrow.

Nader : Yes, I would love to. It's a big house, isn't it ?

Salem : Yes, he's got table tennis in the garden. Would you like to play ?

Nader : Yes, please! Shall I bring some table tennis balls ?

Salem : No, he's got those. Could you bring some food ? We'll have a picnic.

Nader : Of course, I'll bring some sandwiches. What time should I come ?

Salem : We're leaving my house at 10 am.

Nader : Great! See you then.

• on Lesson 6 WB page 89

A review of Lord of the Flies

Lord of the Flies is an adventure story. **It** is by the **British**(1) **writer**(2) William Golding.
It is about some **schoolboys**(3) who have to live on an island after their plane **lands**(4) in the sea and the **pilot**(5) dies. How will the boys live on the **island**(6), and will they **escape**(7) ?
I thought the action was exciting and many amazing things happen to the boys. My favourite part was early in the story, when the children enjoy their time on the island. But, in my opinion, some of the children are **horrible**(8) and I did not like **them**.
I **recommend**(9) the book because it makes you think about what it is like to live only with other children, but it is not a very happy story.

(1) بريطانى
(2) كاتب
(3) تلاميذ
(4) تهبط
(5) طيار
(6) جزيرة
(7) يهرب
(8) رهيب / فظيع
(9) يزكى / يوصى

Answer the following questions :

Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

Learn 1. What does the underlined pronoun "**It**" in the first paragraph refer to ?
- It refers to Lord of the Flies story.

Practise 2. What does the underlined pronoun "**them**" refer to ?
..... .

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. "Jurassic World" is a/an ..... film. The actions were scary and exciting.
   a. romantic b. adventure c. opinion d. comic
2. I'll ..... my friends to my birthday party.
   a. meet b. invent c. interview d. invite
3. Ahmed Helmy is a film ..... . I love him so much.
   a. singer b. writer c. player d. star
4. Yesterday, I heard that a kangaroo ..... from the zoo.
   a. gave b. hid c. escaped d. sold
5. We use "please" to make polite ..... .
   a. request b. offer c. invitation d. pollution

SB , WB and Previous Exams

6. WB The things that happen in a film are called ..... .

a. pottery b. athletics c. actions d. energy

(Burg El Arab - Alexandria 2023 / Heliapois - Cairo 2024)

7. SB There's a great ..... from the top of the tower.

a. review b. watch c. view d. few

8. WB We should ..... all our plastic to use again. *(Deir Mawas - Minya 2022)*

a. burn b. recycle c. throw d. damage

El-Moasser Exercises

9. His new sculpture looks ..... . It looks like his son.

a. funny b. real c. weak d. small

10. The dinosaurs look ..... , they are very big and dangerous.

a. kind b. boring c. scary d. afraid

11. I feel worried when the plane ..... .

a. stays b. gives c. finishes d. lands

▸ Definitions

12. To "....." means to leave a place that you should stay in.

a. wander b. review c. escape d. leave

13. A ..... is a large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc.

a. theme park b. safari park c. garden d. beach

14. To ..... is to present a summary, an opinion and recommendation of a film, book or play.

a. view b. preview c. review d. revise

▸ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. I will come at 7:30 instead ..... 8:00.

a. at b. in c. of d. for

16. Our teacher asked us to ..... a presentation about dinosaurs for the next lesson.

a. make b. leave c. offer d. review

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

1. Inviting people ١. دعوة أشخاص

نستخدم إحدى هذه الصيغ عندما نقوم بدعوة شخص ما.

- **Would you like to ..... ?** هل تحب أن / ترغب في ... ؟
  - **ex.** Would you like to come to my sister's wedding ?
- **I'd like to invite you to ..... .** أود أن أدعوك إلى ...
  - **ex.** I'd like to invite you to a family party.
- **I was wondering if you would like to ...** كنت أتسائل إذا تحب أن [ترغب في] ...
  - **ex.** I was wondering if you would like to come to my house tomorrow.

Accepting and refusing invitations «قبول ورفض الدعوة»

Accepting القبول		Refusing الرفض	
I'd love to !	أود ذلك !	I'm sorry.	آسف.
That / It sounds great !	يبدو عظيمًا !	I'm afraid I can't.	آسف لا استطيع.
		I'd love to, but I can't because	أود ذلك ولكن لا أستطيع بسبب ..... .

2. Offering help ٢. تقديم المساعدة

ex. Shall I bring some drinks or snacks ? هل أحضر بعض المشروبات أو الوجبات الخفيفة ؟

Accepting the offer قبول عرض المساعدة

- Yes, could you bring some juice ? نعم، هل يمكنك إحضار بعض العصير ؟

Refusing the offer رفض عرض المساعدة

- Thanks. I have lots of snacks. شكرًا. أنا لدي الكثير من الوجبات الخفيفة.

3. Making a request ٣. طلب شيء ما

ex. - Could you bring some foods, please ? هل يمكنك إحضار بعض الأطعمة من فضلك ؟

- Yes, of course. I'll bring some sandwiches. نعم بالطبع، سوف أحضر بعض السندوتشات.

4. Asking for information ٤. الاستعلام عن معلومات

ex. - What time should I come ? في أي وقت ينبغي علي الحضور ؟

III Language

1. Making invitations دعوة الأشخاص

نستخدم إحدى هذه الصيغ عندما نقوم بدعوة شخص ما.

- **Would you like to + inf. ... ?** هل تحب أن / ترغب في ... ؟
  ex. Would you like to come to my sister's wedding ?

- **I'd like to invite you to + inf. / n. ...** أود أن أدعوك إلى ...
  ex. - I'd like to invite you to come with me to the cinema.
  - I'd like to invite you to my birthday party.

- **I was wondering if you would like to + inf. ...** كنت أتسائل لو تحب / ترغب في ...
  ex. I was wondering if you would like to come to my cousin's house tomorrow.

2. Making offers تقديم عروض

- **Shall I + inf. ... ?** هل يمكنني أن ..... ؟
  ex. Shall I bring some cakes or fruit ?

- **I'll + inf. ... if you like.** سوف ... لو تحب.
  ex. I'll bring you some coffee if you like.

- **Would you like me to + inf. ... ?** هل تريدني أن ..... ؟
  ex. - Would you like me to open the window ?

- **Can I + inf. ... ?** هل يمكنني أن ..... ؟
  ex. - Can I help you ?

3. Making requests تقديم طلبات

- **Could you + inf. ..... , please ?** أيمكنك أن ..... من فضلك ؟
  ex. Could you open the door for me, please ?

- **Do / Would you mind if you + inf. ... ?** هل تمانع لو ..... ؟
  ex. Do you mind if you open the door for me ?

- **Do / Would you mind (inf. + ing) ... ?** هل تمانع أن ..... ؟
  ex. Would you mind opening the door for me ?

- **I wonder if you could + inf. ...** أنا أتسائل لو تستطيع أن ...
  ex. I wonder if you could help me with my homework.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. Would you mind ..... the door for me, please ? *(Desouk - Kafr El sheikh 2024)*
   a. opening b. open c. opens d. opened
2. I'd ..... invite you to the dolphin show. *(Al Warraq - Giza 2022)*
   a. like b. likes c. liked d. like to
3. ..... you like sugar in your coffee ? – No, thanks. *(Ismailia 2023)*
   a. Does b. Would c. Are d. Were
4. WB I was wondering if you would like ..... to my house tomorrow.
   a. to come b. came c. comes d. come
5. SB Would you like ..... a film of Little Women ? - Of course.
   a. to seeing b. to see c. seeing d. see
6. Shall I ..... you some cake ? *(Sinouress – Fayoum 2023)*
   a. brought b. bring c. bringing d. brings
7. Do you mind if you ..... the window for me ? *(Zaytoun – Cairo 2023)*
   a. opening b. opens c. open d. open to

El-Moasser Exercises

8. She wonders if you could ..... your homework.
   a. do b. does c. did d. doing
9. I'll ..... Aswan if you like to come with me.
   a. visit b. visited c. visits d. visiting
10. Do you mind if I ..... you some questions ?
    a. asked b. ask c. asks d. asking

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. Would you like ..... (come) to my birthday party ? *(Qelein - Kafr El Sheikh 2024)*
2. WB Shall I ..... (bringing) you a cup of coffee ? *(El Ghanaym - Assuit 2024) (El Masara - Cairo 2022)*
3. SB What time should I ..... (comes) to your house ?
4. Would you ..... (to like) to listen to music ? *(East Fayoum - Fayoum 2023)*
5. Do you mind ..... (open) the window ? *(Abdeen - Cairo 2022)*
6. Would you mind if you ..... (helping) me ? *(Matai – Menia 2023)*

El-Moasser Exercises

7. I ..... (get) you some tea if you like.
8. Could you ..... (opening) the door for me, please ?
9. Which play would you like ..... (watch) ?

General Exercises

On Lessons 5 & 6

Understand Apply Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. How was the film ?
   a. Comic b. Funny c. Scary d. Enjoyable
2. What was the film about ?
   a. Dinosaurs b. Camels c. Monkeys d. Tigers
3. When did Ramy see the film ?
   a. Today b. Tonight c. Tomorrow d. Last night
4. What couldn't Ramy do after the film ?
   a. Eat b. Sleep c. Sing d. Drink

(El Edwa - Menia 2023)

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Amany is inviting Sally for watching a film at her house tonight.

Amany : Hi, Sally! How is it going ?
Sally : Hi, Amany! (1) ..... .
Amany : Would you like to watch a film at my house tonight ?
Sally : (2) ..... . When does it start ?
Amany : (3) ..... .
Sally : (4) ..... ?
Amany : It is called "Little Women".
Sally : That's a great film. (5) ..... ?
Amany : No. Don't bring any snacks. Mom will make us cakes and juice.
Sally : Great! I will come before 7. See you then.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The thief ..... from prison yesterday. *(Dairut - Assuit 2024)*
   a. escaped b. stayed c. reached d. swam
2. WB Don't ..... your car outside the school.
   a. bark b. park c. land d. invite

3. A film star knows how to ..... in films.
   a. invite b. act c. escape d. complete
4. Many famous ..... act in that new film. I recommend it.
   a. moons b. writers c. reviewers d. stars
5. Shall I ..... you something to drink ?
   a. bringing b. brought c. bring d. brings
6. ..... park is a large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc. *(Tahta – Souhag 2023)*
   a. Thin b. Same c. Scene d. Theme
7. I'd like to ..... you to my birthday party. *(El Santa - Gharbia 2022)*
   a. invite b. intend c. introduce d. interrupt
8. Adel is able to ..... his new bike.
   a. ride b. rode c. ridden d. rides

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Let's ..... (listens) to some music. *(El Maragha – Sohag 2022)*
2. Would you like ..... (coming) to my birthday party ? *(El Maragha – Sohag 2023)*
3. I will ..... (taught) you the piano if you like.
4. Could you ..... (helping) me with my homework ? *(Atfeh - Giza 2022)*
5. SB Let's go to the park and ..... (flew) our kites.

5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your favourite film"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Understanding reference

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [Understanding reference] وهنا تحتاج لقراءة النص جيدًا [لتحديد ما تشير إليه الكلمة التى تحتها خط].

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question :

Two years ago, my friend Hany went to Cairo to work. When he reached **there**, he was amazed because there were a lot of people and cars he didn't see before. He started looking for work but it was difficult for him to find work as he was young. Finally, he found work in a restaurant. He worked hard every day to get some money to help his younger brothers and sisters. Hany washed the dishes in the restaurant for eight hours a day and sometimes the restaurant owner asked him to collect rubbish.

When the owner noticed that he was an active boy, he gave him extra money to help him and encouraged him to do well.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

The underlined word "**there**" refers to ..... .

a. Minia b. Ghariba c. Cairo d. Aswan

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى ما تشير إليه الكلمة التى تحتها خط.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تستطيع [أن تحدد ما تشير إليه الكلمة التى تحتها خط].

2 Speaking

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] معرفتك لقدر كاف من [Language Functions] والتى غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue :

A : Hi, I'm planning to have a birthday party next week. (1) ..... .

B : Sure, I'd love to come. (2) ..... ?

A : It's on Saturday at 7 p.m. Do you have any plans ?

B : No, I don't have any plans. I'll be there !

A : OK. I'll serve pizza, burgers and some snacks !

B : (3) ..... !

A : (4) ..... ?

B : You can bring some drinks.

A : I'm looking forward to seeing you on Saturday.

B : (5) ..... ! See you on Saturday at 7 p.m.

التحدى تريد التحدث عن [التفضيل ودعوة الأشخاص] وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التى قد تحدث بينك وبين زميلك.

3 Correction notes

• الهدف من هذا الجزء
- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

Review

◄ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

• Subject + can / can't + inf.	تستخدم للتعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة
• Subject + know / knows + how to + inf. • Subject + don't / doesn't know + how to + inf.	تستخدم للتعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة
• Subject + am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't + able to + inf.	تستخدم للتعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة
• Would you like to + inf. ? = I'd like to invite you to + inf.	تستخدم للدعوة
• Shall I + inf. ... ? = Would you like me to + inf. ... ?	تستخدم لتقديم عروض
• Could you + inf. = Can you + inf. ... ? = Would you mind + (v + ing) ... ?	تستخدم لتقديم طلبات

Learn

◄ تعلم

Sentence	Correction	Reason
❶ She knows how to ..... [sews] clothes.	sew	[knows how to] يتبعها مصدر الفعل [inf.]
❷ He ..... [don't] know how to play the trumpet.	doesn't	مع الفاعل المفرد [doesn't]
❸ I'll ..... [bringing] you some fruit.	bring	[will] يتبعها المصدر [inf.]

Practice

◄ تدرب

▸ **Write the Reason :** ◄ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة

❶ Would you mind ..... [give] me the ruler ?	giving	.....
❷ I wonder if you could ..... [helped] me with the housework.	help	.....
❸ I ..... [will] like to invite you to my wedding party.	would	.....
❹ He is ..... [able] speak English well.	able to	.....

▸ **Write the Correction :** ◄ اكتب التصحيح

❶ My mum knows ..... [what] to make jelly.	.....	صيغة التعبير عن القدرة [knows how to]
❷ He can ..... [climbs] the mountain.	.....	[can] يتبعها المصدر [climb]
❸ ..... [Are] you know how to sew a skint ?	.....	السؤال يكون بـ [Do] وليس بـ [Are] صيغة القدرة

مراجعة عامة على Unit 9 فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

blind	كفيف
disabled	عاجز - لديه إعاقة
deaf	أصم
orchestra	فرقة موسيقية
concert	حفلة موسيقية
cartoons	رسوم متحركة
pottery	صناعة الأواني الفخارية / قطع فخارية
sculpture	فن النحت / قطعة فنية منحوتة
artist	فنان / رسام
actions	أحداث
review	مقال نقدي - ينتقد
theme park	مدينة ملاهي
hug	يحضن
cry	يبكى
wonder	يتسائل
sew	يخيط
art	الفن
scenery	خلفية المشهد
escape	يهرب
musical instruments	آلات موسيقية

Language

Use (can), (know how to) or (be able to) to talk about ability

تستخدم (can/know how to/be able to) للحديث عن القدرة

- I can paint scenery if you want, but I can't do make-up.
- Mariam and I know how to sew costumes.
- Are you able to help with music ?

Speaking

1. Talking about preferences and giving recommendations :

الحديث عن الأشياء المفضلة والتوصيات :

A : Did you like the film of "Spiderman" ?

B : I thought it was great! I recommend watching it.

2. Inviting people : دعوة الأشخاص :

- I was wondering if you would like to come to my house tomorrow.

3. Offers : تقديم عروض :

- **Shall I + inf. ..... ?**
  - Shall I bring you some fruit juice ?

4. Requests : تقديم طلبات :

- **Could you + inf. ..... ?**
  - Could you bring me some water, please ?

Review on unit 9
قيم مستواك بقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Questions collected from previous exams

تدريبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Which musical ..... can you play ? *(Matai - Menia 2024)*
   a. machines b. clothes
   c. instruments d. costumes
2. I'd like ..... fish. *(Aswan 2024)*
   a. had b. to have c. having d. have
3. A ..... person is the one who isn't able to hear. *(El Maragha – Souhag 2023)*
   a. blind b. strong c. dumb d. deaf
4. I like walking along the Nile to see the beautiful ..... . *(Edfu - Aswan 2023)*
   a. rubbish b. scenery c. pollution d. traffic
5. ..... people can't see. *(Sahel Sleem – Assuit 2023)*
   a. Deaf b. Strange c. Blind d. Disabled
6. A ..... is a painting or photograph of a person's face. *(Qena 2023)*
   a. statue b. portrait c. scenery d. play
7. He likes ..... . He made this vase. *(Aswan 2023)*
   a. pottery b. sewing c. weaving d. acting
8. A ..... is a period of 100 years.
   a. fortnight b. year c. decade d. century
   (Wasat Alexandria – Alexandria 2023)
9. Fady ..... able to speak two languages well. He likes languages a lot. *(Deir Mawas - Menia 2023)*
   a. is b. was c. are d. were
10. There is a great ..... from the top of the tower. *(Tur Sinai - South Sinai 2023)*
    a. revision b. interview c. view d. review

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. They ..... (knowing) how to swim well. *(Matai - minia 2024)*
2. Hala can ..... (did) karate. *(El Sahel – Cairo 2023)*
3. Are you ..... (able) help me ? *(Nag Hamadi - Qena 2024)*
4. He ..... (not know) how to make falafel. *(El Kousia – Assuit 2023)*
5. I recommended ..... (visit) the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. *(Aswan 2023)*
6. My sister can't ..... (feeding) herself. *(Menia 2023)*
7. They ..... (able to) sew clothes. *(Luxor 2023)*
8. My sister doesn't know how ..... (cooking). She is too young. *(Abu Korkas – Minia 2023)*
9. .....(Is) you able to remember names of your friends easily ? *(Tema – Souhag 2023)*
10. I was ..... (wonder) if you would like to have tea with me. *(El Kousia – Assuit 2023)*

Test on unit 9

Understand Apply Create

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيًا وتصويبه

قم بحل إختبار تراكمي في الملحق

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. Jurassic World is a/an ..... film.
   a. adventure b. historical c. scientific d. action
2. Chris Pratt and Bryce Dallas Howard are the ..... of the film.
   a. workers b. stars c. writers d. readers
3. In the film, scientists have helped ..... to live again.
   a. lions b. dinosaurs c. giraffes d. deers
4. Some dinosaurs ..... after scientists helped them.
   a. found b. cried c. killed d. escaped

(El-Edwa - Minia 2024)

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mustafa and Ahmed are talking about music.

Mustafa : Hello, Ahmed! Do you play musical instruments ?
Ahmed : Hello, Mustafa! (1) ..... .
Mustafa : (2) ..... ?
Ahmed : I can play the guitar.
Mustafa : (3) ..... ?
Ahmed : No, I don't know how to sing.
Mustafa : Are you able to paint scenery ?
Ahmed : (4) ..... . But I can sew costumes.
Mustafa : You are so clever.
Ahmed : (5) ..... .

(Tema - Sohag 2024)

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Music has a very important role in human life. A lot of people all over the world enjoy listening to music or playing it. Some types of music are fast and others are **slow**.

Music is useful for a lot of people. For example, some doctors use music for sick people to help **them** get better and to be happy. Some mothers play music for their babies at night to help them sleep well.

At school, some teachers use music and songs to let students learn new languages and different subjects easily and in a very simple way.

Also in the gym, music is played during practicing sports to make them feel happy while doing sports. Every country has its own culture and music. *(Luxor 2024)*

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Some doctors use music to help their patients get ..... .

a. bad b. better c. ugly d. worse

2. The underlined word "**slow**" in the passage is the opposite of "....." .

a. big b. tall c. fast d. happy

b. Answer the following questions :

3. Give a suitable title to the passage.

.....

4. What does the underlined pronoun "**them**" refer to ?

.....

5. Do you think music is useful ? Why / Why not ?

.....

6. Why do some teachers use music and songs at school ?

.....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The kids spend their Saturdays watching ..... .

a. cartons b. cartoons c. costumes d. views

2. Sara is good at ..... make-up.

a. giving b. taking c. doing d. having

3. A violin is a musical ..... .

a. tool b. instrument c. machine d. band

4 . A/An ..... is someone who does paintings and drawings.

(El Ghanyem - Assuit 2023)

a. pilot b. teacher c. artist d. nurse

5. In my ..... , our national team is the best football team in Africa.
a. book b. view c. script d. cartoon
(El Zaitoun - Cairo 2022)

6. He can't see because he is ..... . *(Souhag 2023)*
a. blind b. weak c. brave d. deaf

7. Could you ..... me fresh juice ?
a. brought b. brings c. bringing d. bring

8. Do you know how ..... this machine ? *(Bulaq El Dakrour - Giza 2022)*
a. repairs b. to repair c. repairing d. repair

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. ..... (Be) your brother able to speak English well ? *(Minia 2024)*
2. ..... (Do) I make you a sandwich ? *(Siwa - Marsa Matrouh 2022)*
3. He would like to ..... (knowing) how to solve problems. *(Aswan 2023)*
4. Let's ..... (going) to the club. *(Bab El Sharia - Cairo 2022)*
5. He is able to ..... (won) the match.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Jurassic World is a/an ..... film.
   a. pollution b. adventure c. picnic d. science
2. Some dinosaurs ..... .
   a. played b. studied c. stayed d. escaped

2. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Nour is asking Mohamed about his visit to the Pyramids.

Nour : Have you ever visited the Pyramids ?
Mohamed: (1) ..... .
Nour : What did you see there ?
Mohamed: (2) ..... .
Nour : (3) ..... ?
Mohamed: Last winter.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My friend is good at writing ..... for plays.
   a. scripts b. scenery c. costumes d. instruments
2. SB I can ..... scenery if you want, but I can't do make-up.
   a. explore b. paint c. sew d. have
3. I need to learn ..... for the school play.
   a. reading b. running c. sculpture d. acting
4. SB I ..... play music.
   a. able to b. am able to
   c. able d. am able
5. Do you ..... how to use the computer ?
   a. knew b. know c. knows d. knowing

4. Read the following, then answer the questions :

Disabled means someone who isn't able to use a part or parts of the body in the way other people can. The disabled are not different but they need more help.

For example, the blind need special schools to learn how to use Braille. They can read and write, draw and even play music. They also need help to be able to communicate well. To conclude, the disabled are heroes. They can do amazing things. They need more help to live a normal life.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does the underlined word "**Disabled**" mean ?
   .....
2. How can the blind read and write ?
   .....
3. What do they need to communicate well ?
   .....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The blind need ..... schools to learn how to use Braille.
   a. especially b. special
   c. private d. public
5. The disabled need more help to live a ..... life.
   a. ubnormal b. normal c. unusual d. lazy

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I know how **sew** costumes. (.....)
2. He is able to **starting** work now. (.....)
3. Can you **to play** football or tennis? (.....)
4. **Be** he able to read the lesson alone? (.....)

6. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

"The Museum of Modern Egyptian Art"

.....
.....

نموذج الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

Mona and Amal are talking about going to the theatre.

Mona : What are you going to do this evening ?

Amal : (1) ..... .

a. I am going to sleep
b. I am going to read a book
c. I am going to go to the theatre
d. I am going to play tennis

Mona : (2) ..... ?

a. Why are you going there
b. When are you going there
c. Who are you going with
d. How are you going there

Amal : To watch a play, called "Little Women".

Mona : Can I come with you ?

Amal : (3) ..... .

a. No, I can't
b. Yes, with pleasure
c. Sorry I'm busy
d. You can't go tomorrow

Mona : Thank you. (4) ..... ?

a. What time does the play start
b. What time does the film end
c. What time does the play end
d. What time does the film start

Amal : The play starts at 10 p.m.

Mona : Could you bring some food ?

Amal : (5) ..... .

a. Yes, I like music
b. Yes, I like acting
c. Yes, I like doing make-up
d. Yes, of course

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :

6. Shall I ..... (**bringing**) some cakes or fruits ?
   a. bringing to b. bring c. to bring d. brought

7. Are you ..... (**able**) help with music ?
   a. able to b. to able c. can able d. can't able

8. ..... (**Will**) you like to have some tea ?
   a. Can b. Would c. Should d. Might

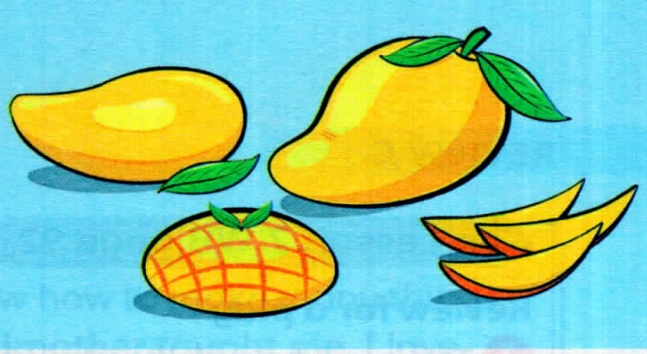
9. Do you know ..... (**who**) to cook the food ?
   a. where b. what c. how d. when

10. Do you mind ..... (**use**) your phone ?
    a. to use b. using c. used d. use to

Review

C

SB pages 32 & 33
WB pages 91 & 92



Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 32

Medical advice for people at the 2021

Handball World Championship(1)



- Stand 1.5 metres from other people.
- Enter and leave the **stadium**(2) through the correct doors.
- **Take a test for COVID-19**(3) every 72 hours.
- Only **players**(4) do not need to wear a **mask**(5).
- Only **online interviews**(6) after games.

(1) بطولة كأس العالم لكرة اليد | (2) ستاد | (3) يخضع للاختبار فيروس كورونا | (4) للاعبين | (5) قناع | (6) مقابلات عبر الانترنت

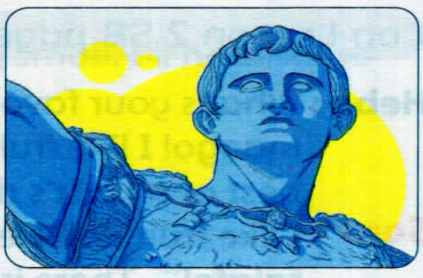
on Lesson 1 SB page 32

Review of Julius Caesar

Last night, I went to see Julius Caesar. It's a play by the English writer William Shakespeare, but it's about a **Roman ruler**(1).

Caesar's costume made him look very important! The scenery was amazing and it really looked like **Ancient Rome**(2).

In my opinion, the story is very sad and I cried at the end. From my point of view, the actor who played Caesar was the best but all the acting was very good. I will never forget this play, but there wasn't much action; it was **mostly**(3) talking. And it was three hours long! If you watch a Shakespeare play, you should know that the language of the script is different to modern English so it can be difficult to understand, but I liked it.



(1) حاكم رومانى | (2) روما القديمة | (3) فى المجمل

on Lesson 2 WB page 92

Review for a play

1 The people look like they are from Ancient Egypt because the **costumes**(1) are very good, but the person who painted the **scenery**(2) did not know how to paint! It was very long, and I didn't like the music. I wouldn't **recommend**(3) this.

Review for a magazine

2 The articles are always really interesting to read and they have fantastic **photographs**(4), too. I really like the **cartoons**(5) because they make me laugh! If you want to learn about the world today, you should buy this!

Review for a museum

3 From my **point of view**(6),this is the best place to find out about life in the last century. There are interesting **sculptures**(7) of people and some other amazing old technology. I loved the big, old **phones**(8)!

Review for a book

4 The story was very slow and there was very little **action**(9) . I didn't really enjoy it because it **made me** (10) feel sad. The **best**(11) thing about it was learning what it is like to be blind. That must be very difficult.

(1) أزياء مناسبات خاصة	(2) خلفية المسرح	(3) يزكى - يوصى	(4) صور فوتوغرافية	(5) رسوم متحركة	(6) وجهة نظر / رأى
(7) قطع فنية منحوتة	(8) الهواتف	(9) حدث	(10) جعلنى	(11) أفضل	

Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 33

Heba : What's your favourite food, Sara ? I like fruit, such as a nice juicy mango! I like fruit more than anything else ... and the fruit I like best of all ... It's difficult to **decide**(1).

Sara : I like fruit, too Heba, but my favourite food is a nice, **fresh falafel**(2). There is a **food stall**(3) near my house where they are very good, and my mum sometimes cooks them, too.

(1) يقرر	(2) طعمية طازجة	(3) كشك لبيع طعام

Heba : What things do you know how to cook, Sara ? I can make omelettes and salads, but I don't know how to make many things.

Sara : I know how to make cakes. My grandmother taught me. I love making cakes, but I eat too many of them. I should eat more fruit.

Heba : Yes, I eat too many cakes, too! I don't do enough exercise. I have a sports lesson at school once a week, and I go for a walk a few times a month with my cousins but that's all. What about you ?

Sara : I play tennis twice a week and I run with my father at the weekend, so I do enough exercise, but I often spend too much time playing computer games in the evenings, so I go to bed late.

Heba : Yes, I spend too much time online in the evenings, too. Let's try to do more exercise next week, Sara!

Sara : Good idea, Heba!

on Lesson 2 WB page 91

Amal : It's Mum's birthday. Let's make her some breakfast.

Dalida : That's a good idea, Amal. We could make her a fruit salad.

Amal : I think she prefers salty food to sweet food, Dalida. What about a cheese omelette ?

Dalida : Omelette is a good idea. Would you like to get the butter from the fridge, Amal ?

Amal : OK.

Dalida : Shall I beat the eggs ? I like doing that. How many eggs should I use ?

Amal : Thanks, Dalida. If there are four of us, you should use eight eggs.

Dalida : Do you know how to chop the cheese, Amal ?

Amal : Of course.

Dalida : It's a good idea to chop the cheese really small. I'll heat some butter in the pan and pour in the eggs.

Amal : How long should it cook for ?

Dalida : We'll leave it for a few minutes.

Amal : It looks really nice. I'd like a lot, please !

Dalida : We can all have a little. Mum will be very pleased !

السؤال الأول فى الورقة الامتحانية :

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Fahmy is on the school ..... team.
   a. athletics b. football c. tennis d. chess
2. Fahmy goes ..... every day.
   a. diving b. running
   c. swimming d. shopping
3. Fahmy needs food that gives him ..... .
   a. sweets b. fats c. energy d. luck
4. He eats ..... healthy snacks, like nuts.
   a. many b. much c. a lot of d. a few

السؤال الثانى فى الورقة الامتحانية :

2. Complete the following dialogue :

Hany and Huda are talking about modern technology.

Hany : Hello Huda ! Can I ask you some questions ?
Huda : Hello Hany ! (1) ..... .
Hany : Are you interested in modern technology ?
Huda : (2) ..... .
Hany : What do you think the most useful technology is ?
Huda : (3) ..... .
Hany : (4) ..... ?
Huda : Because I can do many things on my mobile phone.
Hany : (5) ..... ?
Huda : I can communicate with my friends and I can do the shopping online.

السؤال الثالث فى الورقة الامتحانية :

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

Healthy food is really important for everyone. It helps us grow well and gives us energy. If you want to be healthy, you should eat all types of food. We need to drink much water every day.

Dairy products like milk and cheese are healthy. **They** give us calcium. It helps us to have strong bones. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein in them. We need protein to have a strong body. Fruits and nuts are healthy snacks. People need to eat fresh fruit and vegetables every day.

Sports people are so interested in what they eat. The healthier food they eat, the fitter they will be. Bad habits of having food are the main **reasons** for health problems nowadays.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "**reasons**" has the same meaning as ..... .
   a. causes b. proteins
   c. actions d. meetings

2. We can avoid some health problems by having ..... food.

a. expensive b. cheap
c. healthy d. fatty

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What is the main idea of the passage ?

.....

4. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to ?

.....

5. Why do you think we need protein ?

.....

6. What do dairy products give us ?

.....

السؤال الرابع فى الورقة الامتحانية :

4. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Can you ..... this passage into Arabic ?

a. translate b. transform
c. transmit d. transport

2. He doesn't eat any cakes because he is ..... to nuts.

a. allergic b. usual c. delicious d. enough

3. Try to have a/an ..... diet to keep you healthy.

a. balanced b. long c. fresh d. old

4. If a person is ....., he isn't able to hear.

a. blind b. deaf c. free d. strong

5. A ..... is a musical instrument.

a. cello b. wheelchair
c. portrait d. racket

6. We love to watch the beautiful ..... from the train windows.

a. scenery b. picture c. portrait d. photograph

7. If you ..... to go online, you should ask your parents first.

a. wants b. wanted c. to want d. want

8. Eating ..... fish makes you strong.

a. a lot of b. a lot c. any d. little

السؤال الخامس فى الورقة الامتحانية :

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If I go to the shops, I ..... (spends) a lot of money.
2. There is ..... (a few) milk in the glass.
3. I recommend ..... (reads) this book.
4. Mr Ali ..... (buy) a car in the future.
5. I ..... (knows) how to draw and paint.

السؤال السادس فى الورقة الامتحانية :

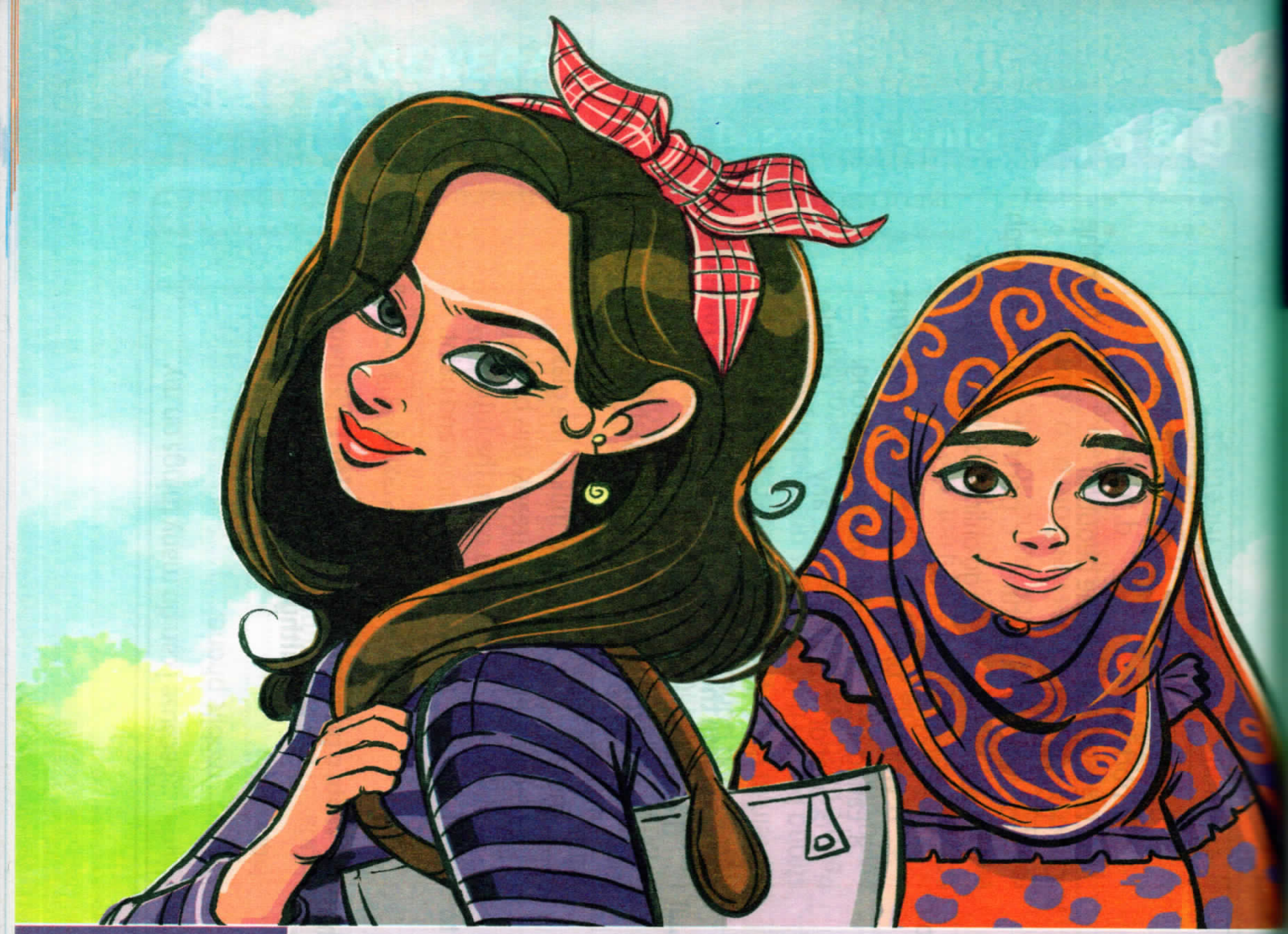
6. Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90)words on :

"Healthy and unhealthy food"

.....

.....

.....



UNIT TEN

We are what we wear

SB pages 34:43 WB pages 93:99

Unit Objectives :

- **Reading :**
  An article about Egyptian clothes now and in the past; a blog about what teenagers wear; a text about linen and cotton; an advert
- **Writing :**
  An advert to sell something
- **Listening :**
  People talking about their clothes; a conversation in a clothes shop
- **Speaking :**
  Discussing and describing clothes; shopping for clothes
- **Language :**
  Adjective order; one, ones
- **Life Skills :**
  Respect for diversity

Lessons

1 & 2

SB pages 34 : 37
WB pages 93 & 94



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

loose (adj)	واسع - فضفاض	climate (n)	مناخ
size (n)	حجم - مقاس	traditional (adj)	تقليدي
style (n)	طراز - أسلوب	casual (adj)	غير رسمي [ملابس]
smart (adj)	أنيق / مهندم - ذكى	colourful (adj)	ملون
striped (adj)	مخطط		

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

size - casual - Smart - climate - striped

1. "....." means looking clean and tidy.
2. Please, I need ..... 42 of these pink trainers.
3. Some countries have a hot ..... most of the year.
4. The zebra has ..... skin.

Items of clothes and accessories

أنماط الملابس وملحقاتها

trainers	حذاء رياضي	galabeya	جلابية [ثوب فضفاض]
robe	عباءة	belt	حزام
headscarf	حجاب الرأس	scarf	وشاح / طرحة
earrings	حلق	jumper	بلوفر
handbag	شنطة يد	necklace	عقد
trousers	بنطلون	jewellery	مجوهرات

Materials

مواد خام

leather	جلد [مدبوغ]	plastic	بلاستيك
gold	ذهب	wool	صوف
cotton	قطن	metal	معدن
linen	كتان	glass	زجاج

Lesson 1

SB pages 34 & 35 WB page 93

relaxed (adj)	مسترخي - مسترخي	outside (adv)	في الخارج
special (adj)	خاص - مميز	protect (ed) (v)	يحمى
a bit (adv)	قليلًا	warm (adj)	دافئ

Lesson 2

SB pages 36 & 37 WB page 94

Ancient Egyptians	قدماء المصريين	electric (adj)	كهربي
sheet (n)	ملاية	wooden (adj)	خشبى
clothing (n)	الملبس	strange (adj)	غريب

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

belt	a strip of leather or material that you wear to support clothes or for decoration حزام
casual	casual clothes are not formal or not suitable for special occasions غير رسمي [ملابس]
cotton	material made from the cotton plant, used to make shirts, trousers, etc قطن
earring	a piece of jewellery, usually one of a pair, worn in or on an ear حلق
handbag	a small bag, usually carried by women, used for money, keys, make - up, etc حقيبة يد
headscarf	material that women wear to cover their hair حجاب الرأس
linen	a strong material made from part of the flax plant كتان
necklace	a piece of jewellery worn around the neck عقد
galabeya	a long, loose piece of clothing جلابية [ثوب فضفاض]
sandals	open shoes that you usually wear in warm weather صندل [حذاء مفتوح]
scarf	a long piece of material that you wear around the neck or shoulders وشاح / طرحة
smart	looking clean and tidy أنيق / مهندم - ذكى
trainers	light, comfortable shoes that people usually wear for sport حذاء رياضي
wool	the soft, thick material that comes from the hair of sheep and some other animals صوف

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms — مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
traditional	تقليدى	classical	untraditional	غير تقليدى
comfortable	مريح	easy / enjoyable	uncomfortable	غير مريح
important	مهم	necessary	unimportant	غير مهم
similar	متشابه	alike / identical	different	مختلف
loose	فضفاض	relaxed / baggy	tight	ضيق
casual	غير رسمى [ملابس]	informal	formal	رسمى [ملابس]
smart	أنيق	fashionable	old-fashioned	قديم الطراز

Prefixes & Suffixes — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-ed	تكون الصفة من الفعل	striped	مخطط - مقلم
		relaxed	مسترخى - مسترخى
-en	تكون الصفة من الاسم	wooden	خشبى
		woolen	مصنوع من الصوف

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Your clothes are loose. This means that they are not ..... .
   a. baggy b. common c. necessary d. tight
2. To turn the word "wood" into an adjective, we add the suffix " ..... " .
   a. -al b. -en c. -ation d. -able
3. "Comfortable" and "easy" are ..... .
   a. antonyms b. opposites c. different d. synonyms
4. In meetings, you have to wear ..... clothes.
   a. casual b. informal c. tight d. formal

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 sandals - sunglasses - trainers - shoes .... etc.

تأخذ هذه الكلمات بعدها [فعل جمع] :

- My **sunglasses** are black.
- Adel's **trainers** are made of leather.

وتستخدم كلمة (**a pair of**) لتشير إلى [زوج من] وتعامل معاملة المفرد.

وتستخدم كلمة **(a pair of)** لتشير إلى [زوج من] وتعامل معاملة المفرد.

- My mum bought me **a pair of** sandals .
- **A pair of** shoes is not enough for me for training.

(SB page 37)

2 clothes - clothe - cloth

* **clothes (n)** ملابس — دائمًا تستخدم جمع وليس لها مفرد
  - My **clothes** are fashionable.
* **clothe (d) (v)** يُلبس — تستخدم كفعل
  - She **clothes** her baby in different colours.
* **cloth (n)** قماش
  - His shirt is made of good **cloth**.

(SB page 36)

3 jewellery - jewels

* **jewellery (n)** الحلى — تعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد
  - Sara's **jewellery** is so valuable.
* **jewels (n)** مجوهرات — تعامل معاملة الاسم الجمع
  - Sara's **jewels** are made of diamond.

(SB page 36)

4 loose - lose - loss

* **loose** واسع - فضفاض - غير مربوط — تستخدم كصفة
  - **loose** clothes ملابس واسعة — **loose** hair شعر غير مربوط
* **lose / lost /lost** يخسر - يفقد - يضيع — تستخدم كفعل
  - I usually **lose** a lot of money.
* **loss** خسارة — تستخدم كاسم
  - If Mr Ayman leaves, it will be a big **loss** to our school.

(SB page 36)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

Expressions			
look through	يتصفح	wear special clothes	يرتدى ملابس خاصة
keep warm	يحتفظ بالدفء	feel relaxed	يشعر بالاسترخاء
cost a lot of money	يتكلف الكثير من المال	the same as	مثل
Prepositions			
a type of	نوع من	(be) made of	مصنوع من
the best for	الأفضل لـ ...	different from	مختلف عن
good for	مفيد لـ	protect ... from	يحمى ... من
go for a special meal	يذهب لتناول وجبة خاصة	dress in	يرتدى

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

On Lesson [1] SB page 35

1. Huda likes to be comfortable and feel **relaxed**(1) in her clothes.
2. She wears sunglasses outside most days.
3. Tarek likes traditional clothes that keep him cool and protect him from the sun when she is working.
4. Sara **dresses**(2) in a traditional style but she likes to be **colourful**(3).
5. Adam usually wears jeans because he is going for a special meal with his grandparents.
6. Adam likes to look **smart**(4).

On Lesson [2] SB page 36

1. In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes.
2. They both wore **loose**(5), white, **linen**(6) clothes with a **belt**(7).
3. Most of the time, Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes but rich people sometimes wore expensive **leather**(8) sandals.
4. Children did not usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old.
5. Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear heavy, metal jewellery.

(1) مسترخى	(2) يرتدى	(3) زاهى الالوان/ملون	(4) انيق
(5) فضفاض	(6) كتان	(7) حزام	(8) جلد مدبوغ

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

* Types of clothes you like
* Clothes in Ancient Egypt

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ال من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 35

1. Narrator : Huda

I'm Huda. These are the **types**(1) of clothes I usually wear. I like to be **comfortable**(2) and feel **relaxed**(3) in my clothes. These sunglasses were a present from my mum and I love them. I think I wear them outside most days !



2. Narrator : Tarek

I'm Tarek and I wear these clothes when I'm helping my father. It's really hot outside today and these **traditional clothes**(4) keep me cool and **protect**(5) me from the sun when I'm working.



3. Narrator : Sara

I'm Sara and I'm wearing my favourite colour today! I think I dress in a **traditional style**(6) but I like to be colourful. My **headscarf**(7) is from the market. It's a cool colour, isn't it ?



4. Narrator : Adam

My name's Adam and I'm going for a **special meal**(8) with my grandparents, which is why I'm wearing these clothes. I usually wear jeans.
I quite like **looking smart**(9), but I think I look a bit like my father when he is going to work!

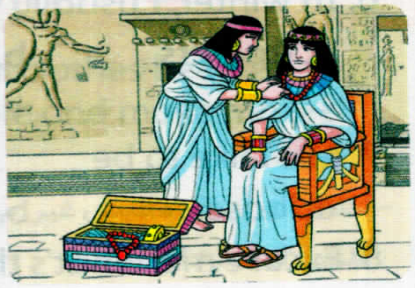


(1) أنواع / أنماط	(2) مريح	(3) مستريح / مسترخى	(4) ملابس تقليدية	(5) يحمى
(6) أسلوب نمطى	(7) حجاب الرأس	(8) وجبة خاصة	(9) يبدو أنيق	

Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 36

Clothes in Ancient Egypt



In **Ancient Egypt**(1), men and women wore **similar clothes**(2). They both wore **loose**(3), white, **linen**(4) clothes with a **belt**(5). Most of the time, Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes but people sometimes wore expensive **leather**(6) sandals. Children did not usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old. Then they started to wear the same clothes as their parents.

Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear **heavy**(7), metal **jewellery**(8). Like some people today, they liked to wear beautiful gold necklaces and other jewellery.

(1) مصر القديمة
(2) ملابس متشابهة
(3) فضفاض - واسع
(4) كتان
(5) حزام
(6) جلد
(7) ثقيل
(8) مجوهرات

Answer the following questions :

Extracting information. استخراج المعلومات.

Learn 1. What were the Ancient Egyptians' sandals made of ?
- ***They were made of leather.***

Practise 2. What else did they love to wear ?
..... .

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. It's a beautiful jacket. You look very ..... .
   a. strange b. smart c. ugly d. dirty
2. **A:** What ..... would you like ? **B:** Medium, please.
   a. group b. number c. size d. colour
3. Most European countries have cold ..... most of the year.
   a. sky b. climate c. private d. limit
4. Young people like wearing ..... clothes like colourful T-shirts and trainers.
   a. casual b. formal c. old d. traditional

SB , WB and Previous Exams

5. Women like to wear expensive ..... to look pretty. It's made of gold.
a. glass b. jewellery c. headscarf d. dress
(Youssef Al-Sideek - Fayoum 2024)

6. In winter, I usually wear a heavy ..... .
a. trainers b. jumper c. T-shirt d. sandals
(Sinnuris - Fayoum 2024)

7. SB I like to be ..... and feel relaxed in my clothes.
a. loose b. hot c. comfortable d. cold

8. Excuse me, what's the ..... of this belt ? - Leather.
(Toud - Luxor 2023)
a. size b. colour c. age d. material

9. Shoes, bags and belts are often made of ..... .
(Esna - Luxor 2023)
a. wool b. metal c. leather d. wood

10. You have to choose good ..... to practise running well.
a. trains b. turns c. trainers d. slippers
(Helwan - Cairo 2023)

El-Moasser Exercises

11. Girls prefer wearing fashionable ..... in their ears.
a. necklaces b. rings c. sunglasses d. earrings

12. Most of ancient Egyptian women liked to wear ..... around their necks.
a. boots b. necklaces c. skirts d. jeans

▸ Definitions

13. A/An ..... is a strip of leather or material that you wear to support clothes or for decoration.
a. belt b. ring c. earring d. necklace

14. ..... is a material that women wear to cover their hair.
a. Skirt b. Headscarf c. Blouse d. Shirt

▸ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. The teacher asked us to ..... turns to answer all questions in order.
a. make b. give c. take d. put

16. I like to ..... in a traditional style.
a. put b. hear c. carry d. dress

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Discussing and describing clothes مناقشة و وصف الملابس

Questions	Answers
1. How do you decide what to wear ? - كيف تقرر ما ترتديه ؟	- I like to wear casual clothes because they are comfortable and make me feel relaxed. - أفضل أن أرتدى ملابس غير رسمية لأنها مريحة وتجعلني أشعر بالاسترخاء. - I like to wear formal clothes because I like to look smart. - أفضل ارتداء الملابس الرسمية لأنني أحب أن أبدو أنيق.
2. Do you listen to the opinions of your friends and family about your clothes ? - هل تستمع إلى آراء أصدقائك وأفراد عائلتك بشأن ملابسك ؟	- Yes, I usually ask for their opinions as I like to be smart. - نعم، عادة ما أستشيرهم لأنني أحب أن أبدو أنيق. - No, I usually choose my clothes by myself as I like to be comfortable. - لا، عادة ما أختار ملابسي بمفردي لأنني أفضل أن أشعر بالراحة في ملابسي.

III Language

Adjective order ترتيب الصفات

Usage الاستخدام

- We often use more than one adjective in this order. We don't use more than three or four adjectives.

◀ نستخدم غالبًا أكثر من صفة فى هذا الترتيب. ولا نستخدم أكثر من ثلاث أو أربع صفات.

◀ كيفية ترتيب الصفات :

Size/Description الوصف / الحجم	Shape الشكل	Age العمر	Colour اللون	Material المادة الخام	Noun الاسم
big / pretty	long	old	green	cotton	dress

ex. - Rich Egyptians wore beautiful, gold necklaces.

Description	material	noun
وصف	المادة	الاسم

تستخدم (commas) الفواصل السفلية (,) بين أكثر من صفة عند ترتيب الصفات.

- She likes wearing loose, white, linen clothes.

shape	colour	material	noun
الشكل	اللون	المادة	الاسم

- They bought a little, modern, brick house.

size	age	material	noun
الحجم	العمر	المادة	الاسم

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. WB The American tourists were wearing ..... sunglasses. *(Tema - Souhag 2024)*
   a. big, red, plastic b. red, plastic, big
   c. big, plastic, red d. plastic, big, red
2. It's beautiful, new, red, ... shirt. *(Armant - Aswan 2024)*
   a. big b. long c. loose d. wool
3. SB My mother likes wearing ..... clothes. *(New Cairo - Cairo 2024)*
   a. long , white , linen b. linen , white , long
   c. white , long , linen d. long , linen , white
4. We went to the island in a/an ..... boat. *(Kafr Sakr - Sharkia 2023)*
   a. wooden, long, old b. long, old, wooden
   c. old, wooden, long d. wooden, old, long
5. I bought a ..... shirt. *(Esna - Luxor 2023)*
   a. red, cotton, new b. new, cotton, red
   c. new, red, cotton d. cotton, new, red
6. SB People sometimes wore ..... sandals in Ancient Egypt.
   a. expensive, leather b. linen, pretty
   c. leather, big d. leather, red

7. WB Hoda's father has bought a/an ..... car.
   a. red, new, electric b. new, red, electric
   c. electric, new, red d. red, electric, new
8. In winter, it is good to wear ..... . *(Hadayek El Koba - Cairo 2022)*
   a. long, socks, wool b. wool, long socks
   c. long, wool socks d. socks long, wool
9. SB She is wearing a ..... scarf.
   a. green, long, nice b. pretty, green, new
   c. nice, long, blue d. cotton, red, new
10. WB It's a long ..... snake.
   a. striped, plastic b. new, small c. plastic, red d. plastic, striped

El-Moasser Exercises

11. Why does Ali like wearing this ..... T-shirt ?
   a. ugly, old, wool b. old, wool, ugly c. wool, ugly, old d. ugly, wool, old
12. My grandmother doesn't like wearing ..... .
   a. colourful, modern clothes b. modern, colourful clothes
   c. clothes, colourful modern d. colourful, clothes modern

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. I saw ..... (yellow, round) balloons at the party. *(Kafr El Ziat - Gharbia 2024)*
2. It's a ..... (linen/ loose) dress. *(Sinnuris - Fayoum 2024)*
3. They both wore ..... (white, linen, loose) clothes with a belt. *(Armant - Luxor 2023)*
4. Women like to wear ..... (gold / beautiful) necklaces. *(October - Giza 2022)*
5. SB They are some ..... (leather / strange / big) shoes. *(South Port Said - Port Said 2022)*
6. It's a ..... (scarf / pink / cotton). *(Qaha / Qalyubia 2022)*
7. SB It's a ..... (purple / wool / nice) jumper. *(Dishna - Qena 2024)*
8. SB They are ..... (black / expensive / plastic) glasses. *(Youssef Al-Sideek - Fayoum 2024)*

El-Moasser Exercises

9. The girl is wearing a ..... (linen / striped) dress.
10. It's a ..... (red / leather / round) bag.
11. Sama has a ..... (cotton / pink) skirt.
12. He is a ..... (tall / old / strong) man.

Speaking & writing Corner

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات فى أسئلة الـ Paragraphs, E-mails & Dialogues
قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues 80 Paragraphs & E-mails

The type of clothes you'd like to wear

Step 1 Vocabulary
اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. What type of clothes would you like to wear ?
   - I would like to wear ..... clothes. رسمى

2. Why do you like to wear formal clothes?
   - Because I like to look ..... أنيق

Step 2 Speaking
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث

Complete the following dialogue :

Mohamed is buying a jacket at a clothes shop.

Salesman : Hi, how can I help you ?
Mohamed : Hi, I'm looking for a jacket.
Salesman : How do you like your jacket, long or short ?
Mohamed : (1) ..... .
Salesman : What colour would you like ?
Mohamed : (2) ..... .
Salesman : (3) ..... ?
Mohamed : Yes, it fits me. (4) ..... ?
Salesman : It's 200 pounds.
Mohamed : (5) ..... .

Step 3 Writing
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Write a paragraph on :

"The type of clothes you'd like to wear"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Clothes in Ancient Egypt

1. Did men and women wear ..... clothes in Ancient Egypt ? متشابهه
   - Yes, they did.

2. Do you know what people wore in ..... ? مصر القديمة
   - They wore loose, white, linen clothes with a belt.

They're talking about clothes in Ancient Egypt.

A : Can I ask you some questions ?
B : (1) ..... .
A : Did men and women wear similar clothes in Ancient Egypt ?
B : (2) ..... .
A : (3) ..... ?
B : They both wore loose, white linen clothes with a belt.
A : Did Ancient Egyptians wear shoes ?
B : (4) ..... . They wore sandals.
A : (5) ..... ?
B : No, children didn't usually wear many clothes until they were about 6 years old.

"Clothes in Ancient Egypt"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

General Exercises

On Lessons 1 & 2

Understand Apply Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. In Ancient Egypt, ... wore similar clothes.
   a. men and girls b. boys and girls
   c. women and boys d. men and women
2. They both wore loose, white, ... clothes.
   a. wool b. wood c. linen d. leather
3. The Ancient Egyptians didn't wear ..... .
   a. belts b. shoes c. scarves d. trousers
4. Some people wore expensive, leather ..... .
   a. sandals b. skirts c. shirts d. shorts

(Al Ibrahiemia - Sharkia 2023)

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman wants to buy a pair of trousers.

Seller : Can I help you ?
Ayman : (1) ..... .
Seller : (2) ..... ?
Ayman : Brown.
Seller : (3) ..... ?
Ayman : I'm not sure. I think 38. What materials are they ?
Seller : (4) ..... .
Ayman : Great ! I like wool. Can I try them on ?
Seller : (5) ..... .The changing room is over there.
Ayman : It's perfect. I'll take them.

(Badr City - Cairo 2024)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Women prefer wearing a/an ..... to cover their heads.
   a. belt b. headscarf c. skirt d. dress

(Fakous - Sharkia 2023)

2. Shoes, bags and sandals are often made of ..... .
   a. metal b. cotton c. leather d. wool

(Badr City - Cairo 2024)

3. To build a house, you think of the design and the ..... you will use. *(Edfu - Aswan 2023)*

a. rooms b. roofs c. materials d. parts

4. Women like to wear beautiful, gold ..... around their necks.

a. rings b. earrings c. scarfs d. necklaces

5. It's a beautiful new, blue , ... dress.

a. metal b. glass c. linen d. plastic

6. In winter, I usually wear heavy ..... . *(Al Qusia - Assuit 2024)*

a. shorts b. jumpers c. necklaces d. sandals

7 . I bought a ..... T-shirt. *(Al Qusia - Assuit 2024)*

a. new , cotton , red b. red, new , cotton

c. new, red , cotton d. cotton , new , red

8. She is wearing a ..... dress. *(Ras Sedr - South Sinai 2022)*

a. pink, striped, cotton b. striped, cotton, pink

c. striped, pink, cotton d. cotton, striped, pink

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. There are ..... (blue / beautiful) shirts in this shop. *(El Mostaqbal - Cairo 2024)*

2. Ahmed wanted his mother to iron his ..... (white / cotton / new) T-shirt. *(Fakous - Sharkia 2023)*

3. They're ..... (brown / leather / old) boots. *(Samasta - Beni Suef 2022)*

4. WB It's a ..... (long / plastic / striped) snake.

5. It's a ..... (green / long / beautiful) scarf.

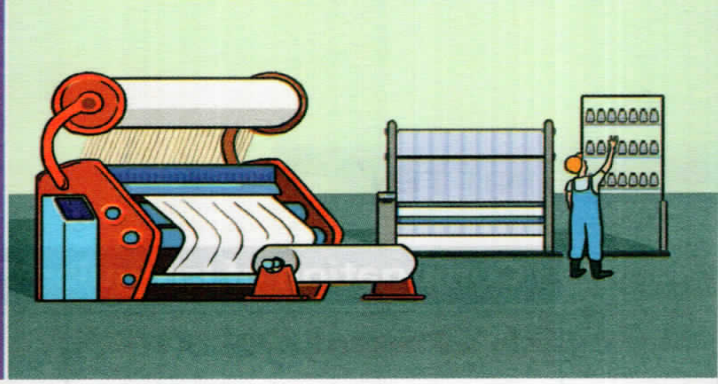
A week is enough
EL-MOASSER
مراجعة المنهج
والتمكن منه فى
اسبوع واحد فقط



Lessons

3&4

SB pages 38 : 40
WB pages 95 & 96



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

borrow (ed) (v)	يستعير	industry (n)	صناعة
special occasion	مناسبة خاصة	perfect (adj)	مثالي - كامل
environment (n)	البيئة	pick (ed) (v)	يقطف
crops (n)	محاصيل [زراعية]	soft (adj)	ناعم
luxury (n), (adj)	رفاهية - فاخر / فخم	chemicals (n)	مواد كيميائية
wedding (n)	حفل زفاف		

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

luxury - wedding - borrow - chemicals - crops

1. Can I ..... this book, please ? - Of course.
2. Heba always buys ..... clothes.
3. There are many ..... that can damage the environment.
4. Wheat, rice and cotton are important ..... .

Lesson 3

SB pages 38 & 39 WB page 95

school uniform (n)	زي مدرسي	clothes factory (n)	مصنع ملابس
school day (n)	يوم دراسي	own (ed) (v)	يملك
care (d) (v) , (n)	يعتني - عناية	toy (n)	لعبة
clothes shop (n)	محل ملابس	sports clothes	ملابس رياضية

Lesson 4

SB page 40 WB page 96

plants (n)	نباتات	amount (n)	مقدار - قدر
soil (n)	تربة زراعية	bamboo (n)	نبات الخيزران [البامبو]
businesses (n)	مشاريع تجارية	greener future	مستقبل أكثر مراعاة للبيئة
government (n)	حكومة	scientific (adj)	علمي
produce (d) (v)	ينتج	process (n)	عملية [سلسلة من التغيرات]
quality (n)	جودة	however (adv)	ومع ذلك

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
sell يبيع	sold	sold
break off ينقطع	broke off	broken off
give يعطى	gave	given

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

borrow	get something from someone that you plan to give back after a period of time يستعير / يستلف
crop	a plant such as a fruit, rice or wheat grown in large amounts to be sold or eaten محصول
industry	the companies and activities that produce things you can sell, especially in a factory or special area صناعة
pick	break flowers or fruit off a plant يقطف
soft	not hard to touch ناعم
luxury	expensive and good quality فاخر/فخم
chemicals	something produced by a scientific process مواد كيميائية
perfect	as good as it is possible to be مثالي
environment	the people and things around you in your life البيئة

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
near قريب	close / nearby	distant بعيد
soft ناعم / رقيق	smooth / delicate	hard - tough خشن
borrow يشعر - يستلف	take	give - lend يسلف - يقرض
perfect مثالى - كامل	ideal	imperfect غير كامل - غير مثالى
expensive غالى الثمن	costly / high	cheap / inexpensive رخيص الثمن

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
–able	تكون الصفة من الاسم أو الفعل	comfortable مريح
–ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	quickly بسرعة

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The words "expensive" and "costly" are opposites of "……".
   a. high b. cheap c. low d. happy
2. My school isn't distant. It is …… my home.
   a. near b. speedy c. perfect d. soft
3. To give the adjective of the word "comfort", we add the suffix "……".
   a. –al b. –able c. –ation d. –le
4. The words "borrow" and "lend" are …… .
   a. synonyms b. adjectives c. nouns d. opposites
5. The word "soft" can have the same meaning as "……" .
   a. smooth b. tough c. hard d. easy

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 material

* material = cloth قماش [اسم لا يُعد]
  - There is enough **material** to make a dress.
* materials = substances مواد خام [اسم يُعد]
  - Paper, wood and metal are **materials**.

(SB page 40)

2 لاحظ الصيغ التالية :

* be + used to + (inf.) يستخدم لكى ...
  - The Egyptian cotton **is used to make** luxury clothes.
* be + used for + (inf. + ing) يستخدم من أجل
  - The Egyptian cotton **is used for making** luxury clothes.
* used to + (inf.) اعتاد أن [تدل على عادة في الماضي لم تعد تحدث الآن]
  - Basem **used to do** sports.

(SB page 38 / WB page 96)

3 chemical

* chemical (adj) [صفة] كيماوي / كيميائي
  - Farmers use **chemical** fertilizers. أسمدة كيماوية
* chemicals (n) [اسم يعد] مواد كيميائية
  - It's bad to use **chemicals** to make vegetables grow quickly.

(SB page 40)

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

On Lesson [3] SB page 38

1. Noha is trying to buy fewer clothes because clothes factories cause a lot of **pollution**(1).
2. Ayman borrowed his dad's **trainers**(2) because they were better than the ones he used to wear.
3. Ayman loves wearing sports clothes because they are comfortable.
4. Dalida has to wear her school uniform every school day.
5. Dalida's grandma always makes them clothes for **special occasions**(3).

on Lesson [4] SB page 40

1. Egypt is famous for growing **crops**(4) to make material.
2. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen.
3. Today, Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world.
4. Many people work in the **cotton industry**(5).
5. The climate and soil in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton.

on Lesson [4] WB page 96

1. Some people are starting to use a plant called bamboo instead of cotton to make clothes.
2. Bamboo is an important crop in China where bamboo industry makes a lot of money.
3. The material made from bamboo is not very soft so, it is not used for expensive, **luxury clothes**(6).

(1) تلوث	(2) حذاء رياض	(3) مناسبات خاصة
(4) محاصيل	(5) صناعة القطن	(6) ملابس فخمة

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* What Egyptian teenagers like to wear
* Cotton industry in Egypt
* Your favourite type of clothes

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions

much better than	أفضل بكثير من	make luxury clothes	يصنع ملابس فاخرة
wear the same clothes	يرتدى نفس الملابس	as a result	نتيجة لذلك
as good as it is possible	جيد قدر الإمكان	make money	يجمع أموال / يكون ثروة
use less water	يستخدم كمية أقل من المياه		

Prepositions

care more about	يهتم أكثر بـ	for homes	للمنازل
borrow clothes from	يستعير ملابس من	give another example of	يعطى مثال آخر لـ
wear ... on / for special occasions	يرتدى ... للمناسبات الخاصة	pick from	يلتقط من / يجنى من
		important for	هام لـ
perfect for	مناسب لـ	picked by hand	يتم اقتطافه باليد
a pair of	زوج من	most of time	معظم الوقت

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على II من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 38

What do you wear ?

This week, we asked three Egyptian teenagers what they wear and why.

Noha :

I bought this shirt from a shop in Cairo, but **I'm trying to**(1) buy fewer clothes. Clothes factories cause a lot of pollution, so they are **bad for**(2) the environment. So sometimes I **borrow**(3) my sister's clothes. She borrows mine, too, because we are the **same size**(4).



(1) أحاول أن | (2) ضار/سىء لـ | (3) يستعير | (4) نفس المقاس/ الحجم

Ayman :



These **trainers**(5) were my dad's. He never wore them, so I asked if I could have them. I like **doing sport**(6) and these trainers are much **better**(7) than the ones I used to wear. I usually wear **sports clothes**(8) because they are **comfortable**(9).

Dalida :



This is my **school uniform**(10). I have to wear it every **school day**(11). That beautiful dress is the one my grandmother made me for my cousin's **wedding**(12). She's amazing at **sewing**(13)! She always makes us clothes for **special occasions**(14).

(5) حذاء رياضى	(6) ممارسة الرياضة	(7) أفضل	(8) ملابس رياضية	(9) مريح
(10) زى مدرسى	(11) يوم دراسى	(12) حفل زفاف	(13) الخياطة	(14) مناسبات خاصة

on Lesson 4 SB page 40

Egyptian linen and cotton



Egypt is **famous for**(1) growing crops to make material. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make **linen**(2). Almost everyone wore clothes made of linen and **they** also used the plants to make **baskets**(3).

Today, **Egyptian cotton**(4) is famous all over the world. Because cotton from Egypt is very good, it is often used to make **luxury clothes**(5) and things for homes. Many people work in the **cotton industry**(6), from farmers to people making or selling clothes and material.

The **climate and soil**(7) in Egypt are **perfect**(8) for growing cotton. Water from the Nile is still used for the crops. All of the cotton is picked by hand to keep it **soft**(9).

When you grow cotton, **it** uses a lot of water and **chemicals**(10). Now, the government is trying to help farmers to **protect**(11) the environment and use less water.

(1) مشهور بـ	
(2) كتان	
(3) سلال	
(4) القطن المصرى	
(5) ملابس فاخرة	
(6) صناعة القطن	
(7) الطقس والتربة	
(8) مناسب / ملائم	
(9) ناعم	
(10) مواد كيميائية	
(11) يحمى	

Answer the following questions :

Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

Learn 1. What does the underlined pronoun **"it"** in the last paragraph refer to ?

- ***It refers to cotton.***

Practise 2. What does the underlined pronoun **"they"** in the first paragraph refer to ?

.....

on Lesson 4 WB page 96

Is bamboo the new cotton ?

Some people are starting to use a plant called bamboo **instead of**(1) cotton to make clothes. The plant is an important crop in China where the bamboo industry makes a lot of money. However, although bamboo grows very quickly, it is not a perfect plant. After the bamboo is picked, people often use chemicals before they can use it to make clothes. These are **bad for**(2) nature. Also, the material made from bamboo is not very soft. **As a result**(3), it is not used for expensive, luxury clothes which are usually **made from**(4) cotton.

(1) بدلًا من | (2) ضار بـ | (3) نتيجة لذلك | (4) مصنوع من

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. She ..... some flowers and gave them to her mum.
   a. picked b. backed c. broke d. booked
2. We're building more factories to improve ..... .
   a. farming b. sports c. environment d. industry
3. ..... mean something scientists can make.
   a. Crops b. Fruits c. Vegetables d. Chemicals
4. They used the best material to make ..... clothes.
   a. bad b. luxury c. cheap d. ugly

(Meit Saleil - Dakahlia 2024)

5. When something is as good as it is possible to be, we say it is ..... .
   a. horrible b. perfect c. usual d. traditional

(West Mansoura - Dakahlia 2024)

SB , WB and Previous Exams

6. It's a perfect crop because we planted it in a good ..... .
   a. sail b. soil c. floor d. sea

(Belbies - Sharkia 2023)

7. He ..... a novel from the library to read at home.
   a. sewed b. gave c. borrowed d. wore

(East Alexandria - Alexandria 2022)

8. If something is ..... , it is expensive and good quality.
   a. poor b. old c. ancient d. luxury

(Helwan - Cairo 2023)

9. We wear new clothes for special ..... . *(El Sahel - Cairo 2023)*

a. occasions b. charts c. hurts d. ports

El-Moasser Exercises

10. Bamboo is an important ..... in China.

a. cotton b. linen c. foods d. crop

11. Farmers ..... a lot of crops in our country.

a. reduce b. produce c. damage d. borrow

▸ **Definitions**

12. ..... means not hard to touch.

a. Quiet b. Nervous c. Curly d. Soft

13. The people and things around you in your life is ..... .

a. space b. environment c. chemical d. school

▸ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

14. I was ill. ..... a result, I didn't go to school yesterday.

a. So b. As c. On d. At

15. Paper is used ..... make books.

a. to b. for c. as d. from

16. We should care more ..... our environment.

a. of b. about c. from d. to

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

1. Asking and answering questions about clothes

ا. السؤال والرد على اسئلة عن الملابس

Questions	Answers
1. How many pairs of shoes do you have ? Which ones are your favourite ? - كم زوج من الأحذية تمتلك ؟ أيهم تفضل ؟	- I have four pairs of shoes, but my trainers are my favourite ones. - أمتلك أربع أزواج من الأحذية، لكن حذائي الرياضي هو المفضل بالنسبة لي.
2. How many bags do you own ? Which one is your favourite ? - كم حقيبة تمتلك ؟ أيهم المفضلة بالنسبة لك ؟	- I have three bags, but my black backpack is my favourite one. - أمتلك ثلاث حقائب لكن حقيبة الظهر السوداء هي المفضلة بالنسبة لي .

2. Discussing the role of industry in Egypt ٢. مناقشة دور الصناعة في مصر

Questions	Answers
1. What other industries are important to Egypt ? - ما هي الصناعات الأخرى الهامة لمصر؟	- I think leather industry is important in Egypt. - أعتقد أن صناعة الجلود هامة في مصر.
2. Do you think it is important for businesses to help the environment ? - هل تعتقد أنه من المهم أن تساعد الأعمال التجارية البيئة ؟	- Yes, I think that is important. - نعم، أعتقد أن هذا مهم.

III Language

One, ones

Usage الاستخدام

- **We use "one" (singular) instead of repeating a singular countable noun.**
  تستخدم (one) بدلًا من تكرار الاسم المفرد الذي يعد في الجملة.

ex. That beautiful dress is the one my grandmother made me.

- **We use "ones" (plural) instead of repeating a plural noun.**
  تستخدم (ones) بدلًا من تكرار الاسم الجمع في الجملة.

ex. These trainers are much better than the ones I had before.

Remember تذكر

Demonstrative Pronouns : "this", "that", "these" and "those". ضمائر الإشارة

This / These

- **We use "This" (singular) or "These" (plural) to talk about things near us.**
  تستخدم [This] [للمفرد] و [These] [للجمع] عند الحديث عن الأشياء القريبة منا.

ex. - This ball is from a little shop in Cairo.
- These shoes were my dad's.

That / Those

- **We use "That" (singular) or "Those" (plural) to talk about things not near us.**
  تستخدم [That] [للمفرد] و [Those] [للجمع] عند الحديث عن الأشياء البعيدة عنا.

ex. - That nice jacket is mine.
- Those jeans are my sister's.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. ..... skirts are my sister's. *(Maadi - Cairo 2024)*
   a. This b. That c. They d. These
2. ..... building over there is my school. *(New Cairo - Cairo 2024)*
   a. It b. These c. Those d. That
3. ..... people are my relatives. *(Samnoud - Gharbia 2022)*
   a. These b. That c. This d. Him
4. These stories are funny, but ..... are boring. *(Shebin El Koum - Menoufia 2024)*
   a. these b. that c. this d. those
5. I lost my mobile and bought a new ..... . *(Tema - Souhag 2023)*
   a. one b. ones c. one's d. ones'
6. WB What's ..... small thing by my chair ?
   a. this b. these c. those d. ones
7. SB Which dress are you going to wear ? This one or that ..... .
   a. one b. ones c. dresses d. a dress

El-Moasser Exercises

8. Which trousers do you prefer ? - The black ..... .
   a. ones b. one c. of one d. for ones
9. The blue bag is not mine. ..... one is mine.
   a. That b. Those c. They d. These

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. Look at these dresses. Which ..... (one's) do you prefer ? *(Maadi - Cairo 2024)*
2. This ring is silver, but this ..... (ones) is gold. *(Meinat Al Nasr - Dakahlia 2024)*
3. Look at ..... (this) man over there. *(New Cairo - Cairo 2023)*
4. SB Those earrings are the ..... (one) my mum gave me.

El-Moasser Exercises

5. Why don't you wear ..... (those) blue jumper ?
6. This book is better than that ..... (ones).
7. ..... (This) socks are my brother's.

Speaking & Writing Corner

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة Paragraphs, E-mails & Dialogues الـ
قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues **80 Paragraphs & E-mails**

Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	Step 2 Speaking اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
What Egyptian teenagers like to wear		
Read and complete : 1. Which shoes do you prefer to ..... ? ترتدى - I prefer trainers. 2. Are trainers ..... ? مريح - Yes, they are. 3. Which clothes do you like ? - I like ..... and striped clothes. ملوَّن	**Complete the following dialogue :** **Nahid and Hana are talking about clothes.** **Nahid :** How many pairs of shoes do you have ? **Hana :** (1) ..... . **Nahid :** (2) ..... ? **Hana :** I like the black pair. It's comfortable. **Nahid :** Well! (3) ..... ? **Hana :** I like colourful and striped clothes. **Nahid :** Which shops do you prefer, big or small ? **Hana :** (4) ..... . They're cheaper than big ones. **Nahid :** How many bags do you own ? **Hana :** (5) ..... . It is made of leather.	**Write a paragraph on :** **"What Egyptian teenagers like to wear"** .....
Cotton industry in Egypt		
1. Do you think ..... is important for Egypt ? صناعة القطن - Yes, it is very important. 2. What is the Egyptian cotton used to make ? - It is used to make ..... . الملابس الفاخرة	**Sami and Rami are talking about the Egyptian cotton.** **Sami :** Hi, Rami. What is the most important crop in Egypt ? **Rami :** Hi, Sami. (1) ..... . **Sami :** (2) ..... ? **Rami :** Because Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world. **Sami :** (3) ..... ? **Rami :** It is grown in many Egyptian fields. **Sami :** What is cotton used to make ? **Rami :** (4) ..... . **Sami :** Do you have any cotton clothes ? **Rami :** (5)	**"Cotton industry in Egypt"** .....

General Exercises

On Lessons 3 & 4

Understand Apply Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Samy is buying a cotton shirt at a clothes shop.

Shopkeeper : Can I help you ?

Samy : Yes. Have you got any cotton shirts ?

Shopkeeper : (1) ..... .

Samy : Oh yes, I see. I like the white one. (2) ..... ?

Shopkeeper : That one is 850 pounds.

Samy : Could I try it on ?

Shopkeeper : (3) ..... .

Samy : (4) ..... ?

Shopkeeper : Yes, it fits perfectly.

Samy : Okay. (5) ..... .

Shopkeeper : That's good. *(Fakous - Sharkia - 2024)*

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. In China, the bamboo ..... makes a lot of money. *(Hehia - Sharkia - 2024)*
   a. eating b. industry c. fishing d. drinking
2. Sara's jacket is made of a good ..... . *(Helwan - Cairo - 2022)*
   a. material b. silver c. gold d. wood
3. SB Egypt is famous for growing ..... to make materials.
   a. crops b. groups c. goals d. topics
4. SB All the cotton is ..... by hand to keep it soft.
   a. protected b. picked c. made d. helped
5. I wear smart and formal clothes on special ..... like wedding parties.
   a. lives b. customers c. occasions d. buildings
6. A "....." means something produced by a scientific process.
   a. crop b. fruit c. vegetable d. chemical



7. ..... sunglasses are nice and comfortable.
   a. That b. This c. Those d. There

8. These trainers are much more comfortable than the ..... I had before.
   a. one's b. ones c. one d. ones'

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. These shoes are the worst ..... (one). *(Belbeis - Sharkia 2024)*
2. Will you take ..... (this) brown shoes or not ? *(Helwan - Cairo 2023)*
3. These are my mother's earrings, but mine ..... (is) small.
4. SB Do you prefer ..... (these) dress or that one over there ? *(Malawi - Minya 2022)*
5. ..... (Those) shirt looks the smartest.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your favourite clothes"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons

5&6

SB pages 41 & 42
WB pages 97 & 98



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

chest of drawers (n)	خزانة ذات أدراج	customer (n)	زبون
price (n)	سعر	shopkeeper (n)	بائع في محل
changing room (n)	حجرة تغيير الملابس	pretty (adj)	جميل
fit (ted) (v)	يلائم - يناسب	useful (adj)	مفيد
advert (n)	إعلان	handbag (n)	حقيبة يد

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

changing room - price - useful - fit - shopkeeper

1. What is the ..... of this blue jacket ? - L.E 500.
2. You can try on this shirt in the ..... .
3. This suit doesn't ..... me. It's old - fashioned.
4. The computer is the most ..... invention.

Lesson 5

SB page 41 WB page 97

perfectly (adv)	بشكل كامل - تام	check (ed) (v)	يتأكد - يفحص
here (adv)	هنا	shop (ped) (v), (n)	يتسوق/ محل

Lesson 6

SB page 42 WB page 98

statue (n)	تمثال	tool (adj)	أداة
object (n)	شئ	extra (adj)	إضافي
include (d) (v)	يشمل - يتضمن	shop window (n)	واجهة المحل [فاترينة]

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
take	يأخذ	took	taken
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Study these definitions — ادرس هذه التعريفات

changing room	a room where people can change their clothes, for example, in a shop حجرة تغيير ملابس
try on	put on a piece of clothing to check if it fits you or if you like it يقيس (الملابس)
fit	be the correct size or shape for someone or something يلائم/يناسب

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms — مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
new جديد	modern / recent	old قديم
small صغير (المقاس)	tiny / little	large كبير (المقاس)
pretty جميل	beautiful	ugly قبيح
useful مفيد	helpful	useless غير مفيد

Prefixes & Suffixes — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
–ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	perfectly بطريقة مثالية
–ation	تكون الاسم من الفعل	information معلومات

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This bag is new. It is not ..... .
   a. old b. modern c. recent d. available
2. The opposite of the word "useful" is "....." .
   a. helpful b. valuable c. easy d. useless
3. To get the adverb from the word "perfect", we add the suffix "....." .
   a. –ly b. –able c. –al d. –ic
4. To turn the verb "inform" into a/an ....., we add the suffix "ation".
   a. verb b. adverb c. noun d. adjective

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
it's a bit big	إنه كبير نوعًا ما	look very nice	يبدو لطيف جدًا
let me look	دعني انظر	find the right size	يجد المقاس المناسب
it fits perfectly	إنها تناسب تمامًا	get married	يتزوج
have a smaller size	لديه حجم أصغر	move house	ينتقل لمنزل جديد [يعزل]
Prepositions			
for sale	للبيع	for more information	للمزيد من المعلومات
try on	يقيس	at the top	على القمة
buy something for	يشترى شيء ما لـ	it's perfect for	إنه مناسب لـ

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على II من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 41

Shopkeeper : Hello, can I help you ?

Eman : Hi, yes, **I'm looking for**(1) a dress for **a special occasion**(2) . It's my brother's **birthday party**(3) next week.



Shopkeeper : Oh, nice. What type of dress would you like ?

Eman : I'd like something like this one ... but do you have a **different**(4) colour ? I don't like yellow.

Shopkeeper : We have this one in blue.

Eman : That's beautiful ! Could I try it on ?

(1) يبحث عن | (2) مناسبة خاصة | (3) حفلة عيد ميلاد | (4) مختلف

Shopkeeper : Of course. **The changing room**(5) is here. What do you think ? Does it **fit**(6) ?

Eman : It's a bit big. Do you have a smaller **size**(7) ?

Shopkeeper : Let me look. Yes, here's a smaller one. Try this on.

Eman : Thank you. It fits perfectly, I'll take it !

Shopkeeper : Great !

(5) غرفة تغيير الملابس | (6) يناسب / يلائم | (7) مقاس

Reading

on Lesson 6 SB page 42

BAG FOR SALE



I'm selling a beautiful, new, black leather **handbag**(1). It was a **present**(2) for my birthday but I already have one that is the same ! It is very large and **perfect**(3) for work or school. The **price**(4) is LE 500. **Email**(5) me for more information.

(1) حقيبة يد | (2) هدية | (3) مناسبة / مثالية | (4) سعر | (5) أرسل رسالة بريد إلكترونى

on Lesson 6 WB page 98



I'm **selling**(1) a cool, old **wooden**(2) chest of drawers. It was made in 1910 for my great-grandfather ! It's **large**(3) and perfect for **keeping things**(4) in, but we have moved house and our new home is **too small**(5) for it. If you are **interested**(6), email me and we can **discuss**(7) the price.

(1) يبيع | (2) خشبى | (3) كبير | (4) يحتفظ بالأشياء | (5) صغير جدًا | (6) مهتم | (7) يناقش

on Lesson 6 WB page 98

Would you like to buy a really **useful**(1) **tool**(2) ?
I'm selling a nice strong one that you can use in the garden. It is made of metal with wood at the top. It's perfect for people who want to grow vegetables - and the price is not luxury, it's very cheap! Email me if you are interested.

(1) مفيد | (2) أداة

on Lesson 7 SB page 43

Shopkeeper[1] : Can I help you ?
Customer[2] : Yes, I'd like to buy these jeans, but could I try them on first ?
Shopkeeper : Of course, the **changing room**[3] is over there.
Customer : Thank you.
Shopkeeper : Do they fit you ?
Customer : No, they're too small. Do you have a bigger size ?
Shopkeeper : Yes, here you are.
Customer : They're great. I'll take them.

(1) صاحب متجر | (2) زبون | (3) حجرة تغيير ملابس

on Lesson 7 WB page 99

Usually, Hamdi and his sister Lama like wearing **casual**[1] clothes such as T-shirts and trainers. Today, they are wearing clothes for a special occasion. It is their grandfather's 70th birthday ! Hamdi is wearing a smart, blue jacket. Lama is wearing a loose, cotton dress with a **pretty**[2] pair of earrings. Hamdi also has a new pair of trousers. He bought them online, so he did not try them on first. They are a bit big, so he is wearing a leather belt, too.

(1) غير رسمى
(2) جميل

Answer the following questions :

Extracting information استخراج معلومات

Learn 1. Why is Hamdi wearing a leather belt ?
- Because the trousers are a bit big.

Practise 2. What do Hamdi and his sister Lama like wearing ?
.....

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. The person who wants to buy something at a shop is called a ..... .
   a. waiter b. manager c. customer d. shopkeeper
2. This jacket ..... me, I'll take it.
   a. checks b. fits c. buys d. finds
3. They bought a big ..... to keep many things in.
   a. machine b. chest of drawers
   c. board d. chairs

4. Can you tell me the ..... of this dress, please ? - It's L.E. 700 .
   a. price b. size c. colour d. number

5. I found a/an ..... for a job in the newspaper yesterday.
   a. style b. advert c. occasion d. climate

SB , WB and Previous Exams

6. WB We have this black jacket, or that red one in the shop ..... .
   a. window b. door c. bag d. box

7. WB When you want to buy something, ... it on to check the size.
   a. cry b. try c. fry d. dry

8. Could I try this jacket on ? - The ..... room is over there.
   a. changing b. trying c. living d. smart

(Ain Shams - Cairo 2023)

9. WB We saw a big, old ..... in the museum.
   a. window b. statue c. computer d. robot

(El Tell El Kebir - Ismailia 2022)

El-Moasser Exercises

10. Look! There is a strange ..... in the garden.
    a. shop b. object c. subject d. customer

11. I'll buy ..... sandwiches. I'm still very hungry.
    a. small b. extra c. old d. little

12. She looks so ..... in the new dress. That's amazing !
    a. silly b. normal c. pretty d. strange

▸ **Definitions**

13. To ..... is to be the correct size or shape for someone or something.
    a. fit b. fill c. fail d. fight

▸ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

14. We ..... house to live in a bigger one.
    a. moved b. bought c. found d. made

15. My cousin is going to ..... married tomorrow.
    a. give b. take c. do d. get

16. This shirt isn't perfect ..... you. You can buy another one.
    a. in b. of c. from d. for

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Shopping at a clothes shop التسوق في محل ملابس

Shopkeeper البائع	Customer الزبون
عند عرض المساعدة • Can I help you ? هل يمكنني مساعدتك ؟ • What can I do for you ? ماذا يمكنني أن أفعل لأجلك ؟	- Yes, I'd like to buy ... نعم أود أن أشترى - I'm looking for ... أنا أبحث عن ...
للسؤال عن المقاس • What size would you like ? ما المقاس الذي تفضله ؟	- I'd like small. أنا أريد مقاس صغير. medium, please. متوسط. large. كبير.
للسؤال عن اللون • What colour would you like ? ما اللون الذي تفضله ؟	- I'd like + لون + , please. أنا أريد [لون]، من فضلك.
عند طلب تجربة الملابس - Can I try it / them on, please? أيمكن أن أقيس [الملابس] من فضلك ؟	عند الموافقة والسماح لتجربة الملابس - Of course, the changing room is over there. نعم بالطبع، غرفة تغيير الملابس هناك.
للاستفسار عما إذا كانت الملابس ملائمة - (Do / Does) (they / it) fit you ? هل تناسبك ؟	- Yes, (they/it) fit(s) me. نعم، تناسبني.
• Here you are. تفضل.	- I'll take it. عند الموافقة على الشراء.
للسؤال عن السعر - How much (do they/does it) cost ? كم يتكلف هذا / هؤلاء ؟	- They cost + السعر. سعرهم ... - It costs + السعر. سعره/سعرها ...

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

"An advert for something you want to sell" إعلان لشئ تريد أن تقوم ببيعه

1. I'm selling a beautiful, new, black leather handbag.
١. أعرض للبيع حقيبة يد جميلة وجديدة من الجلد الأسود.
2. I'm selling it because I have a similar one. ٢. اقوم ببيعها لأنى أملك واحدة مشابهة لها.
3. It is very large and perfect for work or school. ٣. إنها كبيرة جدًا ومناسبة للعمل أو المدرسة.
4. The price is L.E.500. ٤. السعر يبلغ ٥٠٠ جنيه.
5. If you are interested, email me. ٥. إذا كنت مهتم يمكنك مراسلتي.

General Exercises

On Lessons 5 & 6

Understand Apply Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. I'm selling a beautiful ..... .
   a. dress b. ring c. necklace d. handbag
2. It is made of ..... .
   a. linen b. wool c. leather d. skin
3. It was a present for my ..... .
   a. birthday b. mom c. sister d. wedding
4. The price is L.E. ..... .
   a. 5000 b. 50,000 c. 500 d. 50

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Sama wants to ..... to a new house. She wants a warm place.
   a. destroy b. move c. meet d. play

   (Helwan - Cairo 2024)
2. Ahmed is standing. We need a/an ..... chair, please.

   (East Alexandria - Alexandria 2023)

   a. one b. two c. extra d. three
3. This suit doesn't ..... me. I need a light colour.
   a. fit b. fall c. feel d. fight
4. This jacket is loose. I need a smaller ..... .
   a. weight b. height c. length d. size
5. The shop is crowded. It is full of ..... .
   a. customs b. customers c. costumes d. costs
6. I saw a handbag for ..... online.
   a. sell b. sail c. sale d. steal
7. Look at these shorts. Which ..... do you like better ?
   a. one b. ones c. one's d. ones'

   (West Cairo - Cairo 2022)

8. ..... sandals are very expensive. *(Tema - Sohag 2022)*

a. That b. These c. The ones d. This

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I don't like this watch. I want the other ..... (ones). *(Qusia - Assiut 2024)*
2. ..... (That) glasses are not good. Give me some good ones. *(Nobaria - Beheira 2024)*
3. WB Should I buy the red chairs or the black ..... (one)?
4. SB I like ..... (these) smart, red , cotton T-shirt.
5. These books are funny, but those ..... (one) are very boring.

4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Samia telling her about the handbag you want to sell.

Your friend's email address is samia@yahoo.com. Your name is Sherifa and your email address is sherifa@gmail.com.

From	
To	
Subject	

.....,

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Skills 1

Reading Comprehension

Giving the main idea

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية] وهنا تحتاج لقراءة النص جيدًا لتحديد الفكرة الرئيسية.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question :

Greed is one of the worst qualities. It leads to losing everything. Once there was a dog who wandered in the streets night and day. He was looking for food. One day, he found a big juicy bone. He was very happy. He grabbed it between his mouth and decided to go home. On his way home, he crossed a river. When he looked at the water, he saw himself. He thought it was another dog with a bone. He wanted that bone for himself, too. When he opened his mouth, the bone fell into the river and sank. That night, he went home hungry. This story teaches us that if you are greedy, you will lose what you have.

- What is the general idea of the text ?
  or What is the main idea of the passage ?
  or Give a suitable title for the passage.

.....

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تستطيع تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية أو تحديد عنوان مناسب للنص.

2 Speaking

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] معرفتك لقدر كاف من [Language Functions] والتى غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman wants to buy a jacket.

Shopkeeper : Can I help you ?

Ayman : (1) ..... .

Shopkeeper : What type of jacket would you like ?

Ayman : I'd like something loose but smart. (2) ..... ?

Shopkeeper : We have got red, black and brown jackets.

Ayman : (3) ..... ?

Shopkeeper : Of course. The changing room is over there.

Ayman : How much is it ?

Shopkeeper : (4) ..... .

Ayman : (5) ..... .

التحدى تريد التحدث عن [وصف الملابس والتسوق فى محل الملابس] وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التى قد تحدث بينك وبين البائع.

3 Correction notes

• الهدف من هذا الجزء
- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

Review

◄ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

Size/Description, shape, Age, Colour, Material, Noun She wore a beautiful, long, new, green cotton dress	
This mango is delicious. I need another one.	تستخدم [one] بدلًا من تكرار الاسم المفرد الذى يعد فى الجملة
These trainers are much better than the ones you bought me last year.	تستخدم [one] بدلًا من تكرار الاسم الجمع فى الجملة

Learn

◄ تعلم

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 This dress is the ..... [ones] I like.	one	تستخدم بدلًا من اسم مفرد يعد
2 Women like to wear ..... [gold/ beautiful] necklaces.	beautiful gold	لأن الوصف يسبق المادة المصنوع منها الشيء فى ترتيب الصفات .
3 Sama lost her earrings and bought new ..... [one] .	ones	تستخدم بدلًا من اسم جمع [earrings]

Practice

◄ تدرب

Write the Reason : ◄ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة

1 Those glasses are not good. Give me some good ..... [one] .	ones	.....
2 It's a ..... [red/leather/round] bag.	round,red leather	.....
3 That beautiful dress is the ..... [ones] my grandmother made me.	one	.....
4 ... [This] earrings are very nice.	These	.....

Write the Correction : ◄ اكتب التصحيح

1 There are two ..... [red/beautiful] dresses in her wardrobe.	.....	لأن الوصف يسبق اللون فى ترتيب الصفات.
2 I don't want the green apples, I want the red ..... [one].	.....	تستخدم بدلًا من اسم جمع
3 I like ..... [these] smart, red, cotton T-shirt.	.....	تشير إلى اسم مفرد قريب
4 New cars need less petrol than the old ..... [one] .	.....	تستخدم بدلًا من اسم جمع

مراجعة عامة على Unit 10 فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

belt	حزام
earrings	حلق
sandals	صندل
scarf	طرحة / وشاح
trainers	حذاء رياضي
smart	أنيق
casual	غير رسمي
cotton	قطن
leather	جلد
linen	كتان
metal	معدن
wool	صوف
loose	واسع / فضفاضة
necklace	عقد
gold	ذهب
striped	مخطط / مُقلم
material	ماده خام
shape	شكل / هيئة
size	مقاس

Language

1- Adjective order ترتيب الصفات

- Use more than one adjective in this order. Do not use more than three or four adjectives.

• استخدم اكثر من صفة في هذا الترتيب ولكن لا تستخدم اكثر من ثلاث أو اربع صفات.

Size/ Description الوصف/المقاس	Shape الشكل	Age العمر	Colour اللون	Material المادة الخام	Noun الاسم الموصوف
big/pretty	long	old	green	cotton	dress

- Rich Egyptians wore beautiful, gold necklaces. She likes loose, white, linen clothes. He wore a long, green, cotton robe.

2- Remember! تذكر أن !

- Use this (singular) or these (plural) to talk about things near us .

• استخدم (this) للإشارة للمفرد القريب و (these) للإشارة للجمع القريب.

- This shirt is from a little shop in Cairo. These trainers were my dad's.
- Use that (singular) or those (plural) to talk about things not near us.

• استخدم (that) للإشارة للمفرد البعيد و (these) للإشارة للجمع البعيد.

- That beautiful dress is mine. Those skirts are my sister's.

Speaking

Discussing & describing clothes :

• مناقشة و وصف الملابس.

* What type of material is best for a hot climate ?

- Cotton.

* My favourite item of clothing is the scarf. It's colourful and it is made of cotton.

Shopping for clothes:

• التسوق لشراء الملابس.

* A : Can I help you ?

B : Yes, I'd like to buy a T-shirt.

* A : What size would you like?

B : I'd like medium, please.

* A : What colour would you like?

B : I'd like white, please.

Review on unit 10
قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Questions collected from previous exams

تدريبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. You have to choose good ..... to practise running. *(El Mokatam - Cairo 2024)*
   a. trains b. turns c. trainers d. slippers
2. Shoes, bags and belts are often made of ..... . *(El Sahel - Cairo 2023)*
   a. wool b. leather c. metal d. cotton
3. Most of ancient Egyptian women liked to wear ..... around their necks. *(Rod el Farag - Cairo 2023)*
   a. boots b. necklaces c. shirts d. hats
4. She is wearing a pair of beautiful gold ..... in her ears. *(El Zarka - Damietta 2023)*
   a. earrings b. gloves c. scissors d. tools
5. Women and girls often wear ..... on their heads. *(East Mansoura - Dakahlia 2023*
   a. scarfs b. rings c. earrings d. watches
6. " ..... " is a happy occasion for many people. *(El Obour - Qalyoubia 2023)*
   a. Weeding b. Sewing
   c. Stealing d. Wedding
7. There is a big chest of ..... in my room. *(Kafr El Sheikh 2023)*
   a. adverts b. drawers c. drums d. dresses
8. Where did you get ..... sunglasses ? *(Tema - Sohag 2023)*
   a. that b. this c. they d. these
9. I love wearing my ..... galabeya. *(Luxor 2023)*
   a. cotton, long, grey b. long, cotton, gray
   c. long, grey, cotton d. grey, long, cotton
10. My mother likes ..... clothes. *(El Aiat - Giza 2023)*
    a. white, linen, loose b. white, loose, linen
    c. linen, loose, white d. loose, white, linen

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. These glasses don't fit me. I want the blue ..... (one). *(Omarania - Giza 2024)*
2. I lost my phone. I need to buy a new ..... (ones). *(Malawy - Menia 2023)*
3. It's a ..... (beautiful, wool, blue) skirt. *(Damietta 2023)*
4. I bought ..... (that) shoes last week. *(Kafr Saad - Damietta 2023)*
5. We are answering ..... (this) questions quietly. *(Naqada - Qena 2023)*
6. I don't want the green apples, I want the red ..... (one). *(Assiut 2023)*
7. My cousin has a ..... (red, new, electric) car. *(West Mahala - Gharbia 2023)*
8. These trainers are better than the ..... (one) I had before. *(El Wasta - Beni Suef 2023)*
9. It's a ..... (long, plastic, striped) snake. *(Aswan - Aswan 2023)*

Test on unit 10

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصويبه

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

قم بحل إختبار تراكمي في الملحق

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. The text is about a plant called ..... .
   a. cotton b. wheat c. bamboo d. silk
2. People use bamboo to make ..... .
   a. clothes b. sweets c. wood d. metal
3. Bamboo is an important crop in ..... .
   a. Egypt b. China c. Japan d. India
4. The bamboo industry makes a lot of ..... .
   a. leather b. silver c. gold d. money

(Maassara - Cairo 2023)

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Hoda is talking with Leila about clothes.

Hoda : What a lovely scarf you are wearing, Leila !
Leila : Really ! (1) ..... ?
Hoda : Yes, I like the green colour. (2) ..... ?
Leila : It is made from Egyptian cotton.
Hoda : Great ! Where did you buy it ?
Leila : (3) ..... .
Hoda : Are there any more green scarfs there ?
Leila : (4) ..... .This was the last one.
Hoda : Oh dear ! What about going to the market tomorrow ?
Leila : (5) ..... .

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Hayam is a lovely girl. She likes clothes very much. She always goes shopping for new **fashionable** clothes. She likes colourful and comfortable clothes. She likes to feel relaxed in her clothes. Her favourite

colours are orange and yellow. She likes wearing a headscarf which matches the clothes she wears. Hayam doesn't like traditional clothes. She thinks **they** are something from the past. Her handbag is always the same colour as her blouse. Her friends think that she is smart. Sometimes, they ask her from where she buys her cool clothes and she usually tells them and goes with them to buy their clothes. Hayam is a helpful girl.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "....." is the opposite of the underlined word "**fashionable**".
   a. Colourful b. Comfortable
   c. Favourite d. Traditional
2. Hayam likes ..... clothes.
   a. fashionable b. old c. traditional d. ancient

b. Answer the following questions :

3. What is this passage about ?
   .....
4. What does the underlined pronoun **they** refer to ?
   .....
5. Why do you think Hayam's friends ask her where she buys her clothes ?
   .....
6. What do Hayam's friends think about her?
   .....

(Sinnouris - Fayoum 2024)

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Some animals have ..... skin like zebras. *(El Sayda Zeinab - Cairo 2024)*
   a. gold b. colourful c. fast d. striped
2. SB This is my school ..... . I've to wear it every school day.
   a. team b. gate c. uniform d. laboratory
   (West Mahala - Gharbia 2022)
3. Women usually wear ..... to protect their hair. *(Mansoura - Dakahlia 2022)*
   a. skirts b. scarves c. sandals d. trainers

4. He borrowed my trainers because we wear the same ..... .
   a. colour b. character c. material d. size
5. Farmers use ..... to protect their crops from insects.
   a. soil b. chemicals c. climate d. industry
6. SB Egypt is ..... for growing crops to make materials. *(West Mahala - Gharbia 2024)*
   a. poor b. strong c. rich d. famous
7. ..... sandals are very expensive. *(El Tor - South Sinai 2022)*
   a. That b. These c. The ones d. This
8. I like to wear this ..... T-shirt.
   a. cotton, old b. cotton, new
   c. cotton, red d. red, cotton

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I don't like this meal, I want the other ..... (ones). *(Benha - Qalyoubia 2024)*
2. Can you see ..... (these) children on the bridge over there ? *(Qalyoub - Qalyoubia 2024)*
3. Why don't you wear ..... (these) dress ? *(Maassra - Cairo 2023)*
4. I have a/an ..... (old/short/gold) necklace. *(Tamia - Fayoum 2022)*
5. That bag is black, but this ..... (ones) is brown.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Clothes in Ancient Egypt"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What does Adam usually wear ?
   a. Jeans b. T-shirts c. Pajamas d. Jumpers
2. Who does Adam think he looks like when he dresses up ?
   a. His grandfather b. His mother
   c. His teacher d. His father

2. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Mona and Ahmed are talking about their hobbies.

Mona : Good morning. Can I ask you some questions ?
Ahmed : Good morning. (1) ..... .
Mona : (2) ..... ?
Ahmed : My favourite hobby is reading books.
Mona : (3) ..... ?
Ahmed : Science books. What about you ?
Mona : I like diving.
Ahmed : Wonderful! I know it. It's a sport you can do under water.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It's a beautiful suit. You look very ..... .
   a. strange b. smart c. short d. intelligent
2. She's looking for a loose jacket for a special ..... .
   a. market b. occasion c. supermarket d. shop
3. My sister loves ..... accessories.
   a. comfortable, colourful b. colourful, comfortable
   c. not comfortable or colourful
   d. very colourful, comfortable
4. ..... tool is made of iron.
   a. This b. Those c. These d. They
5. How ..... are those necklaces in the window ?
   a. size b. little c. lots d. much

4. Read the following, then answer the questions :

Everyone loves snacks ! But some snacks are bad for us. What is the best way to enjoy healthy snacks ? It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our bodies.

Fruit is a great snack ! It is very good for us and most people like the sweet taste. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day. Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. Snacks like hummus with carrot and pepper are **delicious** . We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is this main idea of the passage ?
   .....
2. How much fruit should you have every day ?
   .....
3. Do you think all snacks are healthy ? Why / Why not ?
   .....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word " **delicious**" is the opposite of " ..... " .
   a. terrible b. healthy c. tasty d. sweet
5. Fish sometimes have ..... .
   a. a lot of sugar b. a lot of salt
   c. a lot of pepper d. a lot of food

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. It's a **green, pretty** dress. (.....)
2. **That** skirts are my sister's. (.....)
3. I lost my phone. I need to buy a new **one's**. (.....)
4. Look at **this** man over there. (.....)

6. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

"Your favourite clothes"

.....

.....

نموذج الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

Sarah is buying a new skirt.

Shopkeeper: Hello, can I help you ?

Sarah : (1) ..... .

a. Yes, please. I want a jacket
b. Yes, I want to buy a skirt
c. No, thank you
d. Don't worry

Shopkeeper: A skirt! Is it for a special occasion ?

Sarah : (2) ..... .

a. Yes, it is my wedding
b. Yes, it is for my graduation party
c. Yes, it is my birthday
d. Yes, it is my trip abroad

Shopkeeper: Congratulations! I wish you a happy graduation party.

Sarah : (3) ..... .

a. Don't worry b. You are welcome
c. Thank you d. I am in a hurry

Shopkeeper: (4) ..... ?

a. What kind of trousers do you like
b. What kind of trainers do you like
c. What kind of shoes do you like
d. What kind of skirts do you like

Sarah : I'd like something loose, but smart.

Shopkeeper: We have this green skirt, and that yellow one. (5) ..... ?

a. How much is it
b. Which one do you like
c. How do you do
d. How much does it cost

Sarah : I will take the yellow one.

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :

6. Can you give me ..... (**those**) book ? I cannot get it.

a. there b. that c. these d. then

7. ..... (**That**) cups on the shelf there are yours.

a. These b. Then c. Than d. Those

8. I lost my socks. I need to buy new ..... (**one**).

a. the one b. ones c. the ones d. of one

9. Look at ..... (**these**) newspaper here.

a. that b. those c. this d. then

10. I like this ..... (**new, cotton, long**) T-shirt.

a. cotton , new , long b. cotton , long , new
c. long , new , cotton d. long , cotton , new



UNIT ELEVEN

The future of our planet

SB pages 44:53 WB pages 100:106

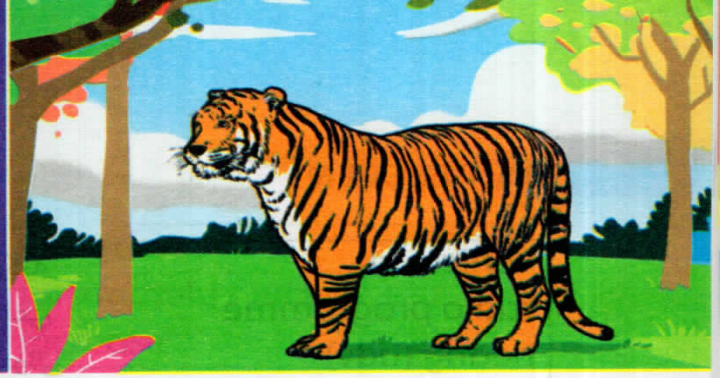
Unit Objectives :

- **Reading :**
  Online posts about helping the environment; texts about a school trip; an article about teenage inventors; a postcard
- **Writing :**
  A paragraph about an environmental problem : a holiday postcard
- **Listening :**
  Identifying what is going to happen; a radio programme about environmental problems; a teacher talking about drones; a discussion about making arrangements
- **Speaking :**
  Making predictions and future plans; suggesting solutions; giving opinions
- **Language :**
  be going to and the present continuous for the future
- **Life Skills :**
  Problem solving; Negotiation ; Collaboration

Lessons

1 & 2

SB pages 44 : 47
WB pages 100 & 101



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

intentions (n)	نوايا	drought (n)	جفاف
storm (n)	عاصفة	save (d) (v)	يحافظ على - ينقذ
solution (n)	حل	air pollution (n)	تلوث الهواء
hunter (n)	صياد	flood (n)	فيضان
wind turbines (n)	توربينات الرياح	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية
reuse (d) (v)	يعيد استخدام	solar panels (n)	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
equipment (n)	معدات	install (ed) (v)	يثبت
melt (ed) (v)	يذوب - ينصهر	reduce (d) (v)	يقلل - ينقص

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

Install - Solar panels - drought - reuse - solution

1. Can you help me find a ..... to this problem ?
2. ..... change the sunlight into electricity.
3. "....." means to put something somewhere so it's ready to use.
4. The High Dam saved Egypt from the danger of ..... .

Lesson 1

SB pages 44 & 45 WB page 100

planet (n)	كوكب	traffic (n)	حركة المرور
post (n)	منشور	roof (n)	سطح
climate change (n)	تغيير المناخ	danger (n)	خطر
sunlight (n)	ضوء الشمس	wind (n)	رياح
turn (ed) (v)	يدور - يلف	washing machine (n)	غسالة
recycle (d)(v)	يعيد تدوير		

Lesson 2

SB pages 46 & 47 WB page 101

alarm clock (n)	منبه	local people	السكان المحليين
vote (d) (n), (v)	تصويت / يصوت	desert animals	حيوانات صحراوية
evidence (n)	دليل - برهان	desert plants	نباتات صحراوية
Wadi Rum	وادي روم [بالأردن]	unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ

vehicle (n)	عربة / مركبة	environmental problem (n)	مشكلة بيئية
radio programme	برنامج إذاعي	kill (ed) (v)	يقتل
nearly (adv)	تقريبًا - حوالى	finishing line (n)	خط النهاية
commentator (n)	معلق	approach (ed) (v)	يقترب

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
get off ينزل من [وسيلة مواصلات]	got off	got off
throw away يرمى - يتخلص من	threw away	thrown away
fall down يسقط	fell down	fallen down
come on يتقدم	came on	come on
ring يرن	rang	rung

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

install	put a piece of equipment somewhere and make it ready to use	يثبت
reduce	make something become less smaller in amount or size	يقلل
repair	fix something that is broken	يصلح
save	make something safe from danger	يحفظ - ينقذ
solar panels	equipment that changes the sunlight into electricity	ألواح شمسية
wind turbines	equipment that uses the wind to make electricity	توربينات الرياح

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

go	trekking يذهب في رحلة طويلة سيرًا على الأقدام	**get**	worse يسوء [الأمر]
		catch	the bus يلحق بالأتوبيس
	swimming يذهب للسباحة	**make**	predictions يتنبأ - يقوم بعمل تنبؤات
	to bed يذهب للنوم		money يكسب أموال
damage	the environment يتلف البيئة	**cause**	pollution يسبب التلوث

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
save يحفظ - يحافظ على	preserve / keep	destroy / damage يدمر / يحطم
drought جفاف	lack of water	flood فيضان
problem مشكلة	matter / trouble	solution حل

safe	آمن	secure	dangerous	خطير
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	unluckily	fortunately / luckily	لحسن الحظ
reduce	يقلل - ينقص	decrease	increase	يزيد - يزداد

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
re–	تعنى مرة أخرى (again)	reuse	يعيد استخدام
		rewrite	يعيد كتابة
		recycle	يعيد تدوير
–al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	environmental	بيئى
		natural	طبيعى
		traditional	تقليدى
–er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	hunter	صياد

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The opposite of the word "save" is "..... " .
   a. keep b. preserve c. damage d. reduce
2. The synonym of the word "reduce" is ".....".
   a. secure b. decrease c. increase d. solve
3. To turn "environment" into an adjective, we add the suffix ".....".
   a. –ation b. –al c. –er d. –or
4. Unfortunately the man died after the accident. The word " Unfortunately" means "..... " .
   a. Unluckily b. Fortunately c. Luckily d. Likely
5. The prefix "re-" in the verb "recycle" means "..... " .
   a. never b. again c. cycle d. one

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 save – savings

* **save** يدخر / يوفر [وقت - مال]
  - My little brother **saves** L.E 1000 a month.
  - Travelling by plane **saves** a lot of time.
* **save ..... from .....** ينقذ .... من .....
  - SB I'm going to help my father to **save** wildlife **from** the flood.
* **savings** مدخرات [اسم جمع]
  - All my **savings** are in the bank.

(SB page 45)

2 (to + inf.) أو (how to + inf.)

لاحظ أن الأفعال الآتية يتبعها

know
learn → (how) to + inf.
teach

- SB My father works in the park and he **knows (how) to keep** me safe.

(SB page 45)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
The weather is going to be like ...	الطقس سيصبح ...	start a project	يبدأ مشروع
You are right.	أنت محق.	getting worse	يسوء [الأمر]
Prepositions			
ready to use	جاهز للاستخدام	in front of	أمام
change .... into	يتحول .... إلى	solution for / to	حل لـ
across the desert	عبر الصحراء	have a vote on ...	يقوم بتصويت على
go off	يقرع [جرس]	at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
get on	يركب [وسيلة مواصلات]	based on	قائم على

A week is enough
EL-MOASSER
مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه
في اسبـــوع واحـــد فقـط



Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

On Lesson [1] SB page 45

1. The rivers in Kaziranga National Park in India often **flood** (1) and the problem is getting worse because of **climate change** (2).
2. There's a lot of **air pollution** (3) from the traffic in our city and this is very unhealthy.
3. Trees are good for the environment and help **reduce** (4) air pollution.
4. **Throwing away** (5) old phones can be bad for the environment.
5. I started a project in school to recycle mobile phones.
6. From tomorrow, people are going to bring us their old phones.
7. We're going to reuse parts from them to **repair** (6) other phones.

On Lesson [2] SB page 47

1. Wadi Rum is a large area of desert in the south of Jordan.
2. It is a very beautiful place with mountains, desert plants and **wildlife** (7).
3. Wadi Rum has some **environmental problems** (8).
4. Tourists often leave rubbish when they go **trekking** (9).
5. Tourists can damage plants and wildlife when they drive across the desert.
6. Hunters kill the desert animals.
7. There is much less wildlife now than in the past.
8. Soon there won't be any.

(1) يفيض	(2) تغير المناخ	(3) تلوث الهواء	(4) يقلل	(5) إلقاء / رمى
(6) يصلح	(7) الحياة البرية	(8) مشاكل بيئية	(9) السير على الأقدام لمسافات طويلة	

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

* Air pollution * A famous natural place * How to solve the problem of pollution

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١١ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 45

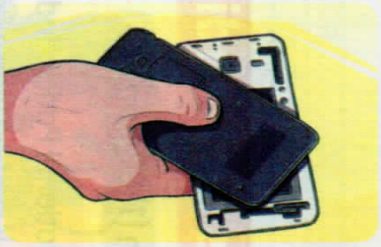
The rivers in **Kaziranga National Park**(1) in India often **flood**(2) and the problem is **getting worse**(3) because of climate change. Later this year, I'm going to help my father to save wildlife from the flood water. This can be dangerous, but my father works in the park and he knows how to **keep me safe**(4)!



There's a lot of air pollution from the **traffic**(5) in our city and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help **reduce**(6) air pollution - so next week, we're going to plant trees on the roof of our school and make a school roof garden.



I love phones, but I know that **throwing away**(7) old phones can be bad for the environment. I started a project in school to recycle mobile phones. From tomorrow, people are going to bring us their old phones and we're going to **reuse**(8) parts from them to **repair**(9) other phones.



(1) حديقة كازيرانجا الوطنية
(2) يفيض
(3) يسوء (الأمر)
(4) يحميني
(5) حركة المرور
(6) يقلل
(7) يرمى
(8) يعيد استخدام
(9) يصلح

Answer the following questions :

Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدى

Learn 1. What do you think we should do to reduce pollution ?

- I think we should plant more trees.

Practise 2. What do you think we can do with old phones ?

.....

Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 46

(1) **Boy :** Oh no! Look at the time! It's 9 o'clock! **Come on quickly**[1] !

(2) **Girl 1 :** The water's **a bit cold**[2] at first but it's lovely. Come on, Huda! Come and join me !

Girl 2 : OK, I'm coming!

(3) [Sound of snoring then alarm clock ringing. Snoring stops and person wakes up.]

(4) **Voice :** We are now approaching Station Square.

Boy 1 : Is this our stop ?

Boy 2 : Yes, it is. Come on.

(5) **Commentator :** And they're near the finishing line now and suddenly Farida seems to be running faster. Nothing can stop her now. Just look at her go!

(6) **Boy :** Oh, I'm tired. But it's only nine o'clock !

Woman : Yes, but you've got school in the morning, Omar.

Boy : **You're right**[3]. **Good night**[4], Mum. Good night, Ola.

(1) تعال بسرعة	(2) بارد قليلًا	(3) أنت محق	(4) تصبح على خير

on Lesson 2 SB page 47



Speaker : Wadi Rum[1] is a large area of desert in the south of Jordan. It's a very beautiful place with mountains, **desert plants**[2] and **wildlife**[3]. Unfortunately, Wadi Rum has some **environmental problems**[4].

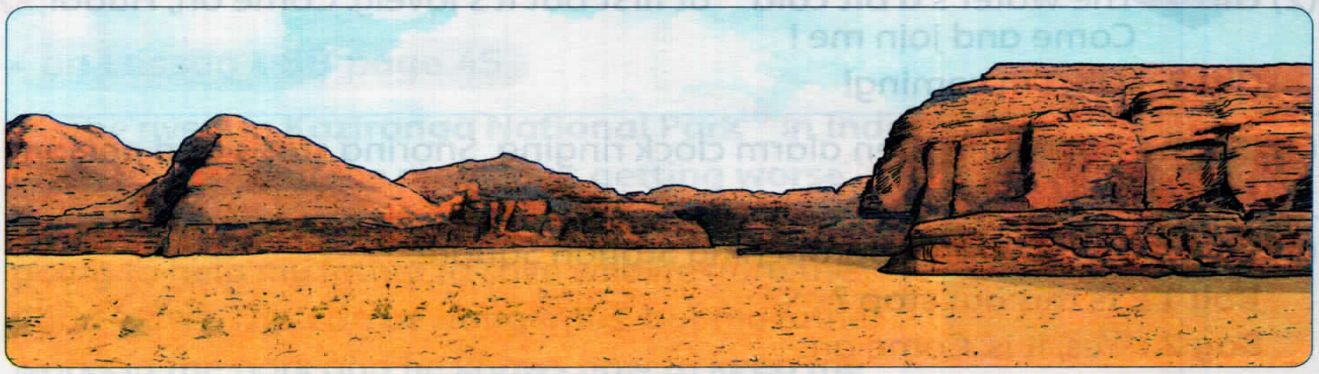
Tourists help the **local people**[5] make money, but when tourists **go trekking**[6] in the desert, they often leave rubbish, too.

Some tourists drive **across**[7] the desert in cars; they don't use roads or paths, but drive wherever they want to and this can **damage**[8] plants and wildlife.

(1) محمية وادي رم	(2) نباتات صحراوية	(3) حياة برية	(4) مشكلات بيئية	(5) السكان المحليون
(6) يذهب في رحلة طويلة سيرًا على الأقدام		(7) عبر		(8) يتلف / يفسد

The hotels use lots of water which can be a problem in the desert. But they are building new hotels so even more tourists will go there.

Another big problem is **hunters**(9) who kill the desert animals. They shouldn't do this, but there aren't enough people to stop them. There is much less wildlife now than in the past and **soon**(10) there won't be any.



(9) صيادون حيوانات | (10) قريبًا

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. We should recycle things such as bags, toys and other things to ..... them. *(Berket El Sabaa - Menofia 2024)*
   a. cycle b. reuse c. throw d. go
2. The High Dam saved us from many ..... .
   a. storms b. floods c. earthquakes d. pollution
3. The ..... caught a lot of animals from the forest.
   a. fisherman b. hunter c. writer d. vet
4. We have many ..... for the summer holiday but my dad decided to go to Hurghada.
   a. floods b. intentions c. roads d. problems
5. Climate change caused several ..... in many countries.
   a. droughts b. clouds c. machines d. panels
6. Using roads for ..... panels is a great invention.
   a. moon b. water c. plastic d. solar

SB , WB and Previous Exams

7. SB There's a lot of air pollution from the ..... in our city. *(Tema - Souhag 2024)*
   a. farms b. field c. traffic d. solar
8. We should find solution to climate ..... . *(Kotour - Gharbia 2024)*
   a. change b. shake c. shave d. roof
9. The computer doesn't work . We need to ..... it. *(Samanoud - Gharbia 2024)*
   a. burn b. melt c. repair d. drop
10. ..... are used to produce electricity. *(Maassara - Cairo 2023)*
    a. Coral reefs b. Mobiles c. Ports d. Solar panels
11. People think that online shopping ..... time and energy. *(El wakf - Qena 2023)*
    a. makes b. pays c. saves d. stays
12. Children should ..... eating sweets because they are unhealthy. *(Belibis - Sharkia 2022)*
    a. encourage b. increase c. reduce d. suggest

El-Moasser Exercises

13. Climate change affects the environment badly and ..... more animals and birds.
    a. melts b. repairs c. kills d. saves
14. Cars, buses and trains are called ..... .
    a. planets b. vehicles c. materials d. panels
15. To ..... means to become liquid. *(Toud - Luxor 2024)*
    a. freeze b. reduce c. save d. melt

▸ Definitions

16. To ..... is to put a piece of equipment somewhere and make it ready to use.
    a. install b. sell c. pollute d. save

▸ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

17. Scientists ..... predictions about climate in the future.
    a. take b. make c. bake d. give
18. A car alarm went ..... in the middle of the night.
    a. off b. of c. on d. up

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

1. Asking and answering questions about future plans :

١. توجيه أسئلة والإجابة عليها عن الخطط المستقبلية

Questions	Answers
1. What are you going to do at the weekend ? - ماذا ستفعل في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟	- I'm going to help my father. - سوف أساعد والدي.
2. Where are you going for your next holiday ? - أين ستذهب في عطلتك القادمة ؟	- I am going to Alexandria. - سوف أذهب إلى مدينة الإسكندرية.
3. Are you going to recycle your mobile phone when it's old ? - هل سوف تعيد تصنيع هاتفك المحمول عندما يصبح قديمًا ؟	- Yes, I am going to recycle it to help the environment. - نعم سأعيد تصنيعه لمساعدة البيئة. - No, I am going to have a new one. - لا ، سوف أشترى هاتف محمول جديد.

2. Asking and answering questions on environmental problems :

٢. توجيه أسئلة عن المشاكل البيئية والإجابة عليها

Questions	Answers
1. What sort of environmental problems do you think is in Wadi Rum ? - ما نوع المشاكل البيئية التي تعتقد أنها في منطقة وادي روم ؟	- I think the tourists leave rubbish in the desert when they go trekking. Also the hunters kill the desert animals. As a result of that there is less wildlife now. - أعتقد أن السياح يتركوا القمامة في الصحراء عندما يذهبوا في رحلة طويلة سيرًا على الأقدام. أيضًا الصيادون يقتلون الحيوانات الصحراوية ونتيجة لذلك أصبح عدد حيوانات الحياة البرية أقل بكثير الآن.
2. How do you think we can solve these problems ? - كيف تعتقد أننا يمكننا حل هذه المشاكل ؟	1. I think we should stop people from hunting the desert animals. - أعتقد أنه يجب علينا منع الناس من صيد الحيوانات الصحراوية. 2. I think we should tell the tourists to take their rubbish with them to recycle it. - أعتقد أنه ينبغي علينا أن نخبر السياح أن يأخذوا القمامة معهم لإعادة تدويرها.

Speaking & Writing Corner

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة Paragraphs, E-mails & Dialogues الـ
قم باستعراض تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues **80** Paragraphs & E-mails

Your future plans

Step 1 Vocabulary
اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. What are you going to wear for the ..... ? حفلة
   - I'm going to wear the white dress.
2. When will we ..... ? نتقابل
   - We'll meet at 5 p.m.

Step 2 Speaking
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث

Complete the following dialogue :

Sama and Rana are preparing themselves to go to the party.

Sama : Will you go to the party tonight ?
Rana : (1) ..... .
Sama : What are you going to wear for the party ?
Rana : (2) ..... .
Sama : Oh! I really like that blue dress.
Rana : Thanks. (3) ..... ?
Sama : I am going to wear my favourite red dress.
Rana : Wow! (4) ..... ?
Sama : We'll meet at 6 p.m.
Rana : (5) ..... .

Step 3 Writing
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Write a paragraph on :

"Your future plans"

How to solve the problem of pollution

Read and complete :

1. Do you have any ..... problems in your neighbourhood ? بيئية
   - Yes, I have.
2. What's the ..... ? مشكلة
   - People throw a lot of rubbish and this causes a lot of pollution in the area.

A : Hi. Can I ask you some questions ?
B : Hi. (1) ..... .
A : Do you have any environmental problems in your area ?
B : (2) ..... .
A : (3) ..... ?
B : There is a lot of rubbish and this causes a lot of pollution.
A : (4) ..... ?
B : Pollution can do a lot of damage to people's health.
A : So, what should we do ?
B : (5) ..... .

"How to solve the problem of pollution"

III Language

Future with "be going to" المستقبل باستخدام "be going to" :

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

I	→ am	+ going to +	inf. مصدر الفعل
He, She, It, أو اسم مفرد	→ is		
You, We, They, أو اسم جمع	→ are		

ex. - I'm going to help my father.
- The snow is going to **melt**.
- We are going to **travel** to England.

2 Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية

Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + not + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. - They are not going to **visit** Alexandria.
- I am not going to **eat** fish.
- He isn't going to **throw** away his old phone.

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

A) Yes / No question : أ] السؤال بـ «هل» :

Am / Is / Are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل + ...?

ex. * Are they going to **win** the race ?
- Yes, they are. - No, they aren't.

B) Wh- question : ب] السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

Question word كلمة استفهام + am / is / are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل + ...?

ex. How is she going to **help** the environment ?

Usage الاستخدام

تستخدم هذه الصيغة فى الحالات الآتية :

1. We use (be going to + inf.) to talk about intentions that have been decided.

١. نستخدم (be going to + inf.) عند الحديث عن النوايا التى تم تحديدها.

ex. - I'm going to **build** a mosque. It's my intention.

- We're going to **travel** by plane to Aswan.

2. We use (be going to + inf.) to make predictions about the future based on what we can see or know (existing evidence) :

٢. تستخدم (be going to + inf.) عند التنبؤات عن المستقبل استنادًا إلى ما يمكننا رؤيته أو معرفته [مع وجود دليل على ذلك].

ex. - It is going to **rain**. (I can see some dark clouds).

هنا دليل قوى على أن السماء ستمطر. [أستطيع رؤية السحب السوداء].

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. The traffic is slow. We ..... to be late. *(Al Badary - Assuit 2024)*
   a. going b. are gone c. are going d. going
2. I am ..... to travel to Aswan. *(Ihnasia - Beni Suef 2023)*
   a. go b. going c. goes d. went
3. We are going to ..... to the zoo next week. *(El Wakf - Qena 2023)*
   a. go b. goes c. going d. went
4. ..... to travel to Zagazig next month ? *(Ain Shams - Cairo 2022)*
   a. Will you b. Are you going
   c. Are you d. You are going
5. SB Farida is going ..... the race. *(Kafr EL Zayat - Gharbia 2024)*
   a. win b. to won c. winning d. to win
6. What ..... going to do to solve the problem of climate change ?
   a. you are b. are you c. will you d. you will
7. He ..... going to catch the bus this morning.
   a. won't b. isn't c. doesn't d. hasn't

El-Moasser Exercises

8. They are going to ..... their flat next week.
   a. painted b. paints c. painting d. paint
9. Where ..... to spend your next weekend ?
   a. are you going b. you are going
   c. you were going d. were you going
10. I can see some dark clouds. I think it ..... .
   a. rains b. is going to rain
   c. isn't going to rain d. doesn't rain

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. I am ..... (go) to lend him the money. *(Tala - Menoufia 2024)*
2. The boys ..... (be) going to visit Alexandria next week . *(Edfu - Aswan 2024)*
3. ..... (Do) you going to see the concert? *(El Zeitia - Louxor 2024)*
4. She is ..... (go) to travel to Aswan next month. *(Qusia - Assuit 2024)*
5. SB I ..... (going to) help my father.
6. SB What are you going ..... (do) at the weekend ? *(Somasta - Beni Suef 2023)*
7. SB He is ..... (goes) to throw away his old phone.
8. Mr Sherif ..... (be) going to go to England in May. *(Zefta - Gharbia 2022)*
9. WB What do you think the weather is going to ..... (being) like later today ?
10. My mother is going to ..... (making) a cake. *(Omraniya - Giza 2022)*

El-Moasser Exercises

11. Are you going ..... (sell) your bike ?
12. What are you ..... (go) to do in the future ?
13. The snow ..... (be) going to melt.

General Exercises

On Lessons 1 & 2

Understand Apply Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. There is a lot of ..... pollution in our city.
   a. air b. plant c. water d. tree
2. The pollution is caused by ..... in our city.
   a. traffic b. rubbish c. factories d. drones
3. Pollution is very ..... .
   a. healthy b. good c. unhealthy d. fantastic
4. Trees help ..... air pollution.
   a. grow b. produce c. make d. reduce

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Randa asks Rasha about her plan for this evening.

Randa : Good afternoon, Rasha. How are you ?
Rasha : Good afternoon, Randa. (1) ..... .
Randa : Where are you going this evening ?
Rasha : (2) ..... .
Randa : (3) ..... ?
Rasha : To meet my brother. He's coming from Malaysia.
Randa : (4) ..... ?
Rasha : His plane arrives at 8 o'clock.
Randa : I hope he arrives safely.
Rasha : (5) ..... . *(Dokki - Giza 2024)*

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I started a project to ..... mobile phones. *(Abnoub - Assuit 2024)*
   a. return b. cycle c. rewrite d. recycle
2. SB When tourists go ..... in the desert, they often leave rubbish, too.
   a. diving b. swimming c. trekking d. skiing
3. Trees are good for the environment and help ..... air pollution. *(Nobaria - Beheira 2024)*
   a. introduce b. produce c. reduce d. increase
4. WB The desert is a difficult ..... to live in.
   a. park b. environment c. village d. city.

5. Many cars on the roads cause more air ..... . *(Haram - Giza 2022)*
   a. floods b. inventions c. pollution d. earthquakes

6. SB ..... away old phones can be bad for the environment.
   a. Putting b. Throwing c. Reducing d. Making

7. Huda is going ..... the race. She is in the first place. *(Qena - Qena 2022)*
   a. win b. to won c. winning d. to win

8. Where ..... to spend your next weekend ? *(El Fashn - Beni Suef 2023)*
   a. are you going b. you are going
   c. you were going d. were you going

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I'm going ..... (visit) Cairo next week. It's a plan. *(Maadi - Cairo 2024)*
2. I am ..... (go) to lend him the money. *(Basioun - Gharbia 2022)*
3. ..... (Be) you going to visit the museum ? *(Ashmoun - Menofia 2022)*
4. What are you going ..... (do)?
5. I can see dark clouds. It's ..... (to rain).

5 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Tarek telling him what you are going to do in the summer holiday. Your friend's email address is tarek@yahoo.com. Your name is Nader and your email address is nader@gmail.com.

From	
To	
Subject	

.....,
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Lessons

3&4

SB pages 48 : 50
WB pages 102 & 103



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

remote control (n)	جهاز التحكم عن بعد
drone (n)	طائرة بدون طيار يمكن التحكم بها عن بعد
conservation (n)	حفاظ - حماية
suitable (adj)	ملائم - مناسب
chemicals (n)	مواد كيميائية
environmentally-friendly	صديقة للبيئة
forest (n)	غابة
filter (ed) (v) (n)	يرشح - يصفى / مرشح - مصفاة
system (n)	نظام
bacteria (n)	بكتيريا
suitable (adj)	مناسب
STEM schools	مدارس العلوم والتكنولوجيا الحديثة
farmlands (n)	أراضى زراعية
location (n)	موقع
green system	نظام ملائم للبيئة
invent (ed) (v)	يخترع
volunteer (n)	متطوع
land (n)	اليابس
suitcase (n)	حقيبة سفر
invention (n)	اختراع
decay (ed) (v)	يتحلل - يفسد

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

green system - Drones - suitable - filters

1. ..... can be controlled from the ground. They fly high.
2. The ..... is good for the environment.
3. Some factories use ..... to reduce pollution and keep the environment clean.

Lesson 3

SB pages 48 & 49 WB page 102

tortoise (n)	سلحفاة
text message (n)	رسالة نصية
return (ed)(v)	يعود - يرجع
sunhat (n)	قبعة للشمس
wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية [اسم لا يعد]
coral reef (n)	شعب مرجانية
gate (n)	بوابة
mangrove (n)	شجر استوائي [المانجروف]
Ras Mohammad Nature Reserve	محمية رأس محمد الطبيعية

wind energy (n)	طاقة الرياح	control (led) (v)	يتحكم - يسيطر على
midday (n)	منتصف النهار	companies (n)	شركات
film (ed) (v) , (n)	يصور فيلم - فيلم	seed (n)	بذرة
diving (n)	رياضة الغطس	jungles (n)	ادغال

Lesson 4

SB page 50 WB page 103

liquid (n)	سائل	bits (n)	أجزاء صغيرة
chemistry (n)	الكيمياء	recycling bin	سلة المهملات
recycling (n)	إعادة التصنيع	Ocean Cleanup Array	نظام تنظيف المحيط [اختراع طالب هولندى]
ocean (n)	محيط		
canal (n)	قناة مائية	irrigate (d) (v)	يروى - يسقى

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
become يصبح	became	become
lend يقرض - يسلف	lent	lent
catch يمسك - يلحق	caught	caught

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

conservation	the protection of natural things such as forests, birds and animals	محافظة - حماية
filters (n)	tools that take things out of liquids such as water	مرشح - مصفأة
filter (v)	pass a liquid or gas through a piece of equipment in order to remove solid pieces	يصفى / يرشح
bacteria	microorganisms that are everywhere but are too small to see and can make you ill	بكتيريا
system	an organised way of doing something	نظام
decay	slowly but naturally becomes weaker and then disappear	يتحلل - يفسد
chemical	something made by scientists in chemistry or produced by chemistry	مادة كيميائية
location	the place or position of a particular area of land	موقع

green	good for, it doesn't damage the environment	ملائم للبيئة
suitable	acceptable or right for someone or something	مناسب
control	make a person, organisation or object do what you want	يتحكم - يسيطر على

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

make	noise	يصدر ضوضاء	**catch**	a train	يلحق بالقطار
take	part (in)	يشارك في	**have**	a rest	يأخذ قسط من الراحة

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
dirty	muddy / unclean	clean	نظيف
remote	faraway / distant	near / nearby / close	قريب
pollute	spoil / make dirty	clean	ينظف

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
–ing	تكون الاسم من الفعل	recycling	إعادة تدوير
–ation	تكون الاسم من الفعل	conservation	محافظة - حماية
–tion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	invention	اختراع

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Aswan is ..... , but Cairo is near.
   a. nearby b. close c. remote d. high
2. A lot of rubbish pollutes the environment. "Pollute" is the antonym of "..... ".
   a. spoil b. delete c. give d. clean
3. "....." is the noun from the verb "invent".
   a. Invention b. Invents c. Invites d. Invitation

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 without + (noun / inf. + ing) بدون

- I like my tea **without** sugar. *(SB page 50)*
- SB Filters take the plastic out of the sea water **without** hurting sea life.

2 green

تستخدم كلمة **green** في بعض التعبيرات لتدل على أن الاسم الموصوف [ملائم للبيئة - طبيعى] أو يقصد به حماية للبيئة.

- SB She invented a **green** system for cleaning water. *(SB page 50)*

3 bacteria البكتريا [اسم جمع يتبعها فعل جمع ومفردها **bacterium**].

- **Bacteria** are dangerous for our health. *(SB page 50)*

4 instead - instead of بدلًا من

- He didn't use his bike; he used his brother's **instead**.
- SB Companies are going to use drones **instead of** lorries. *(SB page 48)*

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
life forms	أشكال للحياة	such as	مثل / على سبيل المثال
(be) called	يدعى - يسمى	make deliveries	يقوم بتوصيل الطلبات
complete a simple form	يكمل استمارة بسيطة	present solutions	يقدم حلولًا
Prepositions			
in five days' time	في خلال ٥ أيام	fly over	يطير فوق
work on a project	يعمل في مشروع	go on a trip	يذهب في رحلة قصيرة
leave for	يغادر لـ	drop into	يسقط فى
full of	ممتلئ بـ	according to	طبقاً لـ / وفقًا لـ

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

On Lesson [3] SB page 48

1. **Drones**(1) can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them.
2. We can use **remote control**(2) drones from the ground.
3. Companies are going to use drones to make deliveries.
4. We can use drones to help save wildlife after **floods**(3) or **fires**(4).
5. Drones can fly over places where people can't go.
6. They don't make much noise.

On Lesson [3] SB page 49

1. The bus will be leaving for Ras Mohammed from the school tomorrow at 6:30 and returning in five days' time.
2. They will need **suitable**(5) clothes for the swimming and **diving trips**(6) to the **coral reefs**(7) on Monday and Tuesday.
3. They will also need good trainers and a sunhat for the visit to the **mangrove forests** (8) on Wednesday.

On Lesson [4] SB page 50

1. Green inventions are **environmentally-friendly**(9)
2. These inventions present **solutions**(10) to environmental problems without damaging the environment.
3. Boyan Slat, a student in Holland, invented a system to take plastic rubbish from the sea.
4. Boyan's system is called Ocean Cleanup Array.
5. Deepika invented a green system for cleaning water and making it safe for people to drink.
6. Deepika's system is cheap and uses light from the sun to **kill bacteria**(11) in water.
7. Five students from Kafr El-Sheik STEM school were able to **develop**(12) an app to help small farmers save water and energy.

(1) طائرة بدون طيارة	(2) جهاز التحكم عن بعد	(3) فيضانات	(4) حرائق
(5) مناسب	(6) رحلات غطس	(7) شعاب مرجانية	(8) غابات المانجروف
(9) صديق للبيئة	(10) حلول	(11) يقتل البكتريا	(12) يطور / ينمى

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

* Drones
* Ras Mohammed Nature Reserve
* An environmental problem

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على II من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 48



Scientist: **Drones**(1) can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them : we can use **remote control**(2). This **means**(3) we can control drones from **the ground**(4). In the future, drones are going to help **solve**(5) some environmental problems.

Boy : Really? How can we do that?

Scientist: Well, **companies**(6) are going to use drones a lot instead of lorries to make **deliveries**(7). This is going to help the environment because drones don't make much noise and they don't **cause**(8) as much **air pollution**(9) as lorries.

Boy : That's interesting.

Scientist: Yes, and we are also going to use drones to help wildlife. Drones can fly over places where people can't go. We can see them if there are any problems. **For example**(10), we can use drones to help save wildlife after **floods**(11) or **fires**(12).

Boy : Can they help people, too ?

Scientist: Of course ! We can send drones to **dangerous places**(13). For example, we are starting to use drones to **check wind turbines**(14). This is not an easy job. Wind **energy**(15) is much better for the environment and makes less pollution. We can even use drones to plant trees. Drones can drop **seeds**(16) onto the ground in places that people can't go to. And they don't need to stop and have a rest!

(1) طائرات بدون طيار	(2) جهاز التحكم عن بعد	(3) تعنى	(4) الأرض	(5) يحل	(6) الشركات
(7) خدمات توصيل	(8) يسبب	(9) تلوث الهواء	(10) على سبيل المثال	(11) الفيضانات	(12) الحرائق
(13) أماكن خطيرة	(14) يفحص طواحين الهواء	(15) طاقة	(16) بذور		

Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 49

Dear parents

The bus will be **leaving for**(1) Ras Mohammed from the school tomorrow at 6.30 am and returning **in five days' time**(2) at 12.30 pm on Thursday 11th June. Please **make sure**(3) that your daughter has suitable clothes for the swimming and diving trips to the coral reefs on Monday and Tuesday. They will also need good trainers and a sunhat for the visit to the mangrove forest on Wednesday. We will be **taking part in**(4) the conservation project in the mangrove forest and helping to plant new trees.



(1) يغادر متجهًا إلى | (2) فى خلال خمسة أيام | (3) يتأكد | (4) يشارك فى

on Lesson 3 SB page 49

Hi Laila

We aren't **sharing**(1) a room ☹. Mrs Nagwa says that the older students have to help **look after**(2) the younger girls. Can we meet at the **school gates**(3) tomorrow morning at 6 am? I need to give you the trainers I'm **lending**(4) you so that you can put them in your **suitcase**(5).

Habiba

(1) يتشارك في | (2) يعتني بـ | (3) بوابات المدرسة | (4) يقرض - يسلف | (5) حقيبة

on Lesson 4 SB page 50

Fantastic green inventions(1) by teenagers

Green inventions are **environmentally- friendly**(2). These inventions present **solutions**(3) to **environmental problems**(4) without damaging the environment.



Boyan Slat was a student in Holland when he **invented**(5) a **system**(6) to take plastic rubbish from the sea. There is a lot of plastic in our seas, which kills lots of wildlife. Boyan's system is called **Ocean Cleanup Array**(7). It uses machines whose arms have lots of **filters**(8) on them.

(1) اختراعات ملائمة للبيئة
(2) صديقة البيئة
(3) حلول
(4) مشكلات بيئية
(5) يخترع
(6) نظام
(7) جهاز تنظيف المحيطات
(8) مصفاه

These filters **take** the plastic **out of** (9) the sea water, without **hurting** (10) sea life.



Deepika Kurup was 14 when she invented a green system for cleaning water and making it safe for people to drink. When she visited her grandparents in India, Deepika saw children drinking water from a dirty canal. Before this, systems for cleaning water were expensive and used dangerous **chemicals** (11) which pollute the environment. Deepika's system is cheap and uses light from the sun to kill **bacteria** (12) in water.

Five Egyptian students from Kafr El-Sheikh **STEM School** (13) were able to **develop** (14) an app to help small farmers save water and energy. In this app, farmers **complete a simple form** (15) with information about their farmlands. This form is connected to a smart app which tells farmers the right amount of water that they need to irrigate their lands. The app also determines the amount of energy and the number of workers the lands need, according to their location and the season.

(9) يخرج
(10) يؤذى
(11) مواد كيميائية
(12) بكتريا
(13) مدارس العلوم و التكنولوجيا الحديثة
(14) ينمى / يطور
(15) يكمل استمارة بسيطة

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Today, some people use ..... to film dangerous places. *(Bassateen - Cairo2024)*
   a. tools b. alarms c. drones d. pilots
2. It's easy now to change the TV channels using a ..... control.
   a. fast b. low c. remote d. far
3. You can use a ..... to take out large bits from liquids.
   a. fork b. filter c. pan d. bowl
4. Planes, mobile phones and helicopters are great ..... . *(Fowa - Kafr El-Sheikh 2023)*
   a. inventions b. invitations c. chemicals d. views
5. Don't drink water from a canal because it can be full of dangerous ..... . *(West Kafr El Sheikh - Kafr El Sheikh 2023)*
   a. filter b. system c. bacteria d. location

SB , WB and Previous Exams

6. Scientists can make ..... in laboratories. *(Deirmawas - Minia 2024)*
   a. industry b. chemicals c. future d. crops

7. I would like to ..... a machine to tidy my room. *(El Wasta - Beni Suef 2022)*
   a. pull b. discover c. invent d. invite
8. WB Volunteers are working on a ..... project to save Egyptian tortoises.
   a. damaged b. driving c. conservation d. polluting

El-Moasser Exercises

9. Plastic ..... in the ocean for a long time.
   a. disappears b. stays c. decays d. makes
10. There are many buses outside the school ..... .
   a. laboratory b. library c. gate d. suitcase
11. Which of these is a ..... water, oxygen or wood ? – Water.
   a. liquid b. gas c. solid d. chemical

▸ **Definitions**

12. "....." means to make a person, organization or object do what you want.
   a. Catch b. Control c. Steal d. Decay
13. "....." is the place or position of a particular area of land.
   a. Chemical b. Location c. Mangrove d. Filter
14. If something is ....., it is acceptable or right for someone or something.
   a. useful b. suitable c. friendly d. enjoyable

▸ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

15. They work ..... a project to save the forest.
   a. on b. from c. of d. at
16. Drones can fly ..... places where people can't go.
   a. at b. in c. over d. of

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

▸ **Asking and answering questions on future plans**

توجيه أسئلة عن الخطط المستقبلية باستخدام التعبيرات الزمنية والإجابة عليها.

Questions	Answers
1. What are you doing this afternoon ? - ماذا ستفعل اليوم في وقت الظهيرة ؟	- I am visiting my friend. - سوف أزور صديقى.
2. What are you doing at the weekend ? - ماذا ستفعل في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟	- I am meeting my cousin. - سأقابل ابن عمى.
3. What is Judy doing this evening ? - ماذا ستفعل چودي هذا المساء ؟	- Judy is playing tennis this evening. - ستلعب چودي تنس هذا المساء.

III Language

Remember تذكر

The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

I am
He / She / It / فاعل مفرد غائب + is + inf. مصدر الفعل + ing .....
We / You / They / فاعل جمع are

ex. - Manal and Mona are studying calligraphy.

2 Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية

I am
He / She / It فاعل مفرد غائب + is + not + inf. مصدر الفعل + ing .....
We / You / They فاعل جمع are

ex. - He isn't doing his homework now.

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

A) Yes / No question : أ) السؤال بـ «هل» :

Am I
Is + he / she / it فاعل مفرد غائب + inf. مصدر الفعل + ing ..... ?
Are we / you / they فاعل جمع

ex. * Are they watering the trees now ?

B) Wh - question : ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

Question word كلمة استفهام + am / is / are + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + ing ..... ?

ex. When are you travelling to Luxor ?

Usage الاستخدام

1. We use the present continuous to express actions happening now.
يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أحداث تقع الآن.

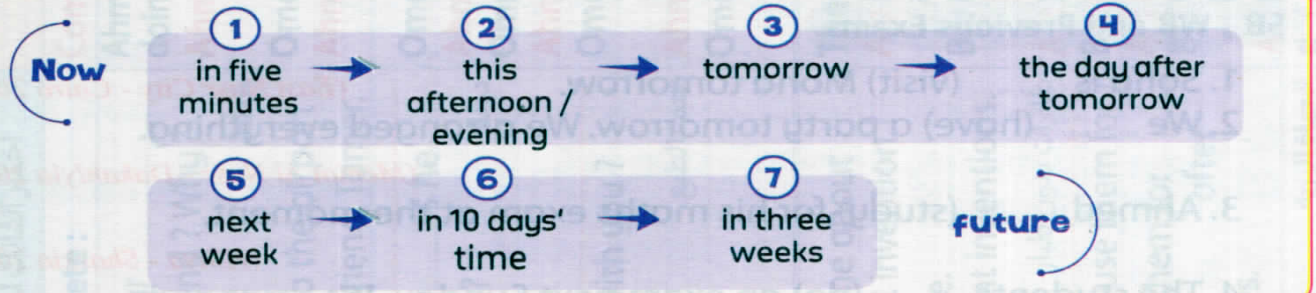
ex. - She is going to Aswan at the moment.

2. We use the present continuous for future plans and arrangements, often with a time and date.
نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الخطط والترتيبات المستقبلية وغالبًا مع الوقت والتاريخ.

ex. - I'm travelling to Luxor next month.

Future Time Expressions تعبيرات زمن المستقبل

Common Future Time Expressions تعبيرات زمن المستقبل الشائعة	Examples
tomorrow غدًا [بعد يوم واحد]	I think I will go shopping tomorrow.
the day after tomorrow يوم بعد غد [بعد يومين من اليوم]	Sam is travelling the day after tomorrow.
next week [الأسبوع القادم] [الأسبوع الذي يلي هذا الأسبوع]	Omar will visit his uncle next week.
in (a specific period of time in the future) في [فترة زمنية محددة في المستقبل]	Adam will finish his exams in three weeks.
this (morning - afternoon - .....) هذا [الصباح - بعد الظهيرة - .....]	Tarek is playing football this evening.
On (Monday - Sunday .....) في [يوم الاثنين - يوم الأحد ...] [يوم محدد]	Mona is travelling to France on Monday.



Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. She ..... her cousin in her birthday party next week. *(Samalout - Menia 2024)*

a. help b. helped c. helps d. is helping

2. I ..... my uncle at the new restaurant tomorrow morning.
(Monsha'at Nasser - Cairo 2024)
a. am meeting b. meet c. meets d. going to meet

3. WB Hatem ..... a new mobile tomorrow. It's arranged.
a. is going to buy b. bought c. will buy d. is buying

4. We ..... to Alexandria tomorrow. We have booked the tickets.
a. will travel b. travelled c. would travel d. are travelling
(Etay El Baroud - Beheira 2023)

5. What ..... now ?
(Samalut - Minya 2022)
a. are you doing b. you are doing
c. are you doing to do d. you are going to do

6. SB They are returning in five ..... at 12.30 p.m.
a. days' time b. day's time c. days time d. day time

7. SB The students ..... the school at 6.30 on 6th June.
a. is leaving b. going to leave c. leaving d. are leaving

El-Moasser Exercises

8. Nahid ..... a party next Sunday. She's invited her friends.
a. is having b. having c. has had d. have

9. We aren't taking a bus. We ..... a train at 7 p.m.
a. caught b. are catching c. catching d. going to catch

10. My cousins ..... at lunchtime tomorrow at 3 pm.
a. are arriving b. going to arrive c. arrived d. arrive

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. Soha is ..... (visit) Mona tomorrow. *(East Nasr City - Cairo 2024)*

2. We ..... (have) a party tomorrow. We arranged everything.
(Meniat Al Nasr - Dakahlyia 2024)

3. Ahmed ..... (study) for his maths exam at the moment.
(Hihya - Sharkia 2022)

4. The students ..... (do) an exam next Sunday. It's arranged.
(Sadat - Menoufia 2022)

5. SB What are you ..... (do) this afternoon ?

6. SB I ..... (visit) the dentist at 4 : 30 next Thursday.

El-Moasser Exercises

7. Here is Ali's suitcase. He ..... (travel) to London tomorrow.

8. Sorry, I can't visit you tomorrow. I am ..... (study) for the exam.

9. We ..... (having) dinner outside. We have prepared everything.

Your plans for the weekend

Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	Step 2 Speaking اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة
Read and complete : 1. What are your ..... for the weekend ? Why ? خطط - I am going to the airport to meet my friend, Tamer. 2. Which ..... is he coming from ? دولة - Italy. 3. Can I come with you ? - ..... . نعم بالطبع.	**Complete the following dialogue :** **Ahmed is asking Omar about what he is doing.** **Ahmed :** Hi Omar. Where are you going at the weekend ? **Omar :** Hi Ahmed. (1) ..... . **Ahmed :** Why are you going to Alexandria Airport? **Omar :** (2) ..... . **Ahmed :** (3) ..... ? **Omar :** He is coming from France. **Ahmed :** (4) ..... ? **Omar :** He was studying medicine. He became a doctor there. **Ahmed :** Can I come with you to Alexandria Airport ? **Omar :** (5) ..... . There is no place in the car.	**Write a paragraph on :** "Your plans for the weekend" .....

The importance of drones

1. Can you tell me about an important invention ? - Yes, of course. ..... are important inventions. طائرات بدون طيار 2. What can we use them for ? - We can use them for saving ..... after floods or fires. الحياة البرية	**They are talking about drones.** **A :** Hi. Can you tell me some information about the drone ? **B :** Hi. (1) ..... . (2) ..... ? **A :** I want to know if it is a useful invention. **B :** (3) ..... . **A :** (4) ..... ? **B :** We can use it to help save wildlife after floods or fires. **A :** Fantastic! What else can we use it for ? **B :** (5)	"The importance of drones" .....

General Exercises

On Lessons 3 & 4

Understand Apply Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. Drones can ..... .
   a. swim b. sink c. float d. fly
2. We can use a ..... control to fly drones.
   a. remote b. nearby c. near d. far away
3. We can control drones from the ..... .
   a. sky b. sea c. ground d. river
4. In the future, drones are going to help solve some ..... problems.
   a. healthy b. environmental
   c. mechanical d. historical

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Shady is asking Ryan about his plans this afternoon.

Shady: What are you going to do this afternoon ?

Ryan : (1) ..... .

Shady: What time is your swimming training ?

Ryan : At half past three. (2) ..... ?

Shady: Because I want you to go shopping with me.

Ryan : (3) ..... .

Shady: (4) ..... ?

Ryan : I finish my training lesson at 6.

Shady: OK. What about going shopping at 6:30 ?

Ryan : (5) ..... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The mobile is the most important ..... in our life.
   a. invitation b. discovery c. invention d. translation
2. People sometimes use a ..... to film animals from the sky.
   a. plant b. drought c. drone d. racket

3. Mona's mother is a/an ..... at the hospital; they don't pay for her work. *(Edfu - Aswan 2023)*
   a. coach b. patient c. architect d. volunteer
4. SB Boyan Slat invented a ..... to take plastic rubbish from the sea.
   a. bacterium b. problem c. system d. forest
5. SB Wind ..... is much better for the environment and makes less pollution. *(El Marg - Cairo 2023) (Maghagha - Minya 2022)*
   a. drones b. equipment c. chemicals d. energy
6. Heavy clothes are ..... for cold climate.
   a. dangerous b. suitable c. useless d. bad
7. Judy ..... a museum in nine days' time. *(Juhina - Souhag 2024)*
   a. going to visit b. visiting c. is visiting d. visited
8. ..... on a school trip next week ?
   a. You are going b. You aren't going
   c. Are you going d. You will go

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. What are you ..... (do) this afternoon? *(Haram - Giza 2024)*
2. We ..... (travel) to Sharm El Sheikh tomorrow. We have made our arrangements. *(Etay El Baroud - Beheira 2023)*
3. Ali ..... (take) the bus at 5 a.m. tomorrow. *(Helwan - Cairo 2022)*
4. SB The bus ..... (leave) in ten minutes' time.
5. I am ..... (travel) to Luxor tomorrow. Everything is arranged.

5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Water pollution"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons

5&6

SB pages 51 & 52
WB pages 104 & 105



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

scary (adj)	مخيف	horse riding (n)	ركوب الخيل
rock climbing (n)	تسلق الصخور	bird watching (n)	مشاهدة/مراقبة الطيور
star gazing (n)	مراقبة النجوم	hot-air ballooning (n)	ركوب منطاد الهواء الساخن
coral reefs (n)	الشعاب المرجانية	bungee jumping (n)	القفز بالحبال
snorkel (led) (v)	يغطس باستخدام أنبوب التنفس	sandboarding (n)	التزحلق على الرمال
fishing (n)	صيد السمك		
ruins (n)	بقايا - اطلال		

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

snorkel - fishing - ruins - scary - Bungee jumping

1. ..... is a very dangerous sport. Brave people like it.
2. I like to ..... . It is an under water activity.
3. We can't live in this house. The house was just ..... .
4. Watching ..... films is not suitable for children before sleeping.

Lesson 5

SB page 51 WB page 104

bored (adj)	يشعر بالملل	minutes (n)	دقائق
beginners (n)	مبتدئين	fun (n)	مرح / متعة
actually (adv)	في الواقع	afraid (adj)	خائف
invite (d) (v)	يدعو		

Lesson 6

SB page 52 WB page 105

sunset (n)	غروب الشمس	salt lake (n)	بحيرة مالحة
book club (n)	نادى الكتاب	reply (ied)(v), (n)	يرد - رد
miss (ed)(v)	يفقد - يفوت	electricity (n)	كهرباء

Japanese (n), (adj)	اللغة اليابانية - ياباني	area (n)	منطقة
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	towel (n)	منشفة
history (n)	تاريخ	cause (d) (v)	يسبب

Study these definitions — ادرس هذه التعريفات

scary	frightening	مخيف
star gazing	to look at the stars in the sky as a hobby	مراقبة النجوم
sunset	the time in the evening when you last see the sun in the sky	غروب الشمس

Collocations — متلازمات لفظية

go	rock climbing يذهب لتسلق الصخور	**have**	a picnic	يذهب في نزهة
get	cold يصاب بالبرد	**make**	electricity	يولد طاقة كهربائية
	bored يشعر بالملل			

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms — مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
fresh طازج	new	stale غير طازج
free غير مشغول - فاضى	available / empty	busy مشغول
exciting مثير - رائع	interesting	boring ممل

Prefixes & Suffixes — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
–er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	beginner مبتدئ
–ly	تحول الصفة إلى ظرف	actually فى الحقيقة
–y	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	scary مخيف

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The synonym of the word "fresh" is "..... ".
   a. stale b. new c. busy d. early
2. At 7 o'clock, tomorrow morning, I am doing my work, so I'm not ..... .
   a. busy b. free c. helpful d. late
3. To change the verb "begin" into a noun, we add the suffix "..... " .
   a. –al b. –tion c. –ed d. –er

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 a bit + صفة — تستخدم a bit أمام الصفة لكى تعطى معنى وجودها بدرجة أقل [قليلًا]

- SB Rock climbing looks **a bit** scary to me. *(SB page 51)*

2 come on — هيا نستخدم للتشجيع والحث على عمل شئ.

- SB Come on, don't be afraid ! *(SB page 51)*

3 free — للحظ المعانى المختلفة لكلمة (free)

1. free = not busy — غير مشغول / متفرغ

- SB Are you and Nasser **free** this evening ?

2. free = without paying money — مجانى [بدون دفع مال]

- I took this shirt for **free.** *(SB page 51)*

4 suggest يقترح + inf. + ing.

- I **suggest** doing some more activities. *(SB page 51)*

5 by

- by — بواسطة

- I improve my English **by** learning more vocabulary.

- by = near — بالقرب من

- I stayed in a hotel **by** the sea.

- by = before — قبل / بحلول

- **By** 1970, my father had built our house. *(SB page 52)*

Important Expressions & Prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions

It sounds really exciting!	تبدو شيقة حقًا!	see you then	أراك لاحقًا
It might be fun.	ربما تكون ممتعة.	pass the exam	يجتاز الامتحان
the day before yesterday	قبل أمس	one last thing	شيء أخير
it looks a bit scary	يبدو مخيفًا قليلًا	call me later	اتصل بي لاحقًا
best wishes	أطيب التمنيات	have a fantastic time	يقضى وقتًا رائعًا
get cold	يشعر بالبرد	get bored	يشعر بالملل

Prepositions

I'd love to + (inf.)	أود أن ...	go under water	يذهب للغطس تحت الماء
look forward to (inf. + ing)	يتطلع إلى	sit by	يجلس بالقرب من / بجانب
have to + (inf.)	لابد / يجب أن	on the boat	على متن قارب

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

On Lesson (5) SB page 51

1. Kamal is going **rock climbing**(1) and asks Amir to come with him.
2. Amir finds rock climbing **a bit scary**(2) to him.
3. Amir's dad is going to take him **star gazing**(3) into the desert with his brother Ramy and Uncle Sami.
4. Kamal'd love to go to the desert at night.
5. Ramy doesn't want to go to the desert. He thinks he'd get cold and bored.

on Lesson (5) WB page 104

1. Baher would like to come diving next weekend. They are going to go to a coral reef.
2. Diving under water looks a bit scary to me.
3. Baher suggest going **snorkelling**(4).

On Lesson (6) SB page 52

1. I'm having a fantastic time with my family in Siwa.
2. We had a picnic on Fatans Island.
3. I like sitting by the water and watching the **sunset**(5) there.
4. We visited Shali Fortress and the Siwa Museum.
5. I learnt such a lot of history in one morning.
6. We're going to visit the Siwa salt lake. I'm **looking forward to**(6) visiting it.

(1) تسلق الصخور	(2) مخيف إلى حد ما	(3) مراقب النجوم
(4) الغطس باستخدام أنبوب التنفس	(5) غروب الشمس	(6) يتطلع إلى

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

* An activity you want to try in the future
* A famous natural place
* A picnic on Fatanas Island

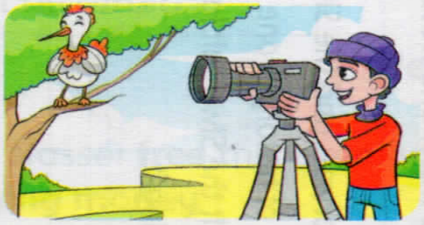
II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١١ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 51





Kamal : Hi Amir. What are you doing this afternoon ? I'm going **rock climbing**(1). There is a special activity for beginners. Would you like to come ?

Amir : I don't know. Rock climbing **looks**(2) **a bit scary**(3) to me! Are you going, Nasser ?

Nasser: Yes! I've always wanted to learn rock climbing! Oh, come on, don't be afraid, Amir!

Amir : Actually, I can't come this afternoon; I'm helping my father with something.

Kamal: **How about**(4) tomorrow afternoon instead ? There's another rock climbing activity then at the same time.

Amir : OK! I'll come. You're right. It might be fun. Also, I wanted to ask you something : are you and Nasser **free**(5) this evening ?

Nasser: I think so. Why ?

Amir : Dad is going to take me **star gazing**(6) into the desert with my brother Ramy and Uncle Sami and he said I could invite you, too.

Kamal: Thank you. We'd love to come, wouldn't we, Nasser ? I'd love to go to the desert at night. Is your brother Ramy going ?

Amir : No, he doesn't want to. He thinks he'd get cold and bored!

Nasser: Well, I think it sounds really exciting!

Amir : Great! We're meeting outside my house at half past ten. **See you then**(7).

(1) تسلق الصخور | (2) يبدو | (3) مخيف قليلًا | (4) ماذا عن | (5) متفرغ | (6) مراقبة النجوم | (7) أراك لاحقًا

Reading

on Lesson 6 SB page 52

Dear Nahla



I'm **having a fantastic time**(1) with my family in Siwa. Today, we **had a picnic**(2) on Fatanas Island. At the moment, I'm sitting by the water and watching the sunset. **It**'s very beautiful. We're **staying with**(3) my parents' friends and they are very kind. When we arrived **the day before yesterday**(4), it was very late. **They** still wanted to get up and make us dinner, and they bring us fresh dates for breakfast every day.

Yesterday morning, we visited Shali Fortress and the Siwa museum. I've always wanted to go there. I learnt such a lot of history in one morning. Tomorrow, we're going to visit the Siwa salt lake. I'm **looking forward to**(5) visiting it. It sounds really interesting.

Lots of love

Heba

(1) يقضى وقتًا رائعًا | (2) ذهب فى نزهة | (3) يبقى مع | (4) أول أمس | (5) يتطلع إلى

on Lesson 5 WB page 104

Baher : Would you like to come diving next weekend, Imad ? We're going to go to a **coral reef** (1) !

Imad : I don't know. Diving under water looks a bit scary to me.

Baher : If you don't like going under water, you could stay on the boat.

Imad : I think I'd **get cold**(2) and **bored**(3) on the boat.

Baher : Why don't you **snorkel**(4) ? Then you don't go under water but you can see the fish.

Imad : Yes, that might be **fun**(5).

Baher : Great! Let's all snorkel. We don't need a boat, we can go from the beach!

Imad : Thanks, I'd love to.

(1) شعاب مرجانية | (2) يصاب بالبرد | (3) شاعر بالملل | (4) يغطس باستخدام أنبوب تنفس | (5) متعة / مرح

on Lesson 6 WB page 105

Hi
Guess where I am ? At the moment, I'm walking in the desert in the **Nabq Nature Reserve**(1). It's really interesting. Yesterday, we visited the mountains. It was very hot! The day before yesterday, we went **diving**(2) in the coral reefs at **Shoura al Manquata**(3). The fish were amazing. Tomorrow we're going to visit **Wadi Kid**(4). I'm looking forward to seeing the beautiful birds that live there. We're coming home in three days' time. What are you doing ? Write to me and tell me your news.
Best wishes, Hamdi



(1) محمية نبق الطبيعية | (2) الغطس | (3) شورى المنقطة (منطقة تخييم فى محمية نبق) | (4) وادى كيد

on Lesson 7 SB page 53

Hi
Are you **busy**(1) ? What are you doing this afternoon ? Please could you call me **later**(2) because I need some help with the English homework ! I had to go to the dentist, so I **missed**(3) the last English lesson. What did you study in English class last week ?
One last thing - are you free on Saturday morning ? I'm playing tennis in the park. Would you like to come ?

(1) مشغول | (2) لاحقًا | (3) يفوت

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. I like star ..... at night. It is favourite hobby.
   a. climbing b. gazing c. collecting d. riding
2. Tourists enjoy watching the coral ..... in the Red Sea.
   a. briefs b. reefs c. beefs d. roofs
3. He is going to try ..... in the mountains.
   a. fishing b. rock climbing c. diving d. snorkelling
4. Brave people like practising ..... jumping using plastic cables.
   a. rock b. bang c. bungee d. bike

SB , WB and Previous Exams

5. SB I had to go to the dentist, so I ..... the last English lesson.
   a. visited b. missed c. invited d. had
6. SB Rock climbing looks a bit ..... to me ! *(Al-Bagour - Menoufia 2024)*
   a. interested b. scary c. bored d. amazed

El-Moasser Exercises

7. He has a fever حمى , his ..... is 40°.
   a. grade b. mark c. temperature d. view
8. Are you ..... of the dark ?
   a. proud b. afraid c. excited d. interested

▸ **Definitions**

9. ..... is the time in the evening when you last see the sun in the sky.
   a. Sunset b. Sunrise c. Sunlight d. Sun
10. " ..... " means frightening.
   a. Free b. Scary c. Busy d. Actual

▸ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

11. I think I'd ..... cold on the boat.
   a. get b. make c. take d. bring
12. He isn't ..... , he is busy.
   a. free b. crowded c. happy d. rich
13. Heba ..... a picnic on Fatanas Island.
   a. made b. had c. did d. gave
14. We stayed in a hotel ..... the sea in summer holiday.
   a. about b. of c. at d. by

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

▸ Making and responding to suggestions

تقديم اقتراحات والرد عليها

1 Situation الموقف	2 Positive response الرد بالموافقة	3 Negative response الرد بالرفض
- Why don't you / we snorkel ? لما لا تقوم/نقوم بالغطس بأنبوب التنفس ؟	- That's a good idea. إنها فكرة جيدة.	- I can't do this afternoon. لا أستطيع القيام بهذا وقت الظهيرة.
- How about tomorrow afternoon instead of today ? ما رأيك في غدًا بعد الظهر بدلًا من اليوم ؟	- I'll come. سوف آتى.	- I don't know, it looks a bit scary to me. لا أعلم، يبدو الأمر مخيف إلى حد ما بالنسبة لي.
- You could stay on the boat. من الممكن أن تبقى على متن القارب.	- I'd love to. أحب ذلك.	
- Let's all snorkel ! - هيا بنا جميعًا نغطس باستخدام أنبوب التنفس.	- I always wanted to do that. دائمًا ما كنت أريد فعل هذا.	
	- Thank you. We'd love to come. شكرًا لك. نود المجيء.	

General Exercises

On Lessons 5 & 6

Understand Apply Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Nora and Hana are talking about the next summer.

Nora : How are you, Hana ?

Hana : (1) ..... .

Nora : Where will you go next summer holiday?

Hana : (2) ..... .

Nora : Sharm El-Sheikh ! Who will go with you ?

Hana : (3) ..... .

Nora : (4) ..... ?

Hana : We will travel by bus.

Nora : (5) ..... ?

Hana : We will stay in a hotel. *(Tahta - Suhag 2024)*

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He went bungee ..... when we were in Australia. *(Akhmeem - Sohag 2024)*
   a. jumping b. climbing c. riding d. watching
2. We don't pay money for getting into the museum. It's for ..... .
   (Waqf - Qena 2024)
   a. free b. cheap c. expensive d. busy
3. Students do a lot of ..... during the school day.
   a. matches b. activities c. games d. lessons
4. My brother likes star ..... . He looks at the stars in the sky.
   a. diving b. gazing c. riding d. climbing
5. I will ..... my friends to my birthday party.
   a. invent b. invite c. feed d. climb
6. My family is ..... fantastic time in Siwa.
   a. giving b. fixing c. having d. wasting

7. My cousins ..... at lunchtime tomorrow at 11 am.

a. are arriving b. going to arrive

c. arrived d. arrive *(El Sahel - Cairo 2022)*

8. She is looking forward to ..... this modern car.

a. buys b. buying c. buy d. to buy

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. At the moment, we ..... (stay) in a small hotel near the lake.
2. WB Samia's family are going to ..... (travelling) to Japan.
3. ..... (Yesterday), I think it will be very hot.
4. What are you ..... (go) to do next week ?

(Khalifa & Mokattam - Cairo 2023)

5. Next week, we are ..... (going) visit the ruins of an ancient mosque.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"The activity you like doing in your free time"

Skills

1 Reading Comprehension

Extracting information

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [استخراج المعلومات Extracting information] وهنا تحتاج لقراءة النص جيدًا لاستخراج معلومات عن النص.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the questions :

Ahmed Zewail was born in 1946 in Egypt where he grew up. He went to Alexandria University then he finished his studies in America in 1974. He worked at the university of California in 1976. He was a famous scientist in 1998 when he won a medal because he discovered the femto-second. One year later, he got the Nobel Prize in chemistry. All Egyptians were very pleased to have a clever scientist. He lived in California and had four children. His wife was a doctor. He died in 2016. We are all proud of him.

- Where did Dr Ahmed Zewail work in 1976 ?

.....

- What did Dr Ahmed Zewail discover ?

.....

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى استخرج معلومة من النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة ركز على التفاصيل الموجودة فى الفقرة.

2 Speaking

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] معرفتك لقدر كاف من [Language Functions] والتى غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue :

Heba wants Hala to go fishing with her.

Heba: Hi ! Hala. How are you today ?

Hala : Hi ! Heba. (1) ..... .

Heba: (2) ..... ?

Hala : I am going to go fishing in Hurghada. Why don't you come with me ?

Heba: (3) ..... .

Hala : Why can't you come with me ?

Heba: Because I have to go to the market.

Hala : (4) ..... ?

Heba: Some vegetables for my mom. What about the next week ?

Hala : (5) ..... .

التحدى تريد [التحدث عن الخطط المستقبلية وتقديم الاقتراحات] وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التى قد تحدث بينك وبين زميلك.

3 Correction notes

• الهدف من هذا الجزء
- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

Review

◄ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

Subject. فاعل + am /is/ are going to + inf.	تستخدم هذه الصيغة للحديث عن النوايا الـتى تم تحديدها والتنبؤ بما سـيحدث فى المستقبل [بوجود دليل] .
The present continuous tense Subject. فاعل + am /is/ are + ing	زمن المضارع المستمر تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن أحداث تقع الآن والتعبير عن الخطط والترتيبات المستقبلية وغالبًا مع الوقت والتاريخ
Future Time Expressions tomorrow / the day after tomorrow	تعبيرات المستقبل

Learn

◄ تعلم

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 It is raining heavily; the river is going to ..... [flooded].	flood	be going to يتبعها المصدر
2 Judy is ..... [plays] tennis this evening.	playing	يتبع بـ [v. + ing + v. to be]
3 At 11 am next Sunday, we ..... [watch] the show.	are watching	ترتيبات مستقبلية محدد تاريخها ووقتها

Practise

◄ تدرب

Write the Reason : ◄ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة

1 The boys are going to ..... [visiting] Alexandria next year.	visit	.....
2 Next year , Hoda ..... [move] to a new flat. She has prepared everything.	is moving	.....
3 I've arranged it, I ..... [visit] my uncle tomorrow .	am visiting	.....
4 She ..... [going] to get married next spring.	is going	.....

Write the Correction : ◄ اكتب التصحيح

1 Farida is in the front. She is ..... [going] win .	.....	الصيغـة [be going to] تعـبر عن تنبؤ مستقبلى مع وجود دليل
2 What are you ..... [do] this afternoon?	.....	سؤال على الترتيبات المستقبلية
3 She is visiting her grandma ..... [yesterday].	.....	الصيغة تعبر عن حدث مستقبلى مرتب فى المستقبل .
4 It's hot. The snow is ..... [melt].	.....	الصيغـة تعبر عن تنبؤ مسـتقبلى مع وجود دليل .

مراجعة عامة على Unit 11 فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

install	يركب - يثبت
wildlife	الحياه البرية
reduce	يقلل - ينقص
wind turbine	توربينات الرياح
reuse	يعيد استخدام
drought	جفاف
flood	فيضان
intentions	نوايا
remote control	جهاز تحكم عن بعد
drone	طائره صغيرة يمكن التحكم فيها عن بعد
conservation	حفاظ - حماية
filter	مصفاة - مرشح
decay	يتعفن / يفسد / يتحلل
green	ملائم للبيئة
volunteer	متطوع
suitcase	حقيبة سفر
hot-air ballooning	ركوب منطاد الهواء الساخن
bungee jumping	القفز بالحبال
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
star gazing	مراقبة النجوم
sandboarding	التزحلق على الرمال
ruins	بقايا - أطلال

Language

1. (be going to) for intentions.

- Use be going to + (inf) to talk about your intentions for the future.

• استخدم هذه الصيغة عند الحديث عن النية للقيام بشئ في المستقبل.

- I'm going to help my father.
- He isn't going to throw away his old phone.
- What are you going to do ?
- How is she going to help the environment ?

2. (be going to) for making predictions.

- Use (be going to) to make predictions about the future based on what we can see or know.

• استخدم هذه الصيغة لعمل تنبؤات في المستقبل ويوجد دليل على ذلك.

- It is going to rain. (I can see some dark clouds.)
- The students are going to do very well in their exams. (They always get good marks.)

3- Remember تذكر أن

- Use the present continuous for future plans and arrangements, often with a time and date.

• استخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن خطط وترتيبات مستقبلية غالبًا [بوقت وتاريخ].

- I'm visiting the dentist at half past four next Thursday.
- We're catching our train at 12.30. We aren't taking the bus.

Speaking

1. Making predictions and future plans :

• عمل تنبؤات وخطط مستقبلية:

* What are you going to do at the weekend ?

- I am going to help my father.

* What is going to happen ?

- The snow is going to melt.

2. Suggesting solutions & giving opinion :

• إقتراح حلول وإعطاء أراء:

- I think they should stop people from driving across the desert.

Review on unit 11
قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Questions collected from previous exams

تدريبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Judy ..... tennis this evening. *(Gomrok - Alexandria 2024)*
   a. going to play b. is playing
   c. playing d. played
2. Old cars and factory rubbish cause the problem of ..... . *(North Giza 2024)*
   a. correction b. development
   c. pollution d. technology
3. When tourists go ..... in the desert, they often leave rubbish, too. *(El Montazah - Alexadria 2024)*
   a. diving b. swimming c. trekking d. skiing
4. I decided to join the ..... project to help the environment. *(Wasat - Alexandria 2023)*
   a. conservation b. conversation
   c. ocean d. liquid
5. Wind ..... generate electricity for the local community. *(Etay El Baroud - Beheira 2023)*
   a. alarms b. turbines c. machines d. panels
6. Pollution isn't only one problem, but it ..... many problems. *(Dokki - Giza 2023)*
   a. causes b. saves c. does d. helps
7. We should ..... all our plastic and use it again. *(Ismailia 2023)*
   a. burn b. recycle c. throw d. damage
8. We should use ..... on buildings in sunny countries like Egypt. *(Damanhour - Beheira 2023)*
   a. solar panels b. snowboards
   c. washing machines d. tablets
9. They ..... to do extra homework tonight. *(Assuit 2024)*
   a. going b. are going
   c. is going d. be going
10. The girls are going to ..... Aswan next year. *(Dokki - Giza 2023)*
    a. visit b. visited
    c. visiting d. visits

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. They are going to ..... (winning) the match. *(Amira - Alexandria 2024)*
2. On Sunday at 8 o'clock, I ..... (meet) my friend. *(6th october - Giza 2023)*
3. The sky is cloudy ! It is going ..... (rain). *(Aswan 2023)*
4. The waiter is carrying a lot of dishes. They are going ..... (fall) *(Qena 2023)*
5. At the moment, we ..... (stay) in a small hotel near the lake. *(Berket El Sabaa - Menoufia 2023)*
6. Mum is going to ..... (making) a cake. *(Sirs El Lyaan - Menoufia 2023)*
7. What ..... (is) you going to do in the future ? *(El Fashin - Beni Suef 2024)*
8. Adam ..... (take) the bus at 7 a.m. tomorrow. *(Helwan - Cairo 2024)*

Test on unit 11

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصويبه

قم بحل إختبار تراكمي في الملحق

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. We use plastic for ..... different things.
   a. few b. many c. some d. enough
2. We can ..... some plastic.
   a. make b. use c. recycle d. remove
3. Plastic is ..... .
   a. poisonous b. safe c. useful d. clean
4. ..... and birds die from plastic.
   a. Wild animals b. Insects c. Pets d. Sea animals

(East Alexandria - Alexandria 2024)

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahlam and Wafaa are talking about pollution.

Ahlam : Hi ! Wafaa. What is the most important problem ?
Wafaa : Hi ! Ahlam. (1) ..... .
Ahlam : Pollution ! (2) ..... ?
Wafaa : Because it can damage our health.
Ahlam : How can we solve this problem ?
Wafaa : (3) ..... .
Ahlam : Planting trees ! Great ! What else should we do ?
Wafaa : (4) ..... .
Ahlam : (5) ..... ?
Wafaa : We should use green energy because it causes less pollution.

(Mahmoudiya - Beheira 2024)

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Japanese high school students spend 240 days a year at school. Classes are large with about 40 students in each class. At the end of the school day, all students sweep the classrooms, empty rubbish bins,

clean the blackboards and pick up rubbish outside the school . In Japan, the schools are not far from railway stations to save travelling time for students.
After school, Japanese students meet at clubs for two hours each day. When tired Japanese students get home; **they** don't waste time on TV or computer games. They have about two hours of homework a day plus three hours on Sundays !

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ..... .
   a. classrooms b. clubs
   c. Japanese students d. blackboards
2. Japanese students in high school spend ..... hours of homework a week.
   a. two b. three c. fourteen d. fifteen

b. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
   .....
4. How do Japanese students take part in cleaning their schools ?
   .....
5. Why do you think Japanese schools are built near railway stations?
   .....
6. What do Japanese students do when they get home ?
   .....

(El Adwa - Minia 2024)

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Scientists are trying to solve ..... problems. *(Aswan 2024)*
   a. environment b. environmental c. tradition d. music
2. Sunglasses ..... people's eyes from the sun *(Qena 2023)*
   a. take b. protect c. buy d. give
3. ..... are used from the ground by a remote control. *(Helwan - Cairo 2022)*
   a. Helicopters b. Trains c. Drones d. Planes

4. I felt afraid because the film was ..... .
   a. interesting b. fantastic c. exciting d. scary

5. When animals die, they ..... . *(Tahta - Sohag 2023)*
   a. recycle b. reuse c. decay d. stay

6. There is too much ..... in the streets of Cairo.
   a. flood b. traffic c. holiday d. filter

7. The traffic is slow . We ..... to be late. *(Shibin Elkom - Menoufia 2024)*
   a. gone b. going c. are going d. gone

8. SB What are you going ..... tomorrow ?
   a. do b. doing c. done d. to do

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I ..... (visit) the dentist at 7.30 this evening. *(East Alexandria - Alexandria 2022)*
2. What ..... (you go) to do next weekend?
3. Sally is going ..... (spend) a week in Alexandria.
4. We've booked two tickets. We ..... (watch) a play in the theatre tomorrow. *(Naser - Beni Suef 2022 / East Alexandria - Alexandria 2024)*
5. He can't answer the phone, he ..... (study) at the moment.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Plans for your next holiday"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. At the moment, I'm walking in the ..... .
   a. desert b. park c. circus d. sea
2. We went ..... in the coral reefs at Shoura al Manquata.
   a. swimming b. playing c. diving d. visiting

2. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking Sami about his bike.

Ahmed : Whose bike is that ?
Sami : (1) ..... .
Ahmed : (2) ..... ?
Sami : My father.
Ahmed : Why did your father buy you a bike ?
Sami : Because I passed my exams.
Ahmed : What a beautiful bike !
Sami : (3) ..... .

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. ..... travel to Alexandria ?
   a. Are they b. Are they going
   c. Will they to d. Are they going to
2. Scientists want to use a ..... to take plastic rubbish from the sea.
   a. drone b. panel c. system d. diary
3. They work ..... a great project to help the environment.
   a. on b. of c. to d. at
4. The man is driving too fast. He ..... have an accident.
   a. is going to b. is going
   c. will d. going to
5. When ice melts, it turns into the ..... form.
   a. sold b. liquid c. gas d. soft

4. Read the following, then answer the questions :

Drones can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them : we can use remote control. We can control drones from the ground. In the future, drones are going to help find a solution to some environmental problems.

Some companies are going to use drones instead of lorries to make deliveries. This helps the environment because drones don't make much noise and they don't cause as much air pollution as lorries. **They** also can help wildlife.

Drones help us see if there are any problems in faraway places. For example, we can use drones to save wildlife after floods or fires. In addition, they can help people by sending them to dangerous places like checking wind turbines. This is not an easy job. We can even use drones to plant trees. They can drop seeds onto the ground in places where people can't go. Drones don't need a rest. What a **smart** invention they are!

a. Answer the following questions :

1. How can drones help the environment ?
   .....
2. Do you think drones are useless ? Why / Why not ?
   .....
3. Give a suitable title to the passage.
   .....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" mean ?
   a. Lorries b. Companies c. Drones d. Deliveries
5. The opposite of the word "**smart**" is ..... .
   a. intelligent b. foolish c. wise d. clever

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I can see dark clouds. It **will** rain. (.....)
2. What are you going **do** at the weekend? (.....)
3. He has arranged it. He **visit** his uncle tomorrow. (.....)
4. The bus **leave** in ten minutes' time. (.....)

6. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

"Beautiful places in Egypt"

.....
.....

نموذج الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

Mona and Amal are talking about going to the library.

Mona : Where are you going this afternoon ?

Amal : (1)..... .

a. I am going to sleep
b. I am going to read a book
c. I am going to the library
d. I am going to play tennis

Mona : (2)..... ?

a. Why are you going there
b. When are you going there
c. Who are you going with
d. How are you going there

Amal : To read my favourite book there.

Mona : Can I come with you ?

Amal : (3)..... .

a. No, I can't
b. Yes, with pleasure
c. Sorry I'm busy
d. You can go tomorrow

Mona : Thank you. (4)..... ?

a. What time does the library open
b. What time does the film end
c. What time does the play end
d. What time does the film start

Amal : It opens at 10 a.m.

Mona : Could you bring some food ?

Amal : (5)..... .

a. Yes, I like music
b. Yes, I like acting
c. Yes, I like doing make-up
d. No, food isn't allowed in the library

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :

6. They are ..... (**visit**) the Pyramids next week.
   a. visited b. visiting
   c. visit d. visit to

7. Look outside, it is raining ..... (**yesterday**).
   a. last week b. usually
   c. at the moment d. next Monday

8. They ..... (**was**) visiting Aswan next year.
   a. is b. were
   c. are d. have

9. We have booked two tickets. We ..... (**watch**) a play in the theatre.
   a. watching b. are watching
   c. would watch d. 'll watch

10. My mother is going to ..... (**making**) a cake.
   a. makes b. make to c. make d. made



UNIT TWELVE

Languages and learning

SB pages 54:63 WB pages 107:113

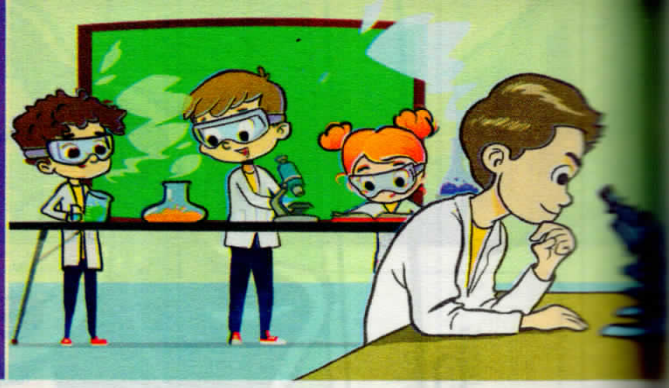
Unit Objectives :

- **Reading :**
  A quiz about learning styles; an article about languages in Africa; an advert for a language school
- **Writing :**
  An internet post giving advice; a study plan; an application form
- **Listening :**
  A conversation about future plans; a radio interview about animal communication
- **Speaking :**
  Talking about learning styles; a presentation about your studies; a discussion about study tips; giving advice, opinions and suggestions
- **Language :**
  A review of tenses
- **Life Skills :**
  Self-management; Communication skills; Critical thinking

Lessons

1 & 2

SB pages 54 : 57
WB pages 107 & 108



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

learner (n)	متعلم - دارس	future plans	خطط مستقبلية
mostly (adv)	في الأغلب - عمومًا	disappointed (adj)	مُحبَط
repair = fix (ed) (v)	يصلح	proud (adj)	فخور
choose (v)	يختار	summarise (d) (v)	يلخص
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح	pass (ed) (v)	يجتاز - ينجح
experiment (n)	تجربة علمية	achieve (d) (v)	يحقق - ينجز
laboratory (n)	معمل	dream (ed) (v), (n)	يحلم / حلم
university (n)	جامعة	language (n)	لغة

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

learner - explain - passed - proud - languages

1. Please, sir. Can you ..... this lesson again ?
2. Hend ..... her exam yesterday.
3. I'm ..... to be Egyptian.
4. French, Arabic and English are ..... .

Lesson 1

SB pages 54 & 55 WB page 107

summary (n)	ملخص	dictionary (n)	قاموس
quiz (n)	اختبار قصير	sounds (n)	أصوات
free time (n)	وقت الفراغ	podcast (n)	نشرة / تسجيل صوتي
cloudy (adj)	ملبد بالغيوم	art class (n)	حصة الرسم
TV show	عرض تلفزيوني	follow (ed) (v)	يتتبع - يتبع
directions (n)	اتجاهات	results (n)	نتائج
instructions (n)	تعليمات	review (n)	مقال نقدي

Lesson 2

SB pages 56 & 57 WB page 108

driving test	اختبار القيادة	village (n)	قرية
laugh (ed)(v)	يضحك	rain (ed) (v), (n)	تمطر / مطر
factory (n)	مصنع	castle (n)	قلعة
menu (n)	قائمة [الطعام]	manager (n)	مدير

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
tell	يخبر	told	told
drive	يقود	drove	driven
fly	يطير - يسافر جوًا	flew	flown
cut down	يقطع	cut down	cut down
get	يحصل على	got	got

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

pass	be successful in a test or exam	ينجح - يجتاز
disappointed	not happy because something you wanted did not happen or was not very good	محبط
explain	make something clear or easy to understand by giving reasons for it	يفسر / يشرح
proud	feeling happy because you or people you know have done something well	فخور
mostly	in most cases/most of the time	في الأغلب / عمومًا
fail	not be successful	يفشل

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

make	up a song	يؤلف أغنية	**do**	an experiment	يقوم بتجربة علمية
	a video	يقوم بتصوير فيديو		things	يقوم بعمل أشياء
take	photographs	يلتقط صور فوتوغرافية		an English exercise	يؤدى تدريب لغة انجليزية
	a quiz	يؤدي اختبار قصير		a project	يقوم بعمل مشروع
	an exam	يؤدى امتحان		research	يقوم بعمل بحث
	notes	يدون ملاحظات	**get**	a job	يحصل على وظيفة

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms — مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
pass يجتاز - ينجح	succeed in	fail يفشل - يخفق
continue يستمر	go on	stop يتوقف
repair يصلح	fix / mend	damage / spoil يفسد / يدمر
cloudy ملىء بالغيوم	dark / unclear	clear / sunny / bright مشمس / صافى / ساطع

Prefixes & Suffixes — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
–er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم يدل على وظيفة	manager مدير
–ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	directions اتجاهات instructions تعليمات
–ed	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	disappointed محبط

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The opposite of "pass" is "..... ".
   a. fail b. feel c. fall d. feed
2. "Go on" has the same meaning as " ..... ".
   a. stop b. give up c. continue d. pass
3. To turn "direct" into a noun, we add the suffix "..... ".
   a. –ion b. –able c. –al d. –ity
4. "Disappoint" is a verb, but "disappointed" is a/an "..... ".
   a. preposition b. adjective c. adverb d. noun
5. I want to repair my car. The word "repair" means "..... ".
   a. damage b. spoil c. pass d. mend

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 most - mostly

* most + اسم — معظم

- **Most** children like playing.

* the most + صفة — الأكثر [في صفة معينة] يأتي بعدها صفة طويلة
  - Rahma is **the most** beautiful girl in class.
* mostly + صفة — في الأغلب
  - It was **mostly** dark today. *(SB page 55)*

2 about

* about (prep) — عن [حرف جر]
  - He is talking **about** his childhood.
* about = nearly — حوالى - تقريبًا
  - WB She writes a summary in **about** 15 - 20 words. *(SB page 56 / WB page 107)*

3 find it difficult to + inf. — يجد من الصعب أن
  - WB Marwan **finds it difficult to** understand science books. *(WB page 107)*

4 busy + (inf. +ing) — مشغول بـ ويتبعها [inf. + ing]
  - SB You are always **busy** making and repairing things. *(SB page 55)*

Important Expressions & Prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
achieve my dream	احقق حلمي	work hard	يعمل بجد
there wasn't much sun	لم يكن الجو مشمس	start French classes	يبدأ الدراسة في فصول تعلم اللغة الفرنسية
see the word in your head	ترى الكلمة التى تخطر ببالك	give a presentation	يقدم عرضًا تقديميًا
Prepositions			
It is a great way to + (inf.)	إنها طريقة رائعة لـ...	work out	يستنتج - يستنبط
come out	يخرج	disappointed about	محبط بشأن
continue to + (inf.)	يستمر في أن...	a ticket for ...	تذكرة لـ...
come back to	يعود إلى	learn how to + (inf.)...	يتعلم كيف يقوم بـ...
look in a dictionary	يبحث في قاموس	ask for advice	يطلب نصيحة
learn in different ways	يتعلم بطرق مختلفة	ask for direction	يسأل عن الاتجاهات [للوصول لمكان]
at least	على الأقل	agree with	يتفق مع

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

On Lesson [1] SB page 54

1. There are many types of **learners** (1).
2. Some people prefer learning by reading books, others prefer watching films or TV show.
3. Learning to play sports is different.
4. Some people learn best by doing things. They like to make and **repair things**(2).
5. Others learn by listening to people **explaining**(3) things.
6. Habiba likes **summarising**(4) a text. She learns best by writing.
7. Fares remembers things easily, he learns best by seeing things.
8. Dareen **makes up**(5) a song to remember English grammar. She learns best by listening.
9. Marwan finds it difficult to understand science books, but when he does **an experiment**(6) in the **laboratory**(7), he always understands what is happening. He learns best by doing things.

On Lesson [2] SB page 56

1. When Fares **failed his exam**(8), his father was **disappointed**(9).
2. His father wanted him to be the **manager**(10) of the family shop.
3. Nevine wanted to be a doctor after she saw how the doctor at the hospital was so clever and kind.

(1) متعلمين	(2) يصلح الأشياء	(3) تفسير / شرح	(4) تلخيص
(5) تؤلف	(6) تجربة علمية	(7) معمل العلوم	(8) يرسب فى الامتحان
(9) محبط	(10) مدير		

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل او كتابة فقرات انشائية اخرى:

* Ways of learning
* What job you'd like to do in the future.
* Your favourite type of learning

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على II من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 54

Quiz

What type of **learner**(1) are you ? Take the **quiz**(2) to find out !

1- Which of these things do you **prefer**(3) to do in your **free time**(4) ?



a- Read a book.
b- Watch a film or **TV show**(5).
c- Play a video game.
d- Listen to music.

2- If you want to learn how to play a new sport, what do you do ?



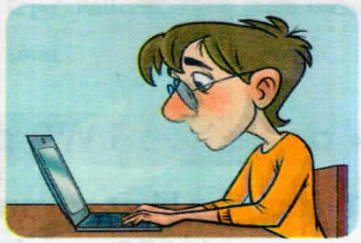
a- Read online about how to play it.
b- Watch a video of people playing it.
c- Start playing and learn as you play.
d- **Ask for advice**(6) from someone who can play it.

3- You need to tell your class about a new English book. What would you prefer to do ?



a- Write a **review**(7) of it.
b- Make a short video about it.
c- **Act**(8) some of the book with friends.
d- Read some of the book to your class.

4- Someone asks you for **directions**(9). What do you do ?



a- **Write down**(10) **instructions**(11).
b- Draw **a map**(12).
c- Use your hands and body to explain.
d- Tell them where to go.

(1) مُتعلم	(2) امتحان قصير	(3) يفضل	(4) وقت الفراغ	(5) عرض تليفزيوني	(6) يطلب النصيحة
(7) مقال نقدي	(8) يمثل	(9) اتجاهات	(10) بدون	(11) تعليمات	(12) خريطة

5- If you don't know how to **spell a word**(13), what do you do ?
a- Look in a **dictionary**(14).
b- Try to work out how to spell it.
c- Write it down to see if it looks right.
d- Say the word slowly to hear the **sounds**(15).

(13) يتهجى كلمة | (14) قاموس | (15) أصوات

on Lesson 1 SB page 55

I chose(1) **mostly**(2) **a :**

You learn best by reading and writing. You like reading books or writing stories. You love words and learn best by reading about something and **taking notes**(3).

I chose mostly b :

You learn best by seeing things. You love to watch videos and look at **diagrams**(4). You love films and **art**(5). You learn things better if you can see them.

I chose mostly c :

You learn best by doing things. You are always busy making and **repairing**(6) things. You learn things best by trying to do them and sometimes find it hard to **understand**(7) by listening or reading.

I chose mostly d :

You learn by listening. You love music and are often talking ! You find it easier to learn by listening to people **explain**(8) things to you and by **discussing**(9) things with them.

(1) اخترت | (2) عمومًا / فى الغالب | (3) تدوين الملاحظات | (4) رسوم توضيحية
(5) الرسم / الفن | (6) يصلح | (7) يفهم | (8) يفسر | (9) يناقش

on Lesson 1 WB page 107

1- Habiba likes **summarising**(1) a text. For example, if a text is 100 words long, she writes **a summary**(2) in about 15-20 words. Habiba learns best by writing .



(1) يلخص | (2) ملخص / تلخيص



2- Fares remembers things **easily**(3). I showed him a map of how to walk to my house yesterday. He says he can see the map in his head today ! Fares learns by seeing things .



3- For Dareen, the best way to remember **English grammar**(4) is to **make up**(5) a song about it ! Then she sings the song quietly to herself. She says it is a great way to remember **irregular verbs**(6) ! Dareen learns best by **listening**.



4- Marwan finds it difficult to understand science books, but when he does **an experiment**(7) in the **laboratory**(8), he always understands what is happening ! Marwan learns best by doing things .

Answer the following questions :

Extracting information. استخراج المعلومات.

Learn 1. What is the best way to remember English grammar for Dareen ?

- For Dareen, the best way to remember English grammar is to make up a song about it.

Practise 2. How does Marwan learn best ?

.....

(3) بسهولة
(4) قواعد اللغة الانجليزية
(5) يؤلف
(6) الأفعال غير المنتظمة
(7) تجربة علمية
(8) معمل علوم

Listening

On Lesson 2 SB page 56

Fares :



My name's Fares. When I was young, I didn't use to like studying. But, one day, I **failed an exam**(1). My father was **disappointed**(2). He said that one day he wanted me to be the **manager**(3) of our family shop. He explained about all the **skills**(4) that I needed to work there : maths, reading, writing and English. Now I'm working hard to **pass my exams**(5) so I can make my family **proud**(6). Next year, I'm starting **secondary school**(7) and I'll **continue**(8) to study hard !

(1) يرسب في الامتحان | (2) محبط | (3) مدير | (4) مهارات | (5) يجتاز الامتحانات | (6) فخور | (7) المدرسة الثانوية | (8) يستمر

Nevine :



When I was nine, I was playing with my sister when I fell and hurt my arm. The doctor at the hospital was so clever and **kind**(9), so I decided I wanted to be a doctor too ! I know it will be hard to **achieve**(10) my **dream**(11). I need to go to **university**(12) and pass lots of exams. My uncle lives in the USA so I'm going to study there when I'm older and then I want to **come back**(13) to Egypt and work in a hospital.

(9) عطوف / طيب | (10) ينجز / يحقق | (11) حلم | (12) جامعة | (13) يعود

on Lesson 2 SB page 57



When I was young, I wanted to be a **scientist**(1). Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I will be a scientist ! I'm not really sure what I want to do, but my family are always telling me that school is very important and I need to study hard. I know I want to **travel**(2) so I am learning lots of **languages**(3). Next year, I am starting **French classes**(4). I am going to take the exam to go to secondary school and I hope I will pass !

(1) عالم | (2) يسافر | (3) لغات | (4) حصص لغة فرنسية

on Lesson 2 WB page 108

My **village**(1) didn't use to have any **tourists**(2), but now lots of **visitors**(3) come here every year. At the moment, lots of American tourists are taking photographs of the **castle**(4). Last year, we had visitors from China and Japan, too! Next year, they are going to build a new hotel in the park. I am disappointed about this, because I think they will **cut down**(5) some of the trees to build it.

(1) قرية | (2) سياح | (3) | (4) قلعة | (5) يقطع

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. You're Egyptian. You should be ..... of your country.
   a. good b. happy c. proud d. nice
   (Fariskor - Damietta 2024)
2. The teacher asked us to ..... the story in three lines only.
   a. fix b. read c. summarise d. learn
3. We go to the ..... in science lessons.
   a. library b. garden c. museum d. laboratory
4. After secondary school, we 'll go to the ..... .
   (Beba - Beni Suef 2024)
   a. castle b. factory c. workshop d. university
5. We did the science ..... in the laboratory.
   a. experiment b. expert c. experience d. export

SB , WB and Previous Exams

6. When he failed in the test, he felt ..... .
   a. bored b. excited c. proud d. disappointed
7. He works hard to ..... his dream.
   (Tamiya - Fayoum 2022)
   a. fail b. achieve c. miss d. lose
8. SB It is hard to ..... on what job you want to do.
   a. pass b. take c. do d. decide
   (East Port Said - Port Said 2023)
9. The engineer is coming to ..... our phone tomorrow morning.
   a. repair b. smell c. cause d. throw
   (Sumusta - Beni Suef 2022)
10. WB The best ..... study their subjects for at least one hour a day.
    a. learners b. farmers c. managers d. parents

El-Moasser Exercises

11. I learn best by seeing things, so I love to look at ..... .
    a. wards b. songs c. researchers d. diagrams
12. Read the ..... well before turning on this washing machine. It's important.
    a. summary b. instructions c. diagrams d. dictionary

13. I searched for the ..... to order fast food.
a. list b. menu c. view d. plan

▸ **Definitions**

14. ..... means feeling happy because you or people you know have done something well.
a. Disappointed b. Bored c. Angry d. Proud

15. ..... is to be successful in a test or exam.
a. Pass b. Back c. Bend d. Hit

▸ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

16. I'm sorry, I don't agree ..... you.
a. in b. of c. with d. for

17. The teacher asked us to ..... research about the environment.
a. make b. do c. take d. give

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

▸ Asking and answering questions about styles of learning

توجيه الأسئلة والإجابة عليها عن طرق التعلم

Questions	Answers
1. How do you prefer to learn ? - كيف تفضل أن تتعلم ؟	- I prefer to learn in different ways. I don't like doing the same things. - أفضل التعلم بطرق مختلفة. لا احب فعل نفس الأشياء.
2. What type of classes are your favourite ? - ما نوع الدروس / الحصص المفضلة بالنسبة لك ؟	- I would like classes when we get to do things and not only listen or read. - أحب الحصص التي نتعلم بها فعل الأشياء وليس فقط الاستماع والقراءة.
3. What type of learning would you like to do more ? - أي من طرق التعلم تود أن تؤديها أكثر ؟	- I like to learn by seeing things; watching videos and looking at diagrams. - أرغب في التعلم بواسطة رؤية الأشياء ومشاهدة الفيديوهات والنظر إلى الرسوم التوضيحية.
4. What type of learning would you like to do less ? - ما طريقة التعلم التى تود أن تؤديها بشكل أقل ؟	- I would like to learn less by listening. - أنا أود أن اتعلم باستخدام الاستماع بشكل أقل.

III Language

Review on tenses مراجعة على الأزمنة

Remember تذكر

Present tenses أزمنة المضارع

هذا الجزء تم دراسته وشرحه

1. The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Formation التكوين

Affirmative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I / They / We / You (فاعل جمع)	+	inf. المصدر		He / She / It (فاعل مفرد)	+	inf. المصدر + s/es/ies

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن العادات الشخصية والحقائق العلمية الثابتة.

ex. - My uncle lives in the USA.
- The sun rises in the east.

2. The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

I	am			
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	is	+	+	inf. المصدر + ing
We / You / They / اسم جمع	are			

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث يقع الآن.

ex. I'm emailing my uncle now.

يستخدم أيضًا زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ترتيبات مستقبلية.

ex. Next year, he's starting secondary school.

Past tenses أزمنة الماضى

هذا الجزء تم دراسته وشرحه

1. "used to" for regular past habits and routines :

تستخدم [used to] للتعبير عن العادات والأعمال الروتينية في الماضي

Formation التكوين

A

Affirmative statement

الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

في الإثبات نستخدم [used to] بمعنى أعتاد أن

Subject الفاعل + used to + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. I used to play basketball.

B

Negative statement

الجملة الخبرية المنفية

للنفي نستخدم [didn't use to] :

Subject الفاعل + didn't + use to + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. I didn't use to play tennis.

2. The past continuous tense : زمن الماضي المستمر

Formation التكوين

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد
You / They / We/ اسم جمع
+ was / were + [inf. + ing]

ويستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر.

ex. I was playing tennis with my sister when it started to rain.

Future forms صيغ المستقبل

هذا الجزء تم دراسته وشرحه

1. Future with "(be) going to" المستقبل باستخدام (be) going to

يستخدم للتعبير عن التخطيط المسبق والنية لفعل شيء في المستقبل.

Formation التكوين

1

Affirmative statement

الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

I → am

He, She , It, أو اسم مفرد → is

You , We, They, أو اسم جمع → are

+ going to + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. I'm going to go to university next year.

2 Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية

Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + not + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. - They are not going to **visit** Alexandria.
- He is not going to **eat** fish.

2. Future with "will" المستقبل باستخدام (will)

يستخدم للتعبير عن تنبؤات مستقبلية بدون دليل واضح.

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject الفاعل + will ['ll] + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. He will go to the zoo.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject الفاعل + will not [won't] + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. He won't go to school tomorrow.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. We are going to ..... to France. *(South Suez - Suez 2024)*
   a. travel b. travels c. travelled d. travelling
2. I think it ..... rain tomorrow. *(Ismailia 2024)*
   a. would b. will c. is d. is not
3. Hoda ..... to her school on foot. *(Etay El Baroud - Beheria 2024)*
   a. goes usually b. usually goes c. go usually d. usually go
4. They are going to ..... their flat next week. *(Abou Homos - Beheira 2023)*
   a. painted b. paints c. painting d. paint

5. About five million people ..... in Alexandria. *(Abu El Matamir - Beheira 2022)*
   a. live b. lives c. is living d. living
6. WB Nadia looked at the menu and ..... to have fish with rice.
   a. decided b. decides c. decide d. deciding
7. SB Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I ..... be a scientist.
   a. will b. won't c. shouldn't d. have
8. SB I was playing tennis with my sister when it ..... to rain.
   a. was starting b. started c. starts d. start

El-Moasser Exercises

9. What ..... you doing yesterday evening ?
   a. are b. were c. was d. is
10. My father didn't ..... to have a mobile when he was young.
    a. using b. uses c. used d. use
11. They usually ..... to school by bus every day.
    a. go b. goes c. going d. gone
12. Listen ! The boy ..... in a loud voice.
    a. talk b. talked c. is talking d. talking

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. He arrived ..... (during) I was eating. *(Beba - Beni Suef 2024)*
2. Listen ! Your mobile ..... (ring). *(Edfu - Aswan 2024)*
3. We ..... (have) a party next Friday at our home. *(Somasta - Beni Suef 2024)*
4. I ..... (will) help in a charity. I've planned for that. *(Luxor 2024)*
5. ..... (Do) you going to see the concert ? *(El Ameriya - Alexandria 2022)*
6. WB My village ..... (not use) have any tourists, but now lots of visitors come here every year.
7. SB When I ..... (be) young, I wanted to be a scientist.
8. Yesterday, we ..... (visit) the Egyptian Museum. *(El Saf - Giza 2024)*

El-Moasser Exercises

9. It ..... (rains), I can see some dark clouds.
10. I ..... (use) swim when I was four.
11. My uncle ..... (work) in a big oil company now.

General Exercises

On Lessons 1 & 2

Understand Apply Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. Marwan finds it ..... to understand science books.
   a. difficult b. sick c. easy d. heavy
2. Marwan does a/an ..... in the laboratory.
   a. mistake b. hobby c. sport d. experiment
3. Marwan learns best by doing ..... .
   a. listening b. things c. writing d. speaking
4. Marwan likes ..... .
   a. history b. technology c. geography d. sports

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Dareen is telling Habiba about her holiday plans.

Habiba : Tell me about your holiday plans, Dareen.

Dareen : (1) ..... .

Habiba : (2) ..... ?

Dareen : I want to improve my English, so I'll take this English course.

Habiba : (3) ..... ?

Dareen : I will travel to England and study there.

Habiba : How long is the English course ?

Dareen : (4) ..... .

Habiba : Is a three-week-course enough ?

Dareen : (5) ..... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I'm so ..... of my father. He is a great doctor.
   a. angry b. sad c. disappointed d. proud
2. The old man gave us the ..... to get to the library. *(El Saf - Giza 2023)*
   a. recipes b. sounds c. directions d. results
3. WB I think they ..... down some trees to build a new hotel.
   a. will cut b. cuts c. cutting d. to cut

4. SB The best way to remember English grammar is to ..... a song about it.
   a. take b. do c. make d. get
5. My teacher always asks me to write a ..... of long texts.
   a. postcard b. climate c. song d. summary
6. While I ..... lunch, my cousins came. *(Abnub - Assiut 2022)*
   a. had b. have c. was having d. will have
7. When the boy failed, his parents were ..... .
   a. disappointed b. happy c. pleased d. relaxed
8. My car doesn't work. I'll ask a mechanic to ..... it.
   a. break b. change c. repair d. invent

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. While I ..... (play) tennis, I hurt my arm. *(Kafr El Dawar - Beheira 2024)*
2. In the future, I think there ..... (be) houses under oceans. *(Benha - Qalyubia 2023)*
3. My brother used to have an old house, but now he ..... (didn't). *(Luxor 2024)*
4. Sama used to be fat. Now, she ..... (doesn't).
5. He usually ..... (drink) milk for breakfast.

5 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Sama telling her about what job you'd like to do in the future. Your friend's email address is sama@gmail.com. Your name is Maha and your email address is maha@yahoo.com.

From	
To	
Subject	

.....,
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Lessons

3&4

SB pages 58 : 60
WB pages 109 & 110



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

body language	لغة الجسد	expert (n)	خبير
eye contact	التواصل البصري [بالعين]	dialect (n)	لغة محلية - لهجة
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه	national (adj)	محلى - قومى
voice (n)	صوت [بشرى]	advantages (n)	مميزات
sound (n)	صوت [شيء]	identity (n)	هوية
copy (ied) (v) , (n)	ينسخ - يقلد / نسخة	connect (ed) (v)	يربط - يصل
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل	community (n)	مجتمع
multilingual (adj)	متعدد اللغات	bilingual (adj)	ثنائي اللغة

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

voice - copy - Advantages - dialect - Facial

1. Every area in Egypt has its own ..... . They speak differently.
2. ..... expressions help us to know what the person wants to say.
3. "....." is the opposite of "disadvantages".
4. Raise your ..... , please. I can't hear you.

Lesson 3

SB pages 58 &59 WB page 109

miss (ed)(v)	يفتقد	dance (d) (v)	يرقص
professor (n)	أستاذ جامعي	scared (adj)	مرعوب - خائف
lovely (adj)	فاتن - جميل	possible (adj)	ممكن - محتمل
bright (adj)	ساطع - لامع	field (n)	حقل - ملعب
serious (adj)	جاد	side (n)	جانب
bees (n)	نحل	role - play (ed) (v)	يقوم بلعب الادوار

Lesson 4

SB page 60 WB page 110

normally (adv)	بشكل طبيعي	home language	اللغة الأم
believe (d) (v)	يعتقد	southwest (n)	جنوب غرب
whole (adj)	كامل	crossword (n)	كلمات متقاطعة
Languages لغات			
Italian	اللغة الإيطالية	German	اللغة الألمانية
French	اللغة الفرنسية	Romansh	اللغة الرومانشية
English	اللغة الانجليزية	Portuguese	اللغة البرتغالية

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
mean يعنى	meant	meant

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

body language	the way you move your body, that shows people what you are feeling لغة الجسد
eye contact	if two people make eye contact, they look at each other at the same time التواصل البصري
facial expression	the look on someone's face showing what they feel or think تعبيرات الوجه
identities	the qualities that make you different to other people هويات
connect	join two things or places together يربط - يصل
expert	someone who has a lot of skills in or knowledge about something خبير
advantage	something good about a situation that helps you ميزة
dialect	a form of language that people speak in a particular part of a country لهجة / لغة محلية
voice	the sounds that are made when people speak or sing صوت بشرى
multilingual	be able to speak more than two languages متعدد اللغات
national	relating to or typical of a whole country and its people قومى - محلى
touch	put your hand onto something or someone يلمس

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms				مترادفات ومتضادات
Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
national	قومى - محلى	local	international	دولى / عالمى
true	صحيح	correct	untrue	غير صحيح
possible	ممكن / محتمل	probable	impossible	مستحيل

Prefixes & Suffixes		مقاطع بادئة وناهية
Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
–ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	communication اتصال expression تعبير
multi–	تكون الصفة وتعنى معنى عديد	multilingual متعدد اللغات
bi–	تكون الصفة وتعنى معنى اثنين	bilingual ثنائى اللغة
–al	تحول الاسم لصفة	facial متعلق بالوجه
–ese	تكون الصفة الدالة على الجنسية	Portuguese برتغالى [الجنسية]
–an	تكون الصفة الدالة على الجنسية	European أوروبى [الجنسية]

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. To get the nationality from the word "Europe", we add the suffix "……".
   a. –al b. –ese c. –an d. –ity
2. "Communicate" is a verb, but "communication" is a/an "……".
   a. adjective b. adverb c. noun d. verb
3. To get the opposite of "true", we add the prefix "……".
   a. dis- b. un- c. in- d. ir-
4. The word "express" can be turned into a noun by adding "……".
   a. -tion b. -ion c. -ity d. -ed
5. "Probable" is the synonym of "……".
   a. correct b. possible c. local d. true

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 field

* field(n) حقل...
  - Farmers are working in their **fields**.
* field(n) ملعب...
  SB All the players in the blue team are leaving the **field** slowly.

(WB page 109)

2 whole - hall - hole

لاحظ التشابه الصوتي في الكلمات التالية:

* whole + إسم كل
  - He ate the **whole** cake. He didn't leave a bit.
* hall (n) صالة
  - We always watch TV in the **hall**.
* hole (n) ثقب - فتحة
  - I have a little **hole** in my sock.

(WB page 60)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
use body language	يستخدم لغة الجسد	make noise	يصدر ضوضاء
have advantages	لديه مميزات	give identity	يعطى هوية
make eye contact	يقوم بالتواصل البصري	soft voice	صوت رقيق
bring together	يجمع [بين]	copy sounds	يقلد الأصوات
Prepositions			
communicate with	يتواصل مع	on the internet	يستخدم الإنترنت/ متصل بالإنترنت
forms of communication	أشكال التواصل	spend time with...	يقضى وقت مع...
connect to	يربط بـ	have their heads down	يخفضوا رؤوسهم [دليل على الحزن]
at the front door	عند الباب الأمامي		
go away	يذهب بعيدًا	on a farm	في مزرعة

Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

On Lesson [3] SB page 58

1. Some animals like birds can **copy**(1) sounds.
2. Animals **communicate**(2) by using **body language**(3). Horses touch noses to say hello.
3. Bees dance when they find a good flower.
4. It's important to watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell you.
5. You should be careful about how you use your body and **voice**(4).
6. If an animal is **scared**(5), you should move slowly and use a soft voice.
7. To understand what a baby wants, you should first look at the baby's **facial expressions**(6), so you know if they are happy or sad.
8. Eye contact and facial expressions are forms of communication.

On Lesson [2] SB page 60

1. **Experts**(7) believe that there are more than 2,100 language spoken in Africa.
2. Many African people speak three languages : their **dialect**(8), the national language and another European language. They are **multilingual**(9).
3. When you are multilingual, you are able to understand both your home and the world better.
4. Your national language connects you to your country and an international language like English connects you to an **international community**(10).

(1) يقلد	(2) يتواصل	(3) لغة الجسد	(4) صوت بشرى	(5) خائف
(6) تعبيرات الوجه	(7) خبراء	(8) لهجة - لغة محلية	(9) متعدد اللغات	(10) المجتمع الدولى

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* How to communicate with animals
* The importance of learning a language

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على II من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 58



Munir : What do you know about animals ? Do you think they understand you ? Today I'm talking to Dr Ahmed who is going to tell us about how animals **communicate**(1). Hello Dr Ahmed.

Dr Ahmed : Hello.

Munir : Let's talk about the animals that you often see on **a farm**(2). My brother is a farmer and I think that his cat understands him sometimes. Is that **possible**(3) ?



Dr Ahmed : I'm sure the cat understands when he is angry and understands words like 'dinner', for example.

Munir : But of course, the cat can't talk to him.

Dr Ahmed : No, animals can't speak in the way people can, but some animals like birds can **copy**(4) sounds. But animals do communicate, both to us and to each other. One **way**(5) animals communicate is by using **body language**(6). For example, horses touch noses to say hello to another horse they like and **bees**(7) dance when they find a good flower.



Munir : So can I learn to communicate better with animals then ?

Dr Ahmed : **From my point of view**(8), it's important to watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell you. You should be careful about how you use your body and **voice**(9). So, if an animal is **scared**(10), you should move slowly and use a soft voice. How about listening to the way your cat makes a noise ? Does it sound different if it is frightened, wants some food ? I think it will !

(1) يتواصل	(2) مزرعة	(3) ممكن	(4) يُقلد	(5) أسلوب / طريقة
(6) لغة الجسد	(7) النحل	(8) من وجهة نظرى	(9) صوت بشرى	(10) خائف

on Lesson 3 WB page 109

Ola : I'm **looking after**(1) my baby **cousin**(2) Lina today. Isn't she lovely?
Injy : Yes, but how can you **understand**(3) what she wants?
Ola : From my point of view, you should first look at the baby's facial expressions, so you know if they are happy or sad.
Injy : **That's true**(4).
Ola : I think Lina's tooth is **hurting**(5) her. You can see from her body language.
Injy : What should we do?
Ola : Let's try to make her **laugh**(6).
Injy : Good idea. How about singing a funny song!

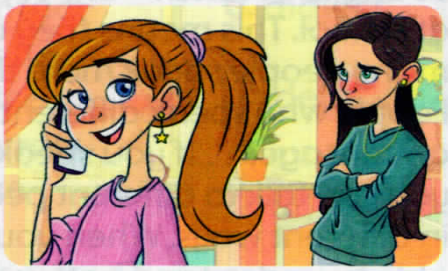


(1) يعتنى بـ | (2) ابن العم/الخال | (3) يفهم | (4) هذا صحيح | (5) يؤلم - يؤذى | (6) يضحك

Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 59

Can anyone give me some advice ? I have an older sister (she's three years older than me). We used to be best friends, but now she doesn't want to **talk to**(1) me very much. She is always **on the internet**(2) or talking to people on her phone.
She tells me to **go away**(3) if I try to talk to her.
I miss being friends with her. How can I get her to spend time with me again ?
Please give me some advice !
Yours, Radwa



(1) يتحدث إلى | (2) يستخدم الانترنت | (3) تبتعد

on Lesson 3 WB page 109

Forms of communication

1- Shady is waiting at the **front door**(1) of his friend's house. He knows someone is inside the house because he can hear sounds.
2- It's the end of **a football match**(2).



(1) الباب الأمامي | (2) مباراة كرة قدم

All the **players**(3) in the blue team are leaving the **field**(4) very slowly. They all **have their heads down**(5). We know they are disappointed with the **result**(6) by their **body language**(7).

3- A **blind man**(8) walks into a clothes shop and buys a shirt. He chooses the shirt by touch.

4- Malak and Randa are sitting on different sides of a busy library. They must be quiet in the library. Randa knows that Malak wants to leave because she makes **eye contact**(9) with her.

5- Some children are watching a film. We know the film is scary by their **facial expressions**(10).

(3) لاعبين	(4) ملعب / ساحة المباراة	(5) يخفضون رؤسهم لأسفل	(6) نتيجة
(7) لغة الجسد	(8) رجل كفيف	(9) التواصل البصري	(10) تعبيرات الوجه

on Lesson 4 SB page 60

Multilingual(1) Africa

Experts(2) believe that there are more than 2,100 languages spoken in Africa. Many **African**(3) people speak three languages : their **dialect**(4) (or home language), the **national**(5) language and another European language such as English, **French**(6) or **Portuguese**(7) that they learn at school. This means they are multilingual. Of course, many people speak more than three languages ! People who speak different languages have lots of **advantages**(8). If you speak more than one language, you can talk to different people in different places and in different ways. When you are multilingual, you are able to understand both your home and the world better. It also gives people different **identities**(9). If you speak your home language, it **connects**(10) you to your community. Your national language connects you to your country and all the other people in it. An international language, like English, connects you to an **international community**(11).



(1) متعدد اللغات	(2) خبراء	(3) أفريقي	(4) لهجة / لغة محلية	(5) محلى / قومى	(6) اللغة الفرنسية
(7) اللغة البرتغالية	(8) مميزات	(9) هويات / كيانات	(10) يوصل - يربط	(11) المجتمع الدولي	

on Lesson 4 WB page 110

The languages of Switzerland(1)

Switzerland is a small **European**(2) country. Here, you do not need to be an expert to speak many languages. That is because nearly all people in Switzerland are **multilingual**(3) :



(1) دولة سويسرا	(2) أوروبية	(3) متعدد اللغات

they speak the country's four **national**(4) languages. That is because each **area**(5) of Switzerland has always had its own **identity**(6) and its own language.

The parts of Switzerland near Italy speak Italian, the parts near Germany speak German and the parts near France speak French. In the **southwest**(7) of Switzerland, they also speak a **dialect**(8) called Romansh. Each language **connects**(9) the people with their area, but they are also very proud of their country.

(4) قومي / محلي | (5) منطقة | (6) هوية / شخصية | (7) الجنوب الغربي | (8) لهجة / لغة محلية | (9) يصل - يربط

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Languages ..... people together.
   a. connect b. speak c. understand d. protect
2. In the library, we can't talk, so we communicate using eye ..... .
   a. voice b. smell c. contact d. dialect
3. I think my brother isn't sleeping, I can hear his ..... .
   a. sound b. language c. voice d. ideas
4. Some birds can ..... the voices like the parrots.
   a. take b. copy c. give d. find

SB , WB and Previous Exams

5. WB Some children are watching a film. We know the film is scary by their ..... .
   a. language b. eye contact
   c. facial expressions d. sounds
6. SB A person who speaks lots of languages is ..... .
   a. national b. multilingual c. old d. different

(Hosh Issa - Beheira 2022)

7. WB The ..... is a person who knows a lot about a subject.
   a. tourist b. expert c. writer d. learner
8. People often use ..... language in their everyday life.
   a. busy b. subject c. body d. dialect

(Tebin - Cairo 2022)

El-Moasser Exercises

9. She is singing in a ..... voice to make the baby sleep.
   a. hard b. high c. fast d. soft
10. The square has four ..... .
   a. shapes b. forms c. sides d. sizes

▸ **Definitions**

11. The ..... are the qualities that make you different to other people.
   a. forms b. subjects c. identities d. similarities
   (Shoubrakheit - Beheira 2023)
12. ..... means relating to or typical of a whole country and its people.
   a. International b. Normal c. National d. Strange
13. Something good about a situation that helps you is called a/an ..... .
   a. advantage b. disadvantage c. expression d. language

▸ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

14. You shouldn't ..... noise in the library.
   a. do b. make c. listen d. hear
15. My father always tells me that everyone ..... advantages.
   a. has b. goes c. gives d. brings
16. Using the internet today is the fastest ..... of communication.
   a. frame b. form c. farm d. fair

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

▸ **Discussion on the importance of learning languages**

مناقشة عن أهمية تعلم اللغات

Questions	Answers
1. Do you feel different when you speak a different language ? Why ? - هل تشعر بالاختلاف عندما تتحدث بلغة مختلفة؟ لماذا ؟	- Yes. Because it connects me with the international community. - نعم. لأنها تجعلني أتواصل بالمجتمع الدولي.
2. What other languages would you like to learn ? - ما اللغات الأخرى التي تود / ترغب أن تتعلمها ؟	- I would like to learn Turkish and French. - أرغب في تعلم اللغة التركية والفرنسية.

III Language

1 Making suggestions : تقديم اقتراحات

هناك عدة صيغ لتقديم الاقتراحات

1. Let's + inf. مصدر الفعل — هيا بنا ....
2. Why don't you / we + inf. ..... ? — لما لا ... ؟
3. Shall we + inf. ..... ? — هلا يمكننا ... ؟
4. How about + (inf. + ing)... ? — ما رأيك في ... ؟

ex. - Let's talk about the animals that you often see on a farm.
- Why don't you / we go to the zoo ? - Shall we have a cold drink ?
- How about listening to how your cat makes a noise?

2 Giving advice إعطاء النصيحة

Subj. فاعل + should + inf. مصدر الفعل — ينبغي أن ....

ex. You should be careful about how you use your body and voice.

3 Giving opinion إعطاء الرأي

1. In my opinion / From my point of view, subj. فاعل + verb فعل ..... — من وجهة نظري ....
2. I think that + subj. فاعل + verb فعل ..... — أعتقد أن ....

ex. - From my point of view, it's important to watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell you.
- I think that it is very important to learn foreign languages.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. A : Should I ..... for too long on the internet if I have a headache ?
B : No, you shouldn't. *(Monsha'at Nasser - Cairo 2024)*
a. stays b. stay c. to stay d. staying

2. We should ..... hard to pass the next quiz.
a. study b. studying c. studies d. studied

3. WB Let's ..... to make her laugh.
a. tried b. tries c. try d. trying

4. WB Good idea! ..... about singing a funny song ?
a. Who b. When c. How d. Why

5. WB I ..... Lina's tooth is hurting her. You can see from her body language.
a. thinks b. think c. thought d. thinking

El-Moasser Exercises

6. Why don't you ..... the football team ?
a. joins b. join c. joined d. joining

7. Shall we ..... home now ?
a. going b. goes c. go d. to go

8. SB You ..... be careful about how you use your body and voice.
a. shouldn't b. should c. will d. would

(Faqous - Sharkia 2023)

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. We ..... (should) take things that belong to others.

(Heliopolis – Cairo 2024)

2. How about ..... (listen) to how your cat makes a noise ?

(Hadayk El Kobaa – Cairo 2024)

3. Let's ..... (went) to the club. *(El Marg - Cairo 2024) (Ismailia - Ismailia 2023)*

4. What about ..... (cook) lunch now ? *(Helwan - Cairo 2022)*

El-Moasser Exercises

5. Why don't you ..... (wearing) this nice scarf ?

6. Shall we ..... (invited) Mira to the party ?

7. I should ..... (learning) more than one language.

8. Why ..... (haven't) you take part in the school play ?

General Exercises

On Lessons 3 & 4

Understand Apply Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. Yara is my ..... sister.
   a. older b. younger c. taller d. baby
2. Yara is ..... years old.
   a. 50 b. 15 c. 5 d. 51
3. Yara is always on the ..... .
   a. beach b. radio c. internet d. coast
4. Yara talks on ..... for a long time.
   a. Facebook b. Messenger c. her phone d. internet

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Hoda and Hana are talking about their plans for today.

Hoda : Hello, Hana. Where are you going ?

Hana : Hello, Hoda. (1) ..... .

Hoda : (2) ..... ?

Hana : To read a story. What about you ?

Hoda : (3) ..... .

Hana : (4) ..... ?

Hoda : To play a football match.

Hana : Are you in the school football team ?

Hoda : (5) ..... .

Hana : I wish you a good luck.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB To understand a young baby, try to look at his ..... expressions.
   a. facial b. body c. eye d. language

(Kerdasa - Giza 2024)

2. Mr Baleegh is multilingual. He speaks more than one ..... .
   a. expression b. language c. contact d. identity

3. " ..... " means to join things or places together.
   a. Copy b. Connect c. Touch d. Look

4. Although she speaks Arabic, I can't understand her ..... .
   a. dialect b. expert c. nationality d. contact

5. Rahma has a nice ..... . She sings well.
   a. sound b. noise c. voice d. tip

6. SB Some animals and birds can ..... sounds.
   a. speak b. write c. communicate d. copy

7. How about ..... to music ?
   a. listening b. to listen c. listen d. listens

8. You should ..... careful about your possessions ممتلكات.
   a. are b. am c. be d. were

(El-Ameriya – Alexandria 2023)

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"The importance of languages"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons

5&6

SB pages 61 & 62
WB pages 111 & 112



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

improve (d) (v)	يحسن - يتحسن	broken (adj)	مكسور
manage (d) (v)	يدير - ينظم	connected (adj)	متصل
timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد	organised (adj)	منظم
alone (adj), (adv)	وحيد - بمفرده	summer school	مدرسة صيفية
check (ed) (v)	يتأكد - يتحقق - يراجع	summer courses	مقررات تدريبية صيفية
personal statement	بيان شخصى	volunteer (n)	متطوع

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

timetable - volunteer - organised - improves - connected

1. Hassan is a very clever boy. He's really ..... .
2. Speaking English outside school ..... your language.
3. My phone is often ..... to the internet.
4. My uncle is a ..... in a hospital.

Lesson 5

SB page 61 WB page 111

titles (n)	عناوين	news article (n)	مقال إخباري
textbook (n)	كتاب مدرسي	test (ed) (v) , (n)	يختبر - اختبار
flashcards (n)	كروت / بطاقات تعليمية	furniture (n)	الأثاث
topic (n)	موضوع	revise (d) (n)	يراجع
context (n)	سياق الكلام	vocabulary (n)	مفردات لغوية

Lesson 6

SB page 62 WB page 112

advert (n)	إعلان	smoke (d) (v) , (n)	يدخن / دخان
friendly (adj)	ودود	application form (n)	استمارة طلب
comment (n)	تعليق	spelling (n)	الهجاء
nationality (n)	جنسية	teenager (n)	مراهق
address (n)	عنوان [سكنى]	frightened (adj)	مرعوب - خائف

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

organised	• arranged or planned • able to plan things carefully	منظم
improve	to get better at something	يتحسن
volunteer	a person who helps others without getting anything in return	متطوع
personal statement	is where you tell someone about yourself	بيان شخصى

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

make	a study timetable يصنع جدول مواعيد للدراسة (المذاكرة)	**have**	fun	يستمتع
			an exam	لديه امتحان
take	a break يأخذ استراحة		a plan	يخطط
get	better يتحسن - يتقدم	**do**	a sport	يلعب رياضة
			activities	يقوم بعمل أنشطة

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
known معروف	common / popular	unknown غير معروف
personal شخصى	private	public عام

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
dis–	تعطى عكس الكلمة	disconnected غير متصل
–al	تعطى الصفة من الاسم	personal شخصى

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To get the adjective from the word "person", we add the suffix "……".
   a. –ist b. –al c. –y d. –ful
2. Amr Diab is a famous singer. The synonym of the word "famous" is "……".
   a. unpopular b. known c. unknown d. uncommon

General Notes on Reading & Listening

• Vocabulary (n)

اسم مفرد تأخذ فعل مفرد بعدها وللتجزئة تستخدم a piece of أو an item of ومعناها [المفردات اللغوية]

▸ - English **vocabulary** is so easy to learn. *(SB page 62)*

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
English-language TV programme	برنامج تليفزيوني باللغة الانجليزية	do well in exam	يؤدى جيدًا في الامتحان
manage time	ينظم الوقت	sounds fun	يبدو ممتعًا
		complete with your own ideas	أكمل بأفكارك الخاصة
Prepositions			
organised by	منظم على حسب / طبقًا لـ	useful for	مفيد لـ
at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد
walk past	يسير مارًا بـ	advert for	إعلان لـ
work with	يعمل مع / يتعامل مع	around the world	حول العالم

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على II من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

• on Lesson 5 WB page 111

Study plan(1) : how to learn English vocabulary(2)

1. Make **flashcards**(3) of words that you need to remember, **organised by topic**(4) (for example, words for **furniture**(5)).
2. Write the words in **context**(6) : that means putting the word in a written sentence, so you can see how it works with other words.
3. Don't try to remember too many words at the same time : find how many words is best for you.
4. Watch **English-language TV programmes**(7) or films and listen for **known**(8) words.

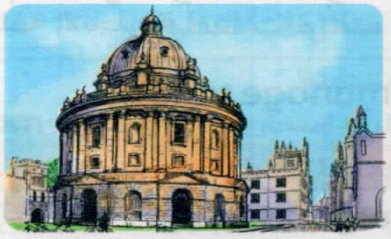
(1) خطة الدراسة	(2) المفردات اللغوية	(3) بطاقات تعليمية	(4) مرتبة حسب الموضوع
(5) أثاث	(6) سياق الموضوع	(7) برامج تليفزيونية باللغة الانجليزية	(8) معروف

5. Read as many stories and **news articles**(9) as you can : it's the best way to learn vocabulary !
6. Work with a friend and try to **test**(10) each other on important words.

(9) مقالات إخبارية | (10) يختبر

on Lesson 6 SB page 62

English Language Summer School for Teenagers !(1)





Do you want to **improve**(2) your English ? Would you like to study in England with other young people from around the world ? Come and stay at Hapstone House, in the south of England, for our **summer courses**(3) ! You can study every morning with our friendly, **expert teachers**(4) and spend the afternoons doing sports or other activities. Every weekend, we visit famous English places (like London or Oxford). Learn English, have fun, visit England !
For more information, visit our **website**(5).

(1) مراهقين | (2) يحسن | (3) دورات تدريبية صيفية | (4) مدرسين خبراء | (5) موقع إلكتروني

on Lesson 6 WB page 112

Hi



My name's Mario. I am fourteen years old. My birthday is 14 February and I'm from Italy. My address is 7 North road, Rome and my phone number is 889900. I don't have email (my parents don't like computers !). I want to improve my English because I want to do well in my exams next year.
I think that your course sounds fun and I think I will enjoy your activities. I love playing sports such as football and tennis. I look forward to hearing from you,
Yours, Mario Dollo

on Lesson 7 WB page 113

When my father was younger, he used to help on his uncle's farm. One day, he was walking past the building where the horses slept when he saw some smoke. He realised there was a fire. The horses were frightened and they didn't want to leave the building. My father was very calm and made eye contact with the horses. Then, he carefully took them from the building. When I heard this story, I decided that I wanted to become a vet. Next year, I am starting studying at university. I think it will be difficult work, but I love animals. I'm looking forward to working with them in the future.

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. SB Someone who plans things carefully is ..... .
   a. ready b. improved c. brave d. organised
2. I'll make a ..... to arrange my day.
   a. summary b. sound c. map d. timetable
3. Teachers ..... our homework to help us get better.
   a. do b. check c. have d. make

SB , WB and Previous Exams

4. I decided to have a summer ..... to improve my English.
   a. address b. course c. timetable d. break
   (Matay - Minya 2023)
5. WB Write the word in ..... : that means putting the word in a written sentence.
   (Ibshaway - Fayoum 2022)
   a. crossword b. listening c. context d. map
6. WB My ..... is 7 North Road, Rome.
   a. dress b. age c. address d. way

El-Moasser Exercises

7. I wrote a ..... on my friend's photo on Facebook.
   a. review b. text c. comment d. letter
8. Today I read a/an ..... about selling a panda in the newspaper !
   a. plan b. advert c. course d. idea

9. What's your ..... ? - French.
   a. address b. nationality c. hobby d. country

▸ **Definitions**

10. A ..... is a person who helps others without getting anything in return.
    a. volunteer b. teacher c. vet d. writer
11. SB A personal ..... is where you tell someone about yourself.
    a. textbook b. statement c. advert d. business
12. ..... is to get better at something.
    a. Prove b. Improve c. Explain d. Disprove

▸ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

13. What do you do ..... the weekend ?
    a. form b. of c. at d. from
14. My father works ..... computers. He's an engineer.
    a. about b. for c. of d. with
15. My brother wants to improve his English because he wants to ..... well.
    a. make b. do c. have d. take

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

▸ **Discussion on studying tips for exams**

مناقشة عن نصائح الدراسة والمذاكرة لأجل الامتحانات

Questions	Answers
1. Do you think you are good at studying ? Why/Why not ? - هل تعتقد أنك جيد في الدراسة/المذاكرة ؟ لما/لما لا ؟	- Yes, I think so. Because I am organised and I make a timetable. - نعم، أعتقد ذلك. لأنني منظم وأضع جدول زمني للمذاكرة.
2. Which things do you need to improve ? - ما الأشياء التي تحتاجها لكى تتحسن ؟	- I need to keep English vocabulary. - أريد أن أستذكر مفردات اللغة الإنجليزية.
3. How can you improve that ? - كيف يمكن تحسين ذلك ؟	- By putting the word in a written sentence. - عن طريق وضع المفردة اللغوية في جملة مكتوبة.

General Exercises

On Lessons 5 & 6

● Understand ● Apply ○ Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب].

1. Nadia has gone to ..... since last April.
   a. England b. France c. Germany d. Japan
2. She wanted to ..... her English.
   a. forget b. break c. improve d. take
3. She is studying now with ..... learners.
   a. expert b. old c. young d. fast
4. Every ..... , she is taken to famous English places.
   a. weekend b. month c. day d. year

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Leen wants to have an English course. She is asked to fill in a form.

Headmaster : Welcome to our school. What's your name ?

Leen : (1) ..... .

Headmaster : (2) ..... ?

Leen : I was born on 5th April 2008.

Headmaster : Where are you from ?

Leen : (3) ..... .

Headmaster : Well, Benha is a nice city. What's your phone number ?

Leen : (4) ..... .

Headmaster : (5) ..... ?

Leen : It's leen@yahoo.com.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A/An ..... is someone who knows a lot about something.
   a. chef b. teenager c. adult d. expert

2. To know your lessons for tomorrow, you should look at your ..... .
   a. advantage b. timetable c. project d. break
3. All people like Mohammed. He is ..... .
   a. friendly b. bored c. proud d. scary
4. I like working ..... . I don't like working with others.
   a. alone b. helpfully c. lazily d. slowly
5. Good students always ..... their time.
   a. break b. find c. manage d. make
6. I study more to ..... my English.
   a. improve b. decay c. damage d. ruin
7. I often ..... TV in bed.
   a. watch b. watches c. watching d. is watching
8. Did she ..... to go to school on foot ?
   a. use b. to use c. used d. used to

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your study plan"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Guessing the meaning

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [تخمين معنى مفردة فى السياق] وهنا تحتاج لقراءة النص جيدًا.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question :

Egypt has many ancient and wonderful buildings. The Citadel in Cairo is one of the most important monuments in Egypt. You can see its high towers far away. Some people call it Salah al-Din's Castle. This is because the King Salah al-Din built it to protect Cairo. It took eight years to complete. Work began in 1176 and ended in 1183. There are also four museums in the Citadel. You can visit **several** mosques, there.

Also, the Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Cairo, it took five years to build. It opened in 1961. It is 187 metres tall and stands next to the Nile on Gezira island.

- Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

The underlined word "**several**" in the text means .....

a. a few b. many c. little d. great

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تخمين معنى مفرده فى النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة يتم التركيز على الجملة التى بها الكلمة لكى تحدد المعنى المطلوب بدقة.

2 Speaking

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] معرفتك لقدر كاف من [Language Functions] والتى غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue :

Mona and Hala are talking about learning styles.

Mona : How are you ?

Hala : (1) ..... .

Mona : (2) ..... ?

Hala : I prefer learning in different ways.

Mona : What type of learning would you like to do more ?

Hala : (3) ..... .

Mona : By seeing things! That's enjoyable!

Hala : (4) ..... ?

Mona : I like learning by videos. What's your favourite subject ?

Hala : (5) ..... .

التحدى تريد التحدث عن [الطرق التى تفضلها عند التعلم] وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التى قد تحدث بينك وبين زميلك.

3 Correction notes

• الهدف من هذا الجزء
- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء.

Review

◄ نظرة سريعة على القاعدة

Subject + inf./ inf. + s/es/ies	زمن المضارع البسيط
Subject + am/is/are + inf. + ing	زمن المضارع المستمر
Subject + used to + inf.	للتعبير عن عادات فى الماضى
Subject + was/were + inf. + ing	زمن الماضى المستمر
Subject + am/is/are going to + inf.	للتعبير عن التخطيط المسبق والنية لفعل شىء فى المستقبل
Subject + will/won't + inf.	للتعبير عن تنبؤات مستقبلية بدون دليل واضح
Let's + inf. / What about / How about + v + ing ... ?	للتعبير عن الاقتراح
Subject + should/shouldn't + inf.	لإسداء النصح

Learn

◄ تعلم

Sentence	Correction	Reason
❶ She used to ... [living] in Tanta.	live	بعدها المصدر [used to]
❷ I .... [played] tennis with my sister when it started to rain.	was playing	حدث كان مستمرا وقطعه حدث آخر.
❸ Let's .... [eating] in a restaurant.	eat	[Let's] يأتى بعدها المصدر

Practice

◄ تدرب

Write the Reason : ◄ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة

❶ Why don't we .... [going] to the zoo ?	go	.....
❷ Next year, he ... [starts] secondary stage.	is starting	.....
❸ They are .... [go] to visit their aunt.	going	.....
❹ When I ... [be] young, I used to have a bike.	was	.....

Write the Correction : ◄ اكتب التصحيح

❶ How about .... [travel] to Aswan ?	.....	(How about) يتبعها (v. + ing)
❷ The sun ... [rose] in the morning.	.....	الجملة تعبر عن واقع أو حقيقة لذا نضع الفعل فى صيغة المضارع البسيط
❸ He won't go to work ... [yesterday].	.....	الجملة تعبر عن المستقبل
❹ While I was eating lunch, someone ... [knocks] on the door.	.....	حدث كان مستمرًا فى الماضى وقطعه حدث آخر [زمن ماضى بسيط]

مراجعة عامة على Unit 12 فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

learner	متعلم
mostly	عمومًا
repair	يصلح
explain	يفسر
summarise	يلخص
achieve	يحقق / ينجز
body language	لغة الجسد
eye contact	التواصل البصري
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه
copy	يقلد
communicate	يتواصل
multilingual	متعدد اللغات
dialect	لغة محلية/لهجة
national	قومى / محلى
identity	هوية
community	مجتمع
international	دولي / عالمي
improve	يحسن
manage	ينظم / يدير
organised	مرتب / منظم
summer courses	دورات تدريبية صيفية

Language

Remember! تذكر أن !

- When you are speaking or writing, remember to use the correct tense.

• عند الحديث أو الكتابة ، تذكر أن تستخدم الزمن المناسب.

Present : زمن المضارع

- My uncle lives (present simple) in the USA. I'm emailing (present continuous) him today.

Past : زمن الماضي

- I was playing (past cont.) tennis with my sister when it started (past simple) to rain.
- I didn't use to like tennis! I used to (past habit) like basketball.

Future : زمن المستقبل

- Next year, I'm starting (present continuous) secondary school.
I'm going to go to university. I'm not going to get a job.
I think studying will be hard but fun at university. I won't be bored.

Speaking

Giving advice, opinions & suggestions :

- Let's talk about the animals that you often see on a farm.
- I think that his cat understands him.
- From my point of view, it's important to watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell you.
- You should be careful about how you use your body and voice.
- How about listening to how your cat makes a noise ?

Review on unit 12
قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Questions collected from previous exams

تدريبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Is Mona going ..... TV ? *(Armant - Luxor 2024)*
   a. watch b. watches
   c. watched d. to watch
2. Manal ..... her homework at the moment. *(South Giza - Giza 2024)*
   a. do b. does c. is doing d. doing
3. Do you want to ..... your English ? - Of course.
   a. improve b. to improve
   c. improving d. improved *(Tell El Keber - Sharkia 2023)*
4. Ali would like to ..... the phone for a new one. *(Tema - Souhag 2023)*
   a. take b. change c. make d. buy
5. To ..... means to give the same sound. *(6th october - Giza 2024)*
   a. dance b. copy c. try d. keep
6. How about ..... Magdy to the party ? *(Itsa - Fayoum 2023)*
   a. inventing b. offering
   c. getting d. inviting
7. If you don't understand a lesson, you should ask your teacher to ..... it again. *(Deir Mawass - Menia 2023)*
   a. study b. explain c. believe d. think
8. We should be ..... to understand what animals want. *(Omranya - Giza 2023)*
   a. careful b. careless
   c. useless d. speechless
9. These traditional clothes keep me cool and ..... me from the sun. *(Helwan - Cairo 2023)*
   a. leave b. protect c. help d. take
10. My father is ....., he isn't free. *(El Fath - Assiut 2023)*
    a. afraid b. busy
    c. boring d. scary

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. How about ..... (play) football at the club ? *(Nagah Hamady - Qena 2024)*
2. Last week, I ..... (be) busy. *(Ismailia 2024)*
3. Hani used to be busy, but now he ..... (don't). *(Armant - Luxor 2023)*
4. I hope she will ..... (got) the gold medal. *(Aswan 2023)*
5. I'm looking forward to ..... (visit) the new museum. *(6th October - Giza 2023)*
6. Mr Samy ..... (be) going to visit Aswan next week. *(West Mahalla - Gharbia 2023)*
7. At the moment, we ..... (stay) in a small hotel near the lake. *(East Alexandria - Alexandria 2023)*
8. Adel didn't ..... (bought) a car last week. *(Menouf - Menoufia 2023)*
9. We are going to ..... (travelling) to Japan. *(Burg El Arab - Alexandria 2023)*

Test on unit 12

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصويبه

● Understand ○ Apply ● Create

قم بحل إختبار تراكمي في الملحق

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Fares remembers things ..... .
   a. hard b. easily c. difficultly d. slowly
2. I showed Fares a/an ..... yesterday.
   a. album b. dictionary c. map d. photo
3. Fares says he can see the map in his ..... today.
   a. head b. back c. nose d. leg
4. Fares learns by ..... things.
   a. listening to b. speaking c. writing d. seeing

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rawan is asking Soha about her future plans.

Rawan : Do you have any future plans, Soha ?
Soha : (1) ..... .
Rawan : (2) ..... ?
Soha : First, I want my parents to be proud of me.
Rawan : (3) ..... ?
Soha : By studying hard to be a famous doctor.
Rawan : What are you going to do when you become a doctor ?
Soha : (4) ..... .
Rawan : How are you going to help the poor ?
Soha : (5) ..... .

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Learning a new language is very important these days. Learning a new language is always an **exciting** experience. There could be many reasons to learn new languages, but the advantages are great. In other words, speaking more than one language can make people's lives easier. For example, people who can speak other languages can find jobs easily. They can work in tourism as tour guides, hotel

managers and many other high-paying jobs. In addition, those people can communicate with foreigners from different countries. Moreover, learning a new language is a great way to explore other cultures and see the world from different angles. Finally, learning another language is necessary nowadays.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Learning a foreign language is a great way to ..... other cultures.
   a. become b. explore c. pay d. work
2. The underlined word "**exciting**" is the opposite of "..... ".
   a. sad b. ugly c. easy d. boring

b. Answer the following questions :

3. What is the main idea of the passage ?
   .....
4. Why do you think learning languages is important nowadays ?
   .....
5. What can people do to communicate with foreigners ?
   .....
6. What jobs can people work in when they speak more than one language ?
   .....

(East Mahalla - Gharbia 2024)

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. At the moment, the girls ..... in the garden.
   a. played b. are playing c. will play d. were playing
2. He used ..... five kilometres a day.
   a. to run b. runs c. run d. running
3. His facial ..... tell me that he is angry. *(Heliopolis - Cairo 2023)*
   a. language b. contact c. connection d. expressions
4. Please, ... me some advice on how to communicate with my cat.
   a. take b. do c. give d. make

5. The policeman asked me for my ..... card. *(Dishna - Qena 2022)*
   a. post b. identity c. wedding d. idea
6. The charity needs some ..... like you. *(Akhmim - Sohag 2022)*
   a. vans b. fans c. voluntary d. volunteers
7. WB Randa knows that Malak wants to leave because she makes eye ..... with her.
   a. language b. connect c. expression d. contact
8. If you don't study hard, you will ..... your exams.
   a. fail b. pass c. succeed d. earn

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets :

1. Did you ..... (used) to eat pizza ? *(West Suez - Suez 2024)*
2. At 5:30 next Friday, Sally ..... (have) a birthday party.
3. People, animals and plants ..... (needing) water to stay alive.
4. Hala is carrying her bag. She ..... (travel) to Alexandria.
5. Don't worry ! I will ..... (helping) you with such a hard problem.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Forms of communication"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Habiba likes ..... a text.
   a. playing b. writing c. summarising d. delivering
2. Habiba learns best by ..... .
   a. reading b. seeing c. discussing d. writing

2. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Tamer and Omar are talking about reading.

Tamer : Where are you going, Omar?
Omar : (1) ..... .
Tamer : (2) ..... ?
Omar : Yes, I like it very much. Reading is my favourite hobby.
Tamer : (3) ..... ?
Omar : Science and historical books.
Tamer : Is reading a useful hobby ?
Omar : Yes, it is.

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It is hard to ..... what job you want to do.
   a. take b. do c. decide d. win
2. Their facial ..... tell us what they are feeling now.
   a. text b. expressions c. language d. plan
3. Students like to go to the ..... in science lessons.
   a. garden b. museum c. laboratory d. library
4. She didn't ..... to ride a bike when she was young.
   a. used b. uses c. using d. use
5. While I ..... dinner, my uncle came.
   a. had b. have c. was having d. will have

4. Read the following, then answer the questions :

We don't live alone in this world. There are animals and birds living with us, too. Farmers have got a lot of animals on their farms. They keep cows, camels, buffaloes, horses and goats.

Animals can't speak in the way people can, but some animals like birds can copy sounds.

Animals do communicate, both with us and to each other. Some animals use body language. For example, horses touch **their** noses to say hello to another horse they like. Bees dance when they find a good flower. To understand what animals want, you should be careful , watch and listen to what they are trying to tell you.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title to the passage.
   .....
2. What does the underlined word "**their**" refer to ?
   .....
3. How do you think we can communicate with animals ?
   .....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Horses touch their ..... when they meet another horse they like.
   a. heads b. eyes c. mouths d. noses
5. We should be ..... to understand what animals want.
   a. careful b. careless c. useless d. speechless

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. How about **cook** lunch now ? (.....)
2. Let's **went** to the club today. (.....)
3. When I **be** young, I wanted to a doctor. (.....)
4. Salma **leave** to Cairo at the moment. (.....)

6. Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

"Future plans"

.....

.....

نموذج الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

Hani and Omar are talking about the best place to spend their next holiday.

Hani : Hello Omar. When is your next holiday ?

Omar : Hello Hani. (1) ..... .

a. Two months ago b. Next August
c. In January d. In the morning

Hani : I think it will be hot. (2) ..... ?

a. Where are you going to go
b. How long are you going to stay
c. What are you going to buy
d. When are you going to go

Omar : I'm going to go to Hurghada.

Hani : Are you going to go diving ?

Omar : (3) ..... . I like diving very much.

a. Yes, of course b. No, I haven't
c. No, I wasn't d. I don't think so

Hani : (4) ..... ?

a. How much will you stay there
b. Where will you stay there
c. When will you stay there
d. How long will you stay there

Omar : I'll stay there for a week.

Hani : Have a nice time.

Omar : (5) ..... .

a. I am sad b. I'm sorry
c. Thank you d. That's mine

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :

6. The students ..... **(were doing)** an exam next Sunday. It's arranged.

a. do b. are doing
c. did d. have done

7. Ali ..... **(not/ use)** to like fruit, but now he loves it.

a. don't use b. isn't use
c. didn't use d. doesn't use

8. What are you going to ..... **(doing)** tomorrow ?

a. do b. did c. does d. done

9. Did you ..... **(using)** go to school by bus ?

a. used to b. using to
c. use to d. are using

Review

D

SB pages 64 & 65
WB pages 114 & 115



Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 64



Next month is our **school camping trip**(1). We're leaving in three weeks and camping for three nights. The bus is leaving at 8 am on the 10th of May and we **will be back**(2) on the 13th at 6 pm.

As you know, we're going to the desert and it will be hot in **the day**(3) and cold at night. You will need to bring loose, cool clothes for the day and warm night clothes. You will also need comfortable trainers because we're going to do lots of walking.

You're going to be learning about life in the desert and about the geography of the area. You'll also need a camera, notebook and pen. Please take this letter for your parents which has all the information that you'll need.

(1) رحلة تخييم مدرسية | (2) سنعود | (3) النهار

Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 65



On Monday, an exciting new shop is opening in the city centre. The **Eco Shop**(1) only sells things that are **environmently-friendly**(2).Last week, we talked to the owner, "Mariam El-Soory, about her new shop. "Lots of people want to help the environment but it is sometimes difficult to know what to buy. We are working with lots of people to help **local**(3) industries, too.

(1) متجر صديق للبيئة | (2) صديق البيئة | (3) محلى

So, we're going to sell local fruit and vegetables, luxury, Egyptian cotton clothes and other local things that don't damage the environment. You can also bring glass, plastic and paper to the shop for recycling. We will also have cooking and sewing classes at the shop **soon**(4)".

Mariam worked for many years as a **guide**(5) at a beach. She was sad because she saw a lot of plastic bags used for things from other countries on the beach. When she was **picking up**(6) some rubbish one day, she decided she wanted to do more to help the environment and had the idea of a shop. The shop is having an **opening party**(7) at 1 pm in three days' time.

(4) قريبًا | (5) مرشد | (6) يجمع / يلتقط | (7) حفل افتتاح

on Lesson 1 WB page 114

New technology means that **forms of communication**(1) are changing all the time. For example, think about how phones have **developed**(2) over the last 20 years. In the past, people used to **type messages**(3) using special letters on their phones. Then, people started to touch the screens on their phones to type their messages. Now, phones are able to understand people's voices and many people are speaking to their phones to send messages. Some scientists think that phones are going to know what people think in the future. Perhaps our phones will read our **facial expressions**(4) before they send a message!



(1) اشكال / انواع التواصل | (2) يتطور / يتقدم | (3) يكتب رسائل | (4) تعبيرات الوجه

on Lesson 1 WB page 114

Guide : We're going to climb that big mountain today, Karim.
Karim : Do you mean the mountain with the snow on top ?
Guide : No, we're going to climb the one with the tall, green trees on it.
Karim : It looks a bit scary to me!
Guide : From my point of view , it won't be scary if you wear the correct clothes.
Karim : OK, what should I wear ?
Guide : You should wear these **thick** (1) leather boots, and this **hard,** (2) plastic hat.
Karim : This hat is too big. Do you have a smaller size ?
Guide : Here you are. Does it fit ?
Karim : Yes, thank you.
Guide : OK, let's go up the mountain!

(1) سميك | (2) صلب

on Lesson 2 WB page 115

Tarek is wearing a long, loose, cotton **galabeya** (1). He's also wearing a long, wool **scarf** (2). Osama is wearing **casual** (3) clothes, but I think he looks smart. He's wearing a T-shirt with a blue and white shirt over it. He's also wearing **cotton** (4) trousers, but I don't think he's wearing a belt. Deena is at a **special** (5) occasion. She is wearing smart **traditional** (6) clothes. I love her beautiful, white scarf. She's also wearing a **loose** (7), long, dress with flowers on it.





(1) جلابية (ثوب فضفاض) | (2) وشاح | (3) غير رسمي | (4) قطن | (5) مميز / خاص | (6) تقليدي | (7) فضفاض

Monthly assessments
تقييمات شهرية

February Test
اختبار على شهر فبراير

Model (A)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I spent a lot of money on an online game by ..... .
   a. mistake b. luck c. hand d. train
2. My little sister is ..... to sweets. She always wants to eat them.
   a. interested b. horrible c. addicted d. bored
3. The ..... can help you listen to music on the bus.
   a. headphones b. robots c. screens d. glasses
4. ..... means food that is quick and easy to buy or cook.
   a. Desert b. Fast food c. Sfenj d. Snake
5. Don't put much salt, please. I don't like ..... food.
   a. salty b. sweet c. fresh d. juicy

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I think our team ..... (win) the next match.
2. I think we will ..... (doing) the shopping online more.
3. If she is ill, she should ..... (goes) to hospital.
4. You shouldn't ..... (drinking) so much coffee. It's bad for you.
5. When she is playing netball, she drinks ..... (a few) water.

Model (B)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It is my habit to ..... social media to get the latest news.
   a. wear b. save c. check d. have
2. Social media is very useful, but it has ..... , too.
   a. information b. ways c. hobbies d. dangers
3. Do you think it is easy to ..... from Arabic into English ?
   a. invent b. translate c. speak d. stop
4. A/An ..... is a boy or a girl aged 13-19.
   a. old man b. baby c. child d. teenager
5. ..... food tastes hot.
   a. Juicy b. Nice c. Spicy d. Sweet

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. You ..... (shouldn't) see a doctor when you feel sick.
2. When you have free time, you shouldn't ..... (wasted) it.
3. If it rains, I ..... (not play) outside.
4. Ali eats too ..... (much) cakes.
5. There ..... (aren't) any sugar in my tea.

Model (C)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I think using too much technology can ..... you a headache.
   a. make b. take c. give d. spend
2. From my point of ..... , not all computer games are bad.
   a. new b. view c. wish d. thought
3. Facebook, Whatsapp, Instagram are examples of ..... .
   a. food b. games c. subjects d. social media
4. "....." means getting ill when you eat or touch something.
   a. Salt b. Taste c. Good d. Allergic
5. Mum always cooks us ..... food to keep us strong.
   a. spicy b. healthy c. sweet d. unhealthy

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. In the future, people ..... (travelled) by rockets.
2. If Rana ..... (play) well, she will win.
3. Dina should visit her aunt if she .....(go) to Alexandria.
4. If you ..... (not feel) well in school, you should tell a teacher.
5. Would you like ..... (any) coffee ?

Model (D)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It's ..... for an elephant to fly.
   a. possible b. impossible c. easy d. horrible
2. My parents don't ..... me to watch TV at night.
   a. drop b. let c. allow d. share
3. I don't have many ..... . This is the only solution.
   a. equipment b. choices c. advice d. information
4. Eating rice and pasta gives us ..... .
   a. salt b. energy c. sweet d. milk
5. You cook hawawshi in the ..... .
   a. over b. oven c. offer d. often

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Omar will be fifteen ..... (last) Wednesday.
2. If you ..... (didn't) feel well in school, tell your teacher.
3. Mona will look online for a new phone when she ..... (get) home.
4. What ..... (will) you like for breakfast ?
5. I don't have ..... (some) cheese in the fridge.

Model (E)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. You shouldn't ..... outside for too long if it is very hot in the desert.
   a. try b. swim c. stay d. visit
2. ..... is a pain in your head.
   a. Stomach ache b. Backache c. Toothache d. Headache
3. Spending a lot of time on ..... causes some eye problems.
   a. headphones b. boards c. screens d. music
4. She eats a lot of fish because it helps to make her ..... .
   a. nervous b. tired c. fat d. strong
5. In many places, people use fava beans to make ..... .
   a. pasta b. falafel c. soup d. dessert

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If Emad goes to England, he ..... (visit) London.
2. What .....(would) you do if you come first ?
3. If I see Mark, I ..... (ask) him to call you.
4. We will be sad if we ..... (got) low marks.
5. My father likes ..... (a few) sugar in his tea.

Model (F)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **A :** What is your ..... about modern technology ?
   B : I think it has made life easier.
   a. problem b. opinion c. headache d. app
2. Many cars on the road cause more ..... .
   a. floods b. inventions c. pollution d. earthquakes
3. Scientists ..... that we won't use oil in the near future.
   a. build b. repeat c. predict d. invent
4. My mother ..... the food with her tongue when she cooks.
   a. tastes b. hears c. smells d. plays
5. I'm ..... to sweets, so I never eat them.
   a. kind b. hungry c. polite d. allergic

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Next month, I ..... (be) in the third year of prep school.
2. You ..... (should) stay up too late if you have to get up early.
3. If you ..... (thinks) that your friend is addicted to social media, you should advise him.
4. There are ..... (a little) grapes left.
5. I eat ..... (a lot) rice and pasta.

March Test اختبار على شهر مارس

Model (A)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "....." means to mix food quickly using a fork.
   a. Peel b. Beat c. Boil d. Pour
2. The teacher asked the pupils to ..... their books out of bags.
   a. make b. give c. take d. do
3. My dress is damaged, so my mother is ..... it.
   a. cleaning b. sewing c. tidying d. washing
4. Samy ..... visiting Alexandria. It is very good in summer.
   a. recommends b. listens c. reads d. mends
5. I'd like to ..... you to my birthday party.
   a. invite b. intend c. introduce d. interrupt

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Don't ..... (putting) too much salt in the soup.
2. Please, ... (adding) some olive oil on salad.
3. There is so ..... (many) pollution in Cairo because of the traffic.
4. My mother can ..... (making) a cake.
5. They ..... (able) to write the script.

Model (B)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Milk, cheese and butter are all ..... products.
   a. diary b. dairy c. dry d. spicy
2. This is a nice ..... for making an omelette.
   a. recipe b. receipt c. snack d. diet
3. **A :** What is your favourite musical instrument ? **B :** The .....
   a. violin b. cook c. laptop d. TV
4. "Braille" is a special writing for the ..... .
   a. blind b. deaf c. dump d. disabled
5. ..... is art made from stone or wood that looks like people , animals or other things.
   a. Pottery b. Sculpture c. Cartoon d. Portrait

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Don't ..... (touching) electric wires.
2. ..... (Turns) the lights off before you sleep.
3. At clubs, players learn ..... (how) play well.
4. Ali ..... (able) play tennis.
5. Would you like ..... (come) to my birthday party ?

Model (C)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It was not easy for him to join the ..... club in his city.
   a. athletics b. allergic c. tests d. athlete
2. To ..... means to give the same sound.
   a. dance b. copy c. try d. keep
3. There were ..... of important and normal Egyptian people in the museum.
   a. portraits b. plays c. cartoon d. pottery
4. Writing ..... of films needs skill and experience.
   a. texture b. disaster c. suspicion d. scripts
5. My cousin is ..... . She uses sign language.
   a. tired b. strong c. deaf d. interested

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Eman feels tired all the time and doesn't get ..... (sleep enough).
2. ..... (Not boil) oil more than one time.
3. Does Ali ..... (knows) how to spell words ?
4. My father knows ..... (what) to climb the mountain.
5. Would you mind if you ..... (helping) me ?

Model (D)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Put the food in the ..... to keep it cold.
   a. oven b. microwave c. kettle d. fridge
2. Who ..... food at a restaurant ? – A waiter.
   a. chops b. beats c. adds d. serves
3. " ..... " means not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can.
   a. Disabled b. Surprising c. Proud d. Careful
4. My little sister started to ..... after she fell and hurt her hand.
   a. hide b. wonder c. hug d. cry
5. We should ..... all our plastic to use again.
   a. burn b. recycle c. throw d. damage

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Tamer's mother gives him too ..... (many) food.
2. Don't ..... (feeds) the birds. I've already done that.
3. ..... (Be) you able to do sport ?
4. He ..... (not know) how to make falafel.
5. Do you mind ..... (open) the window ?

Model (E)

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Doctors always advise people to have ..... diets to stay healthy.
   a. high b. big c. balanced d. full
2. Listening to quiet music can help you ..... .
   a. eat b. mix c. relax d. write
3. The ..... man can't see the traffic light.
   a. blind b. deaf c. disabled d. dump
4. Ali used a/an ..... because he cannot walk.
   a. armchair b. wheelchair c. stool d. stair
5. We use "please" to make polite ..... .
   a. request b. offer c. invitation d. pollution

2 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. Let's ..... (listens) to some music.
2. Always .....(to add) olive oil to salad.
3. I spent too ..... (many) money on clothes yesterday.
4. I know how ..... (sew) costumes.
5. She ate ..... (much) sweets yesterday.

Model (F)

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Meat, fish and eggs all have ..... in them.
   a. fats b. protein c. beans d. oil
2. Humans have 210 ..... in their bodies.
   a. eyes b. ears c. bones d. arms
3. I don't like fried eggs. I like them ..... .
   a. boiled b. juicy c. terrible d. sweet
4. Old bowls were made of ..... from the river in Ancient Egypt.
   a. wood b. glass c. clay d. stone
5. To "....." means to leave a place that you should stay in.
   a. wander b. review c. escape d. leave

2 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. When water boils, ... (turns) off the stove.
2. What can you .....(did) in your free time ?
3. Amira is able ..... (play) a musical instrument.
4. Shall I ..... (bringing) you a cup of coffee ?
5. Don't ..... (heats) butter for too long.

Unit 7

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Shopping online"

Not all people think the same about shopping online. Some people think shopping online is great. They think it saves time because they don't spend much time travelling to the shops. They can stay at home and buy anything they want in a few minutes. They think that they have many choices online. In their views, shopping online will make less cars on the streets so there will be less pollution. On the other hand, some people don't think the same. They don't like shopping online because they always have a wrong delivery when they shop online.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"Types of technology"

Technology has changed our life. It became important in our daily life. We use many types of technology daily. Smartphones, internet, robots and drones are examples of technology. They help us to live easier and better life. The internet gives us a lot of information about anything. Smartphones help us to communicate with people and also have apps to help you know more information about anything. But technology also has dangers. We have to be careful when we use technology.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"Advantages and disadvantages of the internet"

Although the internet is very useful for us, it has also dangers. Using the internet can be good and bad at the same time. So we should be careful when we use the internet. When you are online, you should remember these rules. Keep your password secret. Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't tell people your personal information. Don't spend a lot of time online. You will waste your time and you will damage your eyes if you spend too much time looking at screens. You should be careful as using technology too much time will make you addicted to the internet.

Test on unit 7

From : ali@yahoo.com

To : farid@gmail.com

Subject : how technology is useful

Dear Farid,

How are you doing ? I'm happy to send this email to you. I want to tell you about technology and how it is useful for us. We have studied about many modern inventions like new headphones that can translate from any language into your language. There's also a clever jacket which uses an app to make you warmer when the weather is cold. Another invention is half-motorbike and half-helicopter. It can push you into the air at the speed of a fast car. Write to me about your favourite invention.

Yours,

Ali

Unit 8

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"My favourite snack"

We like to eat snacks. They are delicious and light. I like snacks that have a lot of sugar. I like sweet food. Cake is my favourite snack. I like to eat cupcakes between meals when I feel hungry. Sometimes, I can't have cakes when there are nuts in them, as I'm allergic to nuts. I become sick if I eat them. So I must be careful about what I eat. My mother makes nice cakes at home for me when she has more free time. The cakes are healthier when mum makes them at home.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

From : reda@gmail.com
To : sami@gmail.com
Subject : how to make an omelette

Dear Sami,

How are you and your family ? I write you this email to tell you about a new dish I've learnt to cook. It's omelette. It is a delicious dish. Its ingredients are eggs, milk and salt. Here's an easy recipe to make omelette. First, beat two eggs in a bowl with little milk. Second, add a little salt to the eggs and milk, but don't add too much salt. Much salt isn't good for you. Then, heat some butter in a frying pan. After that, pour the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in the butter. Finally, when the omelette is ready, take it out of the frying pan and serve it with salad.

Yours,
Reda

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"Healthy food"

If you want to be healthy, you should be careful about what you eat. Not all kinds of foods are healthy. Fast food isn't healthy food as it has a lot of sugar, fat and salt. Fruits and vegetables are very healthy food. They have a lot of vitamins and natural sugar which are good for your body. Dairy products like milk and cheese are very useful. They help us to have strong bones. Meat and nuts have protein in them, so we need them to have a strong body.

Test on unit 8

"Fast food"

Fast food is the food that is quick and easy to buy or cook. Although it is very tasty, it is not healthy. It has much fat and sugar in it. So it is not a good idea to eat fast food. You should have healthy snacks between the meals when you feel hungry. Healthy food gives you energy and makes you strong. Fruits and vegetables are healthy snacks, so you can eat a lot of them. Nuts also are very good for your body. You can have nuts as a snack if you don't have an allergy to them. In conclusion, you should think before you eat anything if it is good or bad for your body.

Unit 9

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

From : khalid@gmail.com
To : soha@gmail.com
Subject : a visit to the Egyptian Museum

Dear Soha,

How are you ? I hope you are fine. I write this email to tell you about my visit to the Egyptian Museum. The Egyptian Museum is one of the most amazing places in Cairo. It's the oldest museum in Cairo. I went to the Egyptian Museum last Sunday on a school trip. We went very early as the museum isn't much crowded in the early mornings. I saw many statues and portraits. They were amazing. There were ancient things made of different materials. I recommend visiting the Egyptian Museum. It's an amazing place to visit.

Yours,
Khalid

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"How to help the disabled"

Disabled means someone who isn't able to use a part or parts of the body in the way other people can. Disabled people are not different, but they need more help. For example, the blind need special schools to learn how to use Braille. They can read and write, draw and even play music. They also need help in public transport. Deaf people also need help to be able to communicate well. To conclude, the disabled are heroes : they can do amazing things, but they need more help to live a normal life.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"My favourite film"

I like watching films. My favourite kind of films is adventure films. They are very exciting. "Jurassic World" is one of my favourite films. It's an adventure film. It was made in 2015. The film stars are Chris Pratt and Bryce Dallas. It is about a theme park where scientists have helped dinosaurs to live again ! Then some of the dinosaurs escaped. I think the action is exciting and my favourite thing is the scary dinosaurs : they look very real. I recommend watching this film.

Test on unit 9

"Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra"

Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra is an amazing orchestra. It's in a special school for blind girls in Cairo. This school is a music school. All the students study their normal subjects in the morning and they practise their instruments in the afternoon. Many of the students at this school join the orchestra. The orchestra plays concerts in Australia, Germany and China and all around the world. The orchestra plays international and classical music. They read with their hands. They have to remember the music because they can't read and play at the same time.

Unit 10

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"My favourite clothes"

There are many types of clothes. Clothes are different in every city, town and country. I like to wear clothes that are loose and made of cotton. I like to feel comfortable and relaxed in my clothes. I like my black, plastic sunglasses. They are very fashionable. I prefer to wear trainers most of the time. They are very comfortable and look nice. When I visit my grandpa, I like to wear traditional clothes like what he wears. He lives in a village in Assiut. It is important to wear comfortable clothes to enjoy your time.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

From : sherifa@gmail.com
To : samia@yahoo.com
Subject : the handbag I want to sell

Hi Samia,

How is it going ? I write to you to tell you about the advert that I want to make online. It's about my handbag. It is a present for my birthday , but I already have one that is the same. I don't need it so I will make an advert to sell it. It's very large and beautiful. It's perfect for work or school. It's made of leather. I will put three pictures of it with the advert. I hope someone likes it and calls me soon. What's your opinion about shopping online ?

Yours,
Sherifa

Test on unit 10

"Clothes in Ancient Egypt"

In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore loose, white, linen clothes with a belt. Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes most of the time, but rich people sometimes wore expensive leather sandals. Children did not usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old. Then they started to wear the same clothes as their parents. Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear heavy, metal jewellery. Like some people today, they liked to wear beautiful gold necklaces and other jewellery.

Unit 11

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

From : nader@gmail.com
To : tarek@yahoo.com
Subject : the summer holiday

Dear Tarek,

How are you ? I'm so excited to write to you about my plan for the summer holiday. I'm going to travel to Jordan. It's a beautiful Arab country. I'm going to visit Wadi Rum. It's a large area of desert in the south of Jordan. It's a very beautiful place with mountains, desert plants and wildlife. I'm going to go trekking and rock climbing. It'll be an amazing journey. I'll send you many photos when I arrive there. I'll stay in a hotel. There are many nice hotels there. I can't wait to go there !

Yours,
Nader

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"Water pollution"

Water is the most important thing to live. So that we must save water. Unfortunately, some people don't care about water. They throw out their rubbish in water. As a result the water became polluted in many places. Polluted water causes many diseases to us. But how we can save water from pollution. Some students have invented a system to take the rubbish from the water and others invented a green system to use sunlight to kill bacteria in water. These amazing inventions should be used all over the world.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"The activity I like doing in my free time"

I love nature very much. In my free time, I like to go to the park. I enjoy walking and watching trees, birds, clouds and animals. I like taking pictures for nature. That's my favourite activity in my free time. Nature is full of amazing scenes. I feel very happy when I am at the park. In Cairo, there are many beautiful parks. Al-Azhar Park is one of the biggest parks in Egypt. It's a very beautiful place to spend time in. I recommend visiting it.

Test on unit 11

"Plans for my next holiday"

Next holiday, I have an exciting plan. I'm going to travel to Siwa. It's a beautiful oasis in Egypt. There are many amazing places to visit there. Fatanas Island is a great place to watch the sunset like you have never done before. You can sit beside the water and see the most beautiful sunset scene. I'm going to visit Siwa Museum. In the museum, there are traditional clothes, potteries and jewellery which show you how the life in Siwa is. I'm also going to visit Siwa salt lake. I'm looking forward to visiting Siwa.

Unit 12

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

From : maha@yahoo.com
To : sama@gmail.com
Subject : What job I'd like to do in the future

Dear Sama,

How are you and your family ? I am pleased to write to you about what job I'd like to do when I'm older after finishing the university. I want to be a scientist so I can study science. Science is my favourite subject. I dream to invent a new robot. And that robot can help us a lot. I like to do experiments at the laboratory. I think it is an exciting job. The world always changes and needs more technology and inventions to help us live easy and better life. Write to me about your future job.

Yours,
Maha

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"The importance of languages"

There are many languages around the world. Some countries speak more than one language. Languages are very important to communicate with each other. People who speak more than one language have more advantages. They can talk to different people in different places and in different ways. When you are multilingual, you are able to understand both your home and the world better. It also gives people different identities. If you speak your home language, it connects you to your community.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"My study plan"

We are all different. So everyone has their plan to study and a way that they can use to learn best. We can make flashcards of words that we need to remember. We can also write the words in context. So you can see how it works with other words. We can learn English language from TV programmes or films and search for unknown words. We can read stories if we like reading. Learning with others is more fun. So you can work with a friend and try to discuss and test each other.

Test on unit 12

"Forms of communication"

Now, there are more forms of communication than in the past. Technology gave us different and new forms of communication. We all now have phones and we use them to make phone calls and text messages. More than this, some of people have smartphones which make them able to communicate with people in far places easily and for free. Smartphones have apps that can help you to call, text and even see anybody. In the future, maybe we will have phones that can read our facial expressions before they send messages.

Listening Texts

نصوص استماع

Unit 7

1 Lessons 1 & 2

Hoda loves shopping online. It saves time. She doesn't want to spend lots of time travelling to the shops. She can stay at home and buy what she needs online in a few minutes.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

Technology can be bad for your health. Playing computer games for a long time causes eye problems. You can also feel neck and back pains when you play computer games. Listening to loud music through headphones can damage your hearing.

3 Test on unit 7

I ordered a new mobile phone last week and the delivery was today. When I opened the box, the screen was damaged. I phoned the shop back and they sent me a new one.

4 Test on unit 7 for Al-Azhar Students

Shopping online saves our time. If more people shop online, there will be less pollution. I like shopping online.

Unit 8

1 Lessons 1 & 2

We rarely order fast food from restaurants as my mum always cooks delicious food. She also says that fast food is unhealthy so we shouldn't eat it. I like fruits very much so I eat a lot of them.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

To be healthy, make sure you have a balanced diet and eat some of all the types of food. Eat healthy snacks, sleep well and don't worry too much.

3 Test on unit 8

Omar is a student in prep two. Omar is allergic to nuts. Some kinds of food make Omar ill. Omar must be careful with what he eats. Omar can eat food that has no nuts in it.

4 Test on unit 8 for Al-Azhar Students

Fast food is very tasty, but it is unhealthy. If you feel very hungry between meals, it's a good idea to have a snack.

Unit 9

1 Lessons 1 & 2

My family and I went to Cairo yesterday. We visited the Egyptian Museum. We went by taxi. We saw a lot of monuments.

2 Lessons 3 & 4

Rawan is a deaf girl. She likes sport. She plays table tennis. She came first in the last competition.

3 Lessons 5 & 6

Ramy went to see a scary film about dinosaurs last night. Ramy couldn't sleep after the film.

4 Test on unit 9

Jurassic World is an adventure film. The stars of the film are Chris Pratt and Bryce Dallas Howard. It's about a theme park where scientists have helped dinosaurs to live again. Then some dinosaurs escaped.

5 Test on unit 9 for Al-Azhar Students

Jurassic World is an adventure film. It is about a theme park where scientists have helped dinosaurs to live again. Then some dinosaurs escape.

General Revision on units 7, 8 & 9

Fahmy is on the school athletics team. He goes running every day. He needs food that gives him energy, like rice and pasta. He also eats a few healthy snacks, like nuts.

Unit 10

1 Lessons 1 & 2

In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore loose, white, linen clothes. The Ancient Egyptians didn't wear shoes, but some people wore expensive, leather sandals.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

I'm selling a beautiful new, black, leather handbag. It was a present for my birthday but I already have one that is the same. The price is L.E. 500.

3 Test on unit 10

Some people are starting to use a plant called bamboo instead of cotton to make clothes. The plant is an important crop in China where the bamboo industry makes a lot of money.

4 Test on unit 10 for Al-Azhar Students

Adam usually wears jeans. Adam thinks he looks like his father when he dresses up.

Unit 11

1 Lessons 1 & 2

There is a lot of air pollution from the traffic in our city and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution.

2 Lessons 3 & 4

Drones can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them, we can use a remote control. This means we can control drones from the ground. In the future, drones are going to help solve some environmental problems.

3 Test on unit 11

Plastic is found everywhere ! We use it for many different things. We can recycle some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous. Every year, more than 100 sea animals and birds die from plastic.

4 Test on unit 11 for Al-Azhar Students

At the moment, I'm walking in the desert in the Nabq Nature reserve. Yesterday, we visited the mountains. It was very hot. The day before yesterday, we went diving in the coral reefs at Shoura al Manquata.

Unit 12

1 Lessons 1 & 2

Marwan finds it difficult to understand science books, but when he does an experiment in the laboratory, he always understands what is happening. Marwan learns best by doing things. He likes technology.

2 Lessons 3 & 4

Yara is my older sister. She is 15 years old. She is 3 years older than me. She is always on the internet or talking on her phone for a long time.

3 Lessons 5 & 6

Nadia has gone to England since last April. She wanted to improve her English. She is studying now with young learners from around the world. Every weekend, she is taken to famous English places.

4 Test on unit 12

Fares remembers things easily. I showed him a map of how to walk to my house yesterday. He says he can see the map in his head today ! Fares learns by seeing things.

4 Test on unit 12 for Al-Azhar Students

Habiba likes summarising a text. For example, if a text is 100 words long, she writes a summary in about 15 – 20 words. Habiba learns best by writing.

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم : ١٠٣ - ١٠ - ٢ - ٥٨

EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

New Hello!

SECOND TERM

GPS

أدخل كودك الشخصى
الموجود على ظهر الغلاف

IN THIS BOOK ...

- A detailed explanation for each two lessons.
- Various exercises on each part of the two lessons.
- General exercises on each two lessons.
- A brief summary of each unit.
- A sample test after each unit.
- General revision after each three units.
- Tests for Al-Azhar students.
- Writing skill.

الآن بالمكتبات

المعاصر فى...
- الرياضيات
- الكمبيوتر وتكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات

للمرحلة الإعدادية

قاموس المعاصر الناطق
إمسح الـ QR CODE
داخل الكتاب

يُصرف مجانًا مع هذا الكتاب
- كراسة المعاصر للمراجعة والاختبارات
- كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلى

GPS

AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com
www.elmoasserbooks.com
15014

/ ElMoasser.eg

6 223007 311335

New Hello! ENGLISH

By a group of supervisors

EL-MOASSER

GUIDE

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية
للواجب المنزلى

INTERACTIVE Homework Notebook

FREE PART 1



الصف الثانى الإعدادى
الفصل الدراسى الثانى

2nd Prep.
2025
SECOND TERM

New Hello! ENGLISH

By a group of supervisors

EL-MOASSER GUIDE

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية
للواجب المنزلى

INTERACTIVE Homework Notebook

FREE PART 1



GPS

2025

2nd Prep.
SECOND TERM

AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com
15014 www.elmoasserbooks.com

Contents

Part 1 Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة

Part 2 Accumulative Assessments on Dictation

تدريب تراكمى على الإملاء

Part 3 Mini Tests on Units

اختبارات مصغرة على الوحدات



Part 1

UNIT 7

1 Dictation on Lessons

١. إملاء على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Model A

Write the meaning	Complete باستخدام الكلمات أكمل الجمل.
Lessons 1 & 2	
..... كهرباء	1. We need ..... to use the computer, fridge and TV .
..... سماعات الأذن	2. WhatsApp is my favourite mobile ..... .
..... يترجم	3. What is the ..... of the car in an hour ?
..... تطبيق على الهاتف/ الحاسوب	4. They use ..... to make electricity from the sun.
..... دراجة بخارية	5. I need to ..... the message from English into Arabic.
..... ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	6. She likes to listen to music on her ..... .
..... سرعة	
Lessons 3 & 4	
..... مدمن	1. The scientists want to ..... new places.
..... مصاب	2. Teachers give every student a ..... of the worksheets.
..... يستكشف	3. He's ..... to chocolate. He can't stop eating it.
..... خبير	4. ..... helps us talk to our friends online.
..... وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	5. The architect made a ..... of plastic to our future house.
..... نموذج	6. They took the ..... man to the hospital.
..... نسخة - ينسخ	
Lessons 5 & 6	
..... شاشة	1. Ahmed's ..... is Mahdi. It's his family name.
..... حاسة السمع	2. The mechanic helps us change the car ..... .
..... يأمر - يطلب	3. When I ..... clothes online, the delivery arrives late .
..... سبب - مبرر	4. The TV ..... is made of glass.
..... عجلة / إطار	5. About seven ..... people live in the world .
..... مليار	6. Tell me the ..... for your coming late.
..... لقب [اسم العائلة]	

or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete**

Lessons 1 & 2

..... نتائج
..... خدمة توصيل
..... بالطو
..... لغة
..... تلوث
..... أجنحة
..... يدفع

1. ..... the door to open it.
2. ..... is a dangerous problem.
3. Birds use their ..... to fly.
4. What are the ..... of the exams ?
5. I wear a ..... to stay warm in winter.
6. I think English is an interesting .....

Lessons 3 & 4

..... رهيب / شنيع
..... رافعة / مقبض
..... صداع
..... الوالدين
..... يلقي
..... الفضاء
..... يشارك

1. I live with my ..... and my brother.
2. I have a ..... My head hurts me.
3. The astronauts travel to ..... to study the moon and planets.
4. Don't ..... rubbish at the park.
5. The accident was ....., many people were injured.
6. Pull the ..... to turn on the machine.

Lessons 5 & 6

..... مناقشة/ مناظرة
..... صحة
..... يرسل رسائل نصية
..... مشاكل فى البصر
..... يتمنى
..... أجهزة الإنسان الآلى
..... مخاطر

1. I ..... my friends online on the smart phone.
2. When we talk with our teacher, we have a good .....
3. I ..... you a happy new year.
4. Fruits and vegetables are good for your .....
5. I have ..... when I watch videos for a long time.
6. Technology is useful, but it has .....

2 Dictation on Unit 7

٢. إملاء على الوحدة بالكامل

1. Write the meaning of these words.

.....	طائرة مروحية	website	.....
.....	شاشة	delivery	.....
.....	سماعات الأذن	explore	.....
.....	مدمن	damage	.....
.....	تسوق	electricity	.....
.....	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	headache	.....
.....	تطبيق على الهاتف	dangers	.....
.....	طلب	translate	.....
.....	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	horrible	.....
.....	الوالدين	machine	.....

2. Read and complete the conjugation.

Present	Past	P.P.
bring	.....	brought
build	.....	built
.....	taught	taught
.....	found	found
know	.....	known

3. Listen, repeat and write.

يقوم المعلم بقراءة بعض الكلمات من الوحدة ليستمع إليها الطالب ويرددها ثم يكتبها داخل الجدول.

ORAL TEST

1.	5. .....
2.	6. .....
3.	7. .....
4.	8. .....

4. Read and match.

1	**headache**
2	**pull**
3	**translate**
4	**impossible**
5	**order**
6	**speed**
7	**horrible**
8	**motorbike**
9	**by mistake**
10	**lever**

- ☐ change words into a different language
- ☐ how fast something moves
- ☐ a pain inside your head
- ☐ very bad, not nice at all
- ☐ a handle that you push or pull to make a machine work
- ☐ ask someone to make, supply or deliver food or an object
- ☐ hold something and move it towards you
- ☐ something you do or say without intending to
- ☐ if an action or event cannot happen or be done
- ☐ a form of transport with two wheels and an engine

5. Read and complete (synonyms / antonyms).

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
real	.....	strong	.....
loud	.....	positive	.....
appear	.....	formal	.....
horrible	.....	possible	.....
allow	.....	pull	.....

6. Read and complete (prefixes / suffixes).

Prefix / Suffix	Meaning	Prefix / Suffix	Meaning
addict.....	مدمن	hear.....	حاسة السمع
head.....	صداع	faithful.....	بإخلاص
use.....	مفيد	predict.....	تنبؤ
deliver.....	توصيل	correct.....	تصحيح

UNIT 8

1 Dictation on Lessons

١. إملاء على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Model A

Write the meaning ⟹ **Complete**

Lessons 1 & 2

..... يتذوق
..... وجبة خفيفة
..... حلو المذاق
..... طاقة
..... بطيخ
..... توابل
..... زيتون

1. He has much ..... to do a lot of exercises every morning .
2. They use ..... to make oil.
3. Mum adds some ..... to food when she cooks.
4. Sugar is ..... but salt is salty.
5. I eat a small ..... at the school break.
6. ..... is my favourite fruit.

Lessons 3 & 4

..... غريب
..... يسخن
..... يسكب
..... حواس
..... تعليمات
..... ثلاجة
..... منتجات الألبان

1. Listen to the ..... before you answer the test.
2. Milk, yogurt and cheese are .....
3. This is ..... fruit, I 've never eaten it.
4. ..... oil to fry the fish.
5. We have five ..... hearing, tasting, smelling, touching and sight.
6. Keep fruits in the ..... to stay fresh.

Lessons 5 & 6

..... سبانخ
..... يسترخى
..... الرسم
..... يشرح
..... موقف
..... فلفل
..... أرجوانى اللون

1. I asked my teacher to ..... the lesson for me again .
2. ..... is my favourite hobby.
3. The dentist asked me to ..... to check my teeth.
4. ..... is a kind of vegetables that is green, red or yellow.
5. Eggplant is a ..... vegetable.
6. It was a bad ..... when I forgot my books.

or

Model B

Write the meaning		Complete
Lessons 1 & 2		
.....	وجبة سريعة	1. Some fruits are ..... like the watermelon and oranges.
.....	يدعو	2. Bake the cake in the ..... for 30 minutes.
.....	لديه حساسية	3. A/An ..... is easy to cook and fast.
.....	مالح	4. He is ..... to nuts, he can't eat any of them.
.....	ملىء بالعصير	5. Hala ..... all her friends to her birthday party.
.....	يغسل الأوانى	6. Chips is a ..... snack.
.....	فرن	
Lessons 3 & 4		
.....	وصفة طهى	1. She likes the ..... of flowers.
.....	طازج	2. ..... the potatoes to make chips.
.....	يقطع	3. I like to drink ..... juice.
.....	عظام	4. We eat meals in the ..... at home.
.....	رائحة	5. Fish and eggs are full of ..... .
.....	بروتين	6. Drink milk to have strong ..... .
.....	حجرة الطعام	
Lessons 5 & 6		
.....	نظام غذائى متوازن	1. They ..... a big house in the country.
.....	مدرسة لتعليم الرسم	2. Put a ..... at the end of the sentence.
.....	منزعج	3. My parents ..... me with a new bike on my birthday.
.....	ربما	4. ..... Wael will come. I 'm not sure.
.....	يمتلك	5. I joined the ..... to learn how to draw.
.....	يفاجىء	6. I have a ..... with some of all the types of food.
.....	نقطة	

2 Dictation on Unit 8

٢. إملاء على الوحدة بالكامل

1. Write the meaning of these words.

.....	طازج	serve	.....
.....	سبانخ	conclude	.....
.....	سكين	olives	.....
.....	نصيحة	painting	.....
.....	وجبات سريعة	humans	.....
.....	عظام	salty	.....
.....	دهن	amount	.....
.....	طاقة	nuts	.....
.....	بطاطا	teenager	.....
.....	يسخن	ground	.....

2. Read and complete the conjugation.

Present	Past	P.P.
keep	.....	kept
beat	.....	beaten
.....	forgot	forgotten
.....	grew	grown
break	.....	broken

3. Listen, repeat and write.

يقوم المعلم بقراءة بعض الكلمات من الوحدة ليستمع إليها الطالب ويرددها ثم يكتبها داخل الجدول.

ORAL TEST

1.	5. .....
2.	6. .....
3.	7. .....
4.	8. .....

4. Read and match.

1	taste
2	delicious
3	fry
4	energy
5	spinach
6	pepper
7	beat
8	spicy
9	salty
10	frying Pan

- ☐ mix food quickly using a fork, wooden spoon, etc.
- ☐ tasting of salt or containing a lot of salt
- ☐ containing the tastes from spices
- ☐ know what something is when you put it in your mouth
- ☐ cook something in hot oil or fat
- ☐ a flat, metal pan used for frying food
- ☐ a kind of vegetable that is usually green, red or yellow, with seeds in the middle
- ☐ a vegetable with wide, dark green leaves that go soft when you cook them
- ☐ very nice to eat
- ☐ the ability to do a lot of work or activity without becoming tired

5. Read and complete (synonyms / antonyms).

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
popular	.....	dry	.....
normal	.....	lucky	.....
delicious	.....	inside	.....
full	.....	salty	.....
inside	.....	hungry	.....

6. Read and complete (prefixes / suffixes).

Prefix / Suffix	Meaning	Prefix / Suffix	Meaning
.....usual	غير عادي	juic.....	ملىء بالعصير
health.....	صحى	fri.....	مقلى
allerg.....	لديه حساسية	chopp.....	مفروم

UNIT 9

1 Dictation on Lessons

١. إملاء على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Model A

Write the meaning		Complete
		Lessons 1 & 2
.....	سيناريو	1. He made the statue from ..... .
.....	رسوم متحركة	2. I bought a painting made by a famous ..... .
.....	فنان	3. The smart ..... saved the family from the fire.
.....	قرن [١٠٠ سنة]	4. A ..... is a hundred years of time.
.....	مسرحية	5. Actors read the ..... well before they take a role.
.....	رجل الإطفاء	6. We watched a funny ..... at the theatre.
.....	حجر	
		Lessons 3 & 4
.....	فرقة موسيقية	1. The blind use ..... to read.
.....	يحضن	2. He uses a ..... as he can't walk.
.....	أصم	3. The ..... man didn't hear the doorbell.
.....	طريقة برايل للمكفوفين	4. My grandparents ..... me when I visit them.
.....	مدونة إلكترونية	5. I write about important events in my ..... online.
.....	درجات السلم	6. My baby sister can't go up the ..... .
.....	كرسى متحرك	
		Lessons 5 & 6
.....	دعوة	1. The cat tried to ..... but they caught it.
.....	يهرب	2. We should ..... plastic to save the environment.
.....	نجم [ممثل مشهور]	3. My uncle sent us an ..... to his wedding.
.....	يكمل	4. The ..... destroyed and burned their house.
.....	مخيف	5. Ahmed Zaki is the ..... of this film.
.....	يعيد تدوير	6. Our teacher asked us to ..... the sentences with the correct words.
.....	حرائق	

or

Model B

Write the meaning		Complete
Lessons 1 & 2		
.....	فخار/ صلصال	1. We went to the ..... to watch the new show.
.....	فن الخط	2. Actors wear special ..... for the show.
.....	رأى/ وجهة نظر	3. My teacher uses ..... to decorate our classroom walls.
.....	أزياء مناسبات خاصة	4. What's your point of ..... about technology ?
.....	يزكى / يوصى	5. They use ..... to make pots and vases.
.....	آلة موسيقية	6. I ..... the new restaurant for having lunch.
.....	مسرح	
Lessons 3 & 4		
.....	موسيقار	1. I was ..... when I got the best marks in the class.
.....	يتخيل	2. I ..... why the dog hides its food.
.....	فخور	3. He's ....., he can't see the traffic lights.
.....	أعمى	4. Can you ..... how life will be in 2030 ?
.....	يتساءل - يتعجب	5. My grandpa reads the ..... to know everyday news.
.....	إشارة المرور	6. When the ..... is green, it is safe to cross the road.
.....	جريدة	
Lessons 5 & 6		
.....	طلب	1. Kids like to play different games at the ..... .
.....	مدينة ملاهى	2. My father refused my ..... to go to the cinema.
.....	مغامرة	3. Our visit to the desert was an exciting ..... .
.....	حفلة	4. I feel afraid when the plane ..... .
.....	يهبط	5. The little rabbits are ..... in a hole underground.
.....	تلاميذ	6. The ..... wear the school uniform every day.
.....	مخبأ - مخفى	

2 Dictation on Unit 9

٢. إملاء على الوحدة بالكامل

1. Write the meaning of these words.

.....	لوحة فنية	sculpture	.....
.....	فرقة موسيقية	proud	.....
.....	التمثيل	act	.....
.....	ناقد أدبى	escape	.....
.....	مهارات	calligraphy	.....
.....	مخيف	pottery	.....
.....	يحضن	actions	.....
.....	يعيد تدوير	relationship	.....
.....	بحذر	theme park	.....
.....	كرسى متحرك	concert	.....

2. Read and complete the conjugation.

Present	Past	P.P.
.....	learned	learned
sew	.....	sewn
.....	fell	fallen
pay	.....	paid
.....	left	left

3. Listen, repeat and write.

يقوم المعلم بقراءة بعض الكلمات من الوحدة ليستمع إليها الطالب ويرددها ثم يكتبها داخل الجدول.

ORAL TEST

1.	5. .....
2.	6. .....
3.	7. .....
4.	8. .....

4. Read and match.

1	deaf
2	adventure
3	view
4	disabled
5	script
6	clarinet
7	pottery
8	actions
9	costume
10	adventure film

- ☐ not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can
- ☐ the things that happen in a film
- ☐ a film that has a lot of exciting events
- ☐ an exciting and sometimes dangerous experience
- ☐ things that are made from clay, such as cups and plates
- ☐ your opinion about something
- ☐ clothes that you wear to look like someone or something else
- ☐ the words for a film or a play which the actors learn
- ☐ a musical instrument that you play by blowing into it and pressing metal keys
- ☐ not able to hear

5. Read and complete (synonyms / antonyms).

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
international	.....	ancient	.....
amazing	.....	dark	.....
horrible	.....	escape	.....
difficult	.....	special	.....
busy	.....	interesting	.....

6. Read and complete (prefixes / suffixes).

Prefix / Suffix	Meaning	Prefix / Suffix	Meaning
..... cycle	يعيد تصنيع	art.....	فنان
writ.....	كاتب	recent.....	حديثاً
colour.....	ملون	classic.....	تقليدى/كلاسيكى
music.....	موسيقار	relation.....	علاقة/صلة

UNIT 10

1 Dictation on Lessons

١. إملاء على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Model A

Write the meaning		Complete
		Lessons 1 & 2
.....	مناخ	1. Zebra's skin is ..... with black and white.
.....	أنيق - مهندم	2. The ..... is the weather in an area over a long period.
.....	مخطط	
.....	عقد	3. She puts on a ..... on her head.
.....	حجاب الرأس	4. The teacher is always ..... I like his style.
.....	صوف	5. The jumper is made of ..... .
.....	معدن	6. You can't break the key. It is made of ..... .
		Lessons 3 & 4
.....	محاصيل	1. The factory ..... children's clothes.
.....	ينتج	2. Cotton is a very ..... material.
.....	مثالى/كامل	3. Teddy bear is my sister's favourite ..... .
.....	ناعم	4. " ..... " means very good.
.....	مواد كيميائية	5. Cotton is one of the famous ..... in Egypt.
.....	لعبة	6. Water the ..... to grow to big trees.
.....	نباتات	
		Lessons 5 & 6
.....	سعر	1. Drinking milk is ..... for your bones and teeth.
.....	زبون	
.....	مفيد	2. The ..... of the bag is 100 pounds .
.....	يناسب/يلائم	3. The mechanic needs his ..... to fix cars .
.....	محل	4. I buy my clothes from a small ..... in Cairo.
.....	أدوات	5. The shoes ..... me. I'll take them.
.....	يتأكد / يفحص	6. The ..... paid the money but forgot his bag at the shop.

or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete**

Lessons 1 & 2

..... بلوڤر
..... حجم/مقاس
..... تقليدى
..... حذاء رياضى
..... حلق
..... يحمى
..... بلاستيك

1. She wears a beautiful pair of ..... on her ears.
2. I wear a woolen ..... when it's very cold.
3. Sunglasses ..... your eyes from sunshine.
4. I need a medium ..... shirt, please.
5. Galabeya is a ..... type of clothes in Egypt.
6. He always wears his ..... when he goes running.

Lessons 3 & 4

..... يستعير
..... البيئة
..... حفل زفاف
..... يقطف
..... عناية
..... زى مدرسى
..... تربة زراعية

1. Fill the pot with ..... to plant a seed.
2. I take ..... of my little sister when mom is out.
3. You can ..... books from the library for a week.
4. We should keep the ..... where we live clean.
5. Students wear the ..... at school.
6. I will ..... a flower from the garden.

Lessons 5 & 6

..... خزانة ذات أدراج
..... حجرة تغيير الملابس
..... بائع فى محل
..... إعلان
..... حقيبة يد
..... جميل
..... واجهة المحل

1. Women always carry a ..... full of things.
2. You should try on the dress in the ..... before you buy it.
3. I read a / an ..... about a hotel for dogs in the newspaper.
4. I'll buy the dress that I saw in the glass .....
5. I have a ..... full of my clothes.
6. Ahmed is a ..... in a big supermarket.

2 Dictation on Unit 10

٢. إملاء على الوحدة بالكامل

1. Write the meaning of these words.

.....	زبون	industry	.....
.....	تربة زراعية	useful	.....
.....	مناخ	crops	.....
.....	بنطلون	advert	.....
.....	تقليدى	wedding	.....
.....	لعبة	price	.....
.....	ملون	care	.....
.....	حزام	soft	.....
.....	غير رسمى	statue	.....
.....	بائع فى محل	occasion	.....

2. Read and complete the conjugation.

Present	Past	P.P.
sell	.....	sold
break off	.....	broken off
.....	gave	given
take	.....	taken
.....	wrote	written

3. Listen, repeat and write.

يقوم المعلم بقراءة بعض الكلمات من الوحدة ليستمع إليها الطالب ويرددها ثم يكتبها داخل الجدول.

ORAL TEST

1.	5. .....
2.	6. .....
3.	7. .....
4.	8. .....

4. Read and match.

1	chemical
2	trainers
3	environment
4	linen
5	fit
6	sunglasses
7	smart
8	luxury
9	sandals
10	try on

- ☐ put on a piece of clothing to check if it fits you or if you like it
- ☐ be the correct size or shape for someone or something
- ☐ expensive and good quality
- ☐ something produced by a scientific process
- ☐ the people and things around you in your life
- ☐ looking clean and tidy
- ☐ dark glasses that you wear to protect your eyes from the sun
- ☐ light, comfortable shoes that people usually wear for sport
- ☐ open shoes that you usually wear in warm weather
- ☐ a strong material made from part of the flax plant

5. Read and complete (synonyms / antonyms).

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
new	.....	borrow	.....
useful	.....	near	.....
pretty	.....	similar	.....
soft	.....	expensive	.....
important	.....	loose	.....

6. Read and complete (prefixes / suffixes).

Prefix / Suffix	Meaning	Prefix / Suffix	Meaning
wood.....	خشبى	strip.....	مخطط
comfort.....	مريح	quick.....	بسرعة
informa.....	معلومات	perfect.....	بطريقة مثالية
relax.....	مسترخى - مستريح	wool.....	مصنوع من الصوف

UNIT 11

1 Dictation on Lessons

١. إملاء على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Model A

Write the meaning	Complete
Lessons 1 & 2	
..... حل	1. Villagers keep birds like ducks on the ..... .
..... عاصفة	2. Plants need ....., soil and water to grow.
..... فيضان	3. The city is full of water from the ..... .
..... يذوب - ينصهر	4. What's the best ..... for this problem ?
..... صياد	5. The ..... catch the birds with a net.
..... ضوء الشمس	6. Ice ..... when you heat it.
..... سطح [المنزل]	
Lessons 3 & 4	
..... شعب مرجانية	1. Water is a ....., but ice is solid.
..... حماية - حفاظ	2. I ..... home from school at 3:00.
..... يعود - يرجع	3. Put the ..... in the soil and water it daily.
..... محيط	4. I sent a /an ..... to my friend on his mobile phone.
..... رسالة نصية	5. I like watching the beautiful ..... when I go diving.
..... بذرة	6. Whales live in the ..... not in the river.
..... سائل	
Lessons 5 & 6	
..... درجة الحرارة	1. ..... is an exciting sport, but it is scary.
..... منشفة	2. I called my friend, but he didn't ..... .
..... صيد السمك	3. They found the ..... of an old city underground.
..... بقايا - أطلال	4. I feel hot. What's the ..... today ?
..... القفز بالحبال	5. Take a ..... to dry your body when you go swimming.
..... يشعر بالملل	6. I go ..... with my father in the Rea Sea.
..... يرد	

or

Model B

Write the meaning		Complete
		Lessons 1 & 2
.....	توربينات الرياح	1. The ..... makes the land dry.
.....	منبه	2. We use the ..... to wash our clothes.
.....	يعيد استخدام	3. The ..... was busy, so I arrived late.
.....	حيوانات صحراوية	4. We use ..... to turn wind energy into electricity.
.....	غسالة	
.....	حركة المرور	5. I wake up when I hear the ..... at 7 am.
.....	جفاف	6. Snakes are ..... that can live in hot desert.
		Lessons 3 & 4
.....	سلحفاة	1. I put my clothes in a ..... when I travel.
.....	جهاز التحكم عن بعد	2. You can control the drone with the ..... .
.....	غابة	3. Dead animals' bodies ..... in a few days.
.....	متطوع	4. Parents wait their children at the school ..... .
.....	حقيبة سفر	
.....	يتحلل	5. The ..... has a hard shell on its back.
.....	بوابة	6. My brother is a ..... in the children's hospital.
		Lessons 5 & 6
.....	مراقبة النجوم	1. The cat was ..... when she saw a big dog.
.....	التزحلق على الرمال	2. Egypt has a long ..... which dates back to the Pharaohs.
.....	دقائق	3. I ..... my grandparents. I didn't visit them 3 months ago.
.....	خائف	
.....	غروب الشمس	4. The sand here is soft. Let's try ..... .
.....	يفتقد	5. I like ..... when the sky is clear at night.
.....	تاريخ	6. They like to watch the ..... on the mountain.

2 Dictation on Unit 11

٢. إملاء على الوحدة بالكامل

1. Write the meaning of these words.

.....	فيضان	snorkel	.....
.....	بكتيريا	invention	.....
.....	يتحلل	scary	.....
.....	صديقة للبيئة	install	.....
.....	عاصفة	rock climbing	.....
.....	القفز بالحبال	system	.....
.....	معدات	wind turbines	.....
.....	شعاب مرجانية	volunteer	.....
.....	نوايا	drone	.....
.....	حركة المرور	reuse	.....

2. Read and complete the conjugation.

Present	Past	P.P.
get off	.....	got off
.....	lent	lent
ring	.....	rung
.....	fell down	fallen down
throw away	.....	thrown away

3. Listen, repeat and write.

يقوم المعلم بقراءة بعض الكلمات من الوحدة ليستمع إليها الطالب ويرددها ثم يكتبها داخل الجدول.

ORAL TEST

1.	5. .....
2.	6. .....
3.	7. .....
4.	8. .....

4. Read and match.

1	install
2	star gazing
3	control
4	green
5	conservation
6	reduce
7	sunset
8	wind turbines
9	location
10	filters

- ☐ equipment that uses the wind to make electricity
- ☐ the protection of natural things such as forests, birds, and animals
- ☐ tools that take things out of liquids such as water
- ☐ to look at the stars in the sky as a hobby
- ☐ the time in the evening when you last see the sun in the sky
- ☐ it doesn't damage the environment
- ☐ the place or position of a particular area of land
- ☐ put a piece of equipment somewhere and make it ready to use
- ☐ make something become less smaller in amount or size
- ☐ make a person, organisation or object do what you want

5. Read and complete (synonyms / antonyms).

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
fresh	.....	free	.....
save	.....	dirty	.....
remote	.....	exciting	.....
problem	.....	drought	.....
reduce	.....	older	.....

6. Read and complete (prefixes / suffixes).

Prefix / Suffix	Meaning	Prefix / Suffix	Meaning
..... cycle	يعيد تدوير	hunt	صياد
natur	طبيعى	scar	مخيف
beginn	مبتدئ	environment	بيئى
actual	فى الحقيقة	..... use	يعيد استخدام

UNIT 12

1 Dictation on Lessons

١. إملاء على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Model A

Write the meaning		Complete
		Lessons 1 & 2
.....	يصلح	1. I want to study history in Cairo ..... .
.....	حلم	2. You can use the ..... to translate from English into Arabic.
.....	تجارب علمية	3. ..... the correct answer.
.....	جامعة	4. The mechanic can ..... cars.
.....	يختار	5. Scientists do ..... in the laboratory.
.....	أصوات	6. I hear strange ..... in the cave.
.....	قاموس	
		Lessons 3 & 4
.....	ينسخ - يقلد	1. ..... make honey.
.....	يتواصل	2. We use English to ..... with tourists .
.....	اللغة الأم	3. They speak ..... in Italy.
.....	أستاذ جامعى	4. Dr Adel works as a ..... in Ain Shams University.
.....	نحل	5. Parrots try to ..... your voice.
.....	مرعوب	6. Arabic is the ..... in Egypt.
.....	اللغة الإيطالية	
		Lessons 5 & 6
.....	تعليق	1. The pen is ..... . I can't write with it.
.....	جنسية	2. When I like a post on Facebook, I write a ..... .
.....	يتأكد - يتحقق	3. A / An ..... is aged from 13 to 19 years.
.....	مكسور	4. What's your ..... ? - Egyptian.
.....	متطوع	5. ..... your spelling before you send a message.
.....	كتب مدرسية	6. He is a ..... . He helps them for free.
.....	مراهق	

or

Model B

Write the meaning		Complete
Lessons 1 & 2		
.....	معمل	1. I think it will rain, it's ..... .
.....	وقت الفراغ	2. Teachers try to help ..... to study.
.....	متعلمين	3. I 'll travel to Alexandria if I ..... my exams.
.....	محبط	
.....	يجتاز - ينجح	4. We do experiments in the ..... .
.....	ملبد بالغيوم	5. I read stories in my ..... .
.....	اتجاهات	6. She was ..... when she lost her job.
Lessons 3 & 4		
.....	تعبيرات الوجه	1. The garden looks ..... . I love it.
.....	صوت [بشرى]	2. Cotton is a ..... crop. We grow it here.
.....	متعدد اللغات	3. He looks sad. I know from his ..... .
.....	محلى - قومى	4. I ..... it is right to tell the truth.
.....	ملعب	5. This singer has a beautiful ..... .
.....	فاتن - جميل	6. They 're ..... because they can speak three languages.
.....	يعتقد	
Lessons 5 & 6		
.....	يدير	1. The fire makes a lot of ..... in the air.
.....	جدول مواعيد	2. The manager is the person who ..... the factory.
.....	وحيد	
.....	منظم	3. Look at the ..... to know when the train to Aswan leaves.
.....	الأثاث	
.....	يدخن - دخان	4. He was ....., no one lived with him .
.....	ودود	5. The carpenter uses wood to make ..... for houses.
		6. Ali is always ..... with me.

2 Dictation on Unit 12

٢. إملاء على الوحدة بالكامل

1. Write the meaning of these words.

connect	.....	.....	يحسن - يتحسن
instructions	.....	.....	خبير
communicate	.....	.....	التواصل البصرى
summarise	.....	.....	جدول مواعيد
experiment	.....	.....	معمل
disappointed	.....	.....	متطوع
body language	.....	.....	جامعة
achieve	.....	.....	يراجع
identity	.....	.....	متعدد اللغات
dream	.....	.....	فخور

2. Read and complete the conjugation.

Present	Past	P.P.
.....	told	told
hear	.....	heard
.....	meant	meant
spell	.....	spelled / spelt
cut down	.....	cut down

3. Listen, repeat and write.

يقوم المعلم بقراءة بعض الكلمات من الوحدة ليستمع إليها الطالب ويرددها ثم يكتبها داخل الجدول.

ORAL TEST

1.	5. .....
2.	6. .....
3.	7. .....
4.	8. .....

4. Read and match.

1	expert
2	explain
3	improve
4	connect
5	pass
6	proud
7	identities
8	advantage
9	volunteer
10	dialect

- ☐ make something clear or easy to understand by giving reasons for it
- ☐ feeling happy because you or people you know have done something well
- ☐ someone who has a lot of skills in or knowledge about something
- ☐ something good about a situation that helps you
- ☐ a form of language that people speak in a particular part of a country
- ☐ to get better at something
- ☐ a person who helps others without getting anything in return
- ☐ the qualities that make you different to other people
- ☐ join two things or places together
- ☐ be successful in a test or exam

5. Read and complete (synonyms / antonyms).

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
repair	.....	pass	.....
national	.....	known	.....
true	.....	cloudy	.....
personal	.....	possible	.....
friendly	.....	learn	.....

6. Read and complete (prefixes / suffixes).

Prefix / Suffix	Meaning	Prefix / Suffix	Meaning
person.....	شخصى	.....connected	غير متصل
communicat.....	اتصال - تواصل	Europe.....	أوربى الجنسية
.....lingual	ثنائى اللغة	disappoint.....	محبط
portugu.....	برتغالى الجنسية	manag.....	مدير

Part 2

Accumulative Assessments on Dictation

تدريب تراكمى على الإملاء

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Unit 7

Model A

translate .....
speed .....
screen .....
businesses .....
health .....
..... يأمر - يطلب
..... يتلف - يدمر
وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
.....
..... اختراع
..... بحث

or

Model B

headphones .....
motorbike .....
wings .....
lever .....
dangers .....
..... كهرباء
ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
.....
..... آلة
..... حاسة السمع
..... مناقشة - مناظرة

Units 7 & 8

Model A

wheel .....
addicted .....
snack .....
benefits .....
horrible .....
..... يرسل رسالة نصية
..... وجبات سريعة
..... متصل بالإنترنت
..... خبير
..... يتذوق

or

Model B

website .....
share .....
spicy .....
injured .....
heat .....
..... يستكشف
..... الفضاء
..... لغة
..... طاقة
..... يجرب - يحاول

Units 7,8 & 9

Model A

delivery .....
oven .....
bones .....
scenery .....
proud .....
..... وصفة طهى
..... نتائج
..... سبانخ
..... فن النحت
..... يهرب

or

Model B

push .....
choice .....
allergic .....
orchestra .....
sense .....
..... يتنبأ
..... نوع
..... عنب
..... يسترخى
..... نص سيناريو

Units 7,8,9&10

Model A

crops	.....
industry	.....
wish	.....
view	.....
advice	.....
.....	واسع - فضفاض
.....	موقف
.....	حزام
.....	أجهزة الإنسان الآلى
.....	تعليمات

or

Model B

customer	.....
linen	.....
deaf	.....
humans	.....
perfect	.....
.....	غرفة تغيير الملابس
.....	يتسوق
.....	إعاقة
.....	أرض
.....	موسيقار

Units 7,8,9,10&11

Model A

solution	.....
wildlife	.....
system	.....
chemicals	.....
parents	.....
.....	معدات
.....	اختراع
.....	تلوث
.....	يلقى - يسقط
.....	كمية - مقدار

or

Model B

pollution	.....
roof	.....
hunter	.....
wonder	.....
serve	.....
.....	مرشح - مصفاة
.....	يتحلل
.....	شعاب مرجانية
.....	إعلان
.....	مدينة ملاهى

Units 7,8,9,10,11&12

Model A

jewellery	.....
suitcase	.....
flood	.....
invent	.....
balanced diet	.....
.....	صناعة
.....	جفاف
.....	معمل
.....	نوع
.....	معطف

or

Model B

university	.....
wind turbines	.....
surprise	.....
upset	.....
artist	.....
.....	التواصل البصرى
.....	محبط
.....	تلوث
.....	حركة المرور
.....	صناعة الأوانى الفخارية

1. Mini-tests on each two units. ١. اختبارات مصغرة على كل وحدتين.

Mini-Test on Units 7 & 8

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. What do you ..... about the weather tomorrow ?
   a. respect b. predict c. suspect d. object
2. Sometimes, I wear my ..... to listen to music.
   a. machine b. radio
   c. phones d. headphones
3. I'd like to ..... time with my friends.
   a. owe b. use c. stay d. spend
4. I don't put any salt in my food because I don't like ..... food.
   a. salty b. tasty c. juicy d. delicious
5. If you eat something hot and ....., it hurts your mouth.
   a. delicious b. sweet c. healthy d. spicy
6. I also eat ..... healthy snacks.
   a. much b. a few c. a little d. lot

Mini-Test on Units 9 & 10

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Things that are made from clay, such as cups and plates are called ..... .
   a. portraits b. reviews
   c. potteries d. messages
2. A/An ..... is a person who paints or draws for a job.
   a. doctor b. artist c. firefighter d. guide
3. Ali ..... surf well, he is still learning to do it.
   a. can b. can't c. able to d. should
4. ..... are open shoes that you wear in hot weather.
   a. Boots b. Trainers
   c. Sunglasses d. Sandals
5. Could you put new ..... on the bed ?
   a. earrings b. sheets
   c. scarves d. sunglasses
6. We went to the island in a ..... boat.
   a. long, old, wooden b. long, wooden, old
   c. old, wooden, long d. old, long, wooden

Mini-Test on Units 7 & 8

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She drinks ..... water.
   a. lots b. a few c. a little d. many
2. Eating ..... fish makes you strong.
   a. a lot of b. an c. any d. lots
3. Putting too much sugar makes food ..... .
   a. hot b. sweet c. spicy d. salty
4. ..... are like planes, but they don't have wings.
   a. Skyscrapers b. Rocks
   c. Airplanes d. Helicopters
5. She ..... be able to jump very high as she is too lazy.
   a. will b. won't
   c. should d. could
6. I will do all my shopping online ..... I'm older.
   a. why b. when c. where d. how

Mini-Test on Units 11 & 12

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. People shouldn't drive ..... the nature reserves.
   a. for b. down c. of d. across
2. To ..... something means to make something less in amount or size.
   a. reduce b. produce
   c. introduce d. reuse
3. ..... in sunny countries help to produce electricity.
   a. Turbines b. Towers
   c. Solar panels d. Lunar panels
4. Watching foreign films helps you to ..... a language.
   a. watch b. see c. write d. practise
5. He felt ..... after he failed his exam.
   a. disappointed b. pleased
   c. hungry d. excited
6. Did you pass or ..... the exam ?
   a. succeed b. know c. fail d. feel

Mini-Test on Units 7, 8 & 9

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. ..... you have a headache, you should have a rest.
   a. By b. Before c. While d. If
2. Can you ..... this text into Arabic ?
   a. transport b. translate
   c. wait d. transform
3. I don't know ..... do my homework.
   a. who to b. how to
   c. what to d. how for
4. We should eat healthy food to get the ..... we need.
   a. juice b. energy c. diary d. speed
5. " ..... " is the opposite of "famous".
   a. Modern b. Unknown
   c. Known d. Awesome
6. Nour is able ..... the heavy box.
   a. carried b. carry
   c. carries d. to carry

Mini-Test on Units 7, 8, 9 & 10

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. What ..... if it rains ?
   a. would you do b. you will do
   c. could you do d. will you do
2. Please, help me. I don't know ..... to solve this problem.
   a. how b. what c. where d. who
3. The Ancient Egyptians wore ....., white linen clothes with a belt.
   a. electric b. loose
   c. heavy d. wooden
4. A/An ..... is a special event or ceremony.
   a. occasion b. climate
   c. jewellery d. accident
5. ..... is art made from stone or wood that looks like people, animals or other things.
   a. Pottery b. Sculpture
   c. Portrait d. Cartoon
6. ..... is a painting or photograph of a person's face.
   a. Pottery b. Portrait
   c. Sculpture d. Cartoon

Mini-Test on Units 7, 8, 9, 10 & 11

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. I can drive my car at the ..... of 100 km/h.
   a. space b. speed c. height d. width
2. Can you ..... this passage into Arabic ?
   a. translate b. transform
   c. transmit d. transport
3. Athletes need food that gives them ..... .
   a. energy b. allergy c. snacks d. juice
4. ..... means to know what something is when you put it in your mouth.
   a. Taste b. Smell
   c. Hurt d. Choose
5. ..... are pieces of jewellery that you wear on your ears.
   a. Necklaces b. Earrings
   c. Boots d. Trainers
6. She put her wallet in her ..... .
   a. belt b. handbag
   c. headscarf d. scarf

Mini-Test on Units 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 & 12

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. There's a/an ..... on this phone which tells me the weather in my city.
   a. app b. subject
   c. glass d. screen
2. I'm ..... to nuts, so I must be careful about what I eat.
   a. healthy b. allergic
   c. fast d. energetic
3. My mother's food is very ..... and healthy.
   a. delicious b. spicy
   c. salty d. terrible
4. He has got her phone number, so he ..... phone her.
   a. not able to b. can
   c. can't d. able to
5. What ..... you do yesterday ?
   a. were b. did c. do d. are
6. She ..... her aunt next Friday.
   a. helps b. is helped
   c. will help d. helping

EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

New Hello!
SECOND TERM

INTERACTIVE
Homework Notebook

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية
للواجب المنزلى
تُصرف مجانًا مع الكتاب

Your Guide to master your homework

الآن بالمكتبات

المعاصر فى...
- الرياضيات
- الكمبيوتر وتكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات

للمرحلة الإعدادية

FREE PART 1

GPS

AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com
15014 www.elmoasserbooks.com

/ ElMoasser.eg

6 223007 311335

New Hello! ENGLISH

By a group of supervisors

EL-MOASSER GUIDE

كراسة المعاصر
للمراجعة والاختبارات

A WEEK IS ENOUGH

FREE PART 2



2nd Prep.
2025
SECOND TERM

الصف الثانى الإعدادى
الفصل الدراسى الثانى

New Hello!

ENGLISH

By a group of supervisors

EL-MOASSER

GUIDE

كـــراســـة المعـــاصر
للمراجـعة والاخـتبارات

A WEEK IS ENOUGH

FREE PART 2



GPS

2025

2nd Prep.

SECOND TERM

AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com
15014 www.elmoasserbooks.com

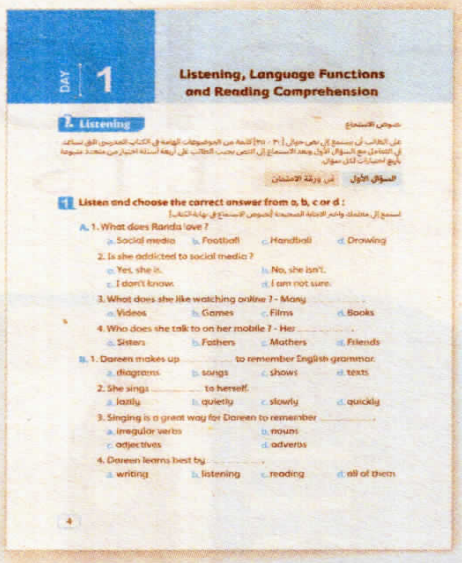
A WEEK IS ENOUGH

(الامتحان بين يديك)



اليوم الأول

Listening, Language Functions and Reading Comprehension



DAY 1

Listening, Language Functions and Reading Comprehension

1. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

A. 1. What does Randa love ?
a. Social media b. Football c. Handball d. Drawing

2. Is she addicted to social media ?
a. Yes, she is. b. No, she isn't.
c. I don't know. d. I am not sure.

3. What does she like watching online ? - Many ....
a. Videos b. Games c. Films d. Books

4. Who does she talk to on her mobile ? - Her ....
a. Sisters b. Fathers c. Mothers d. Friends

B. 1. Dareen makes up ..... to remember English grammar.
a. diagrams b. songs c. shows d. texts

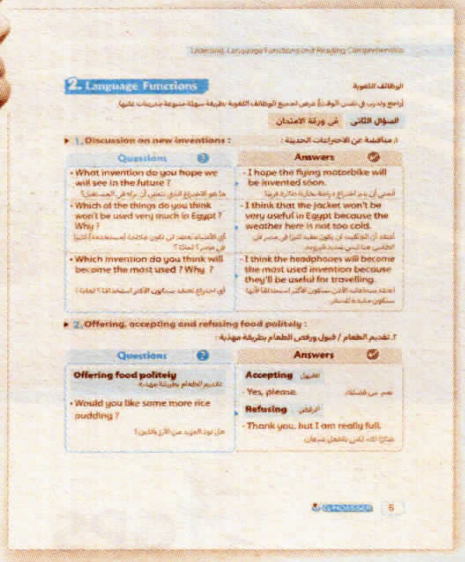
2. She sings ..... to herself.
a. lazily b. quietly c. slowly d. quickly

3. Singing is a great way for Dareen to remember .....
a. irregular verbs b. nouns
c. adjectives d. adverbs

4. Dareen learns best by .....
a. writing b. listening c. reading d. all of them

4

عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على أفضل درجة فى سؤال الاستماع فى الامتحان.



2. Language Functions

2 Discussion on new inventions :

Questions	Answers
• What invention do you hope we will see in the future ?	- I hope the flying motorbike will be invented soon.
• Which of the things do you think won't be used very much in Egypt ? Why ?	- I think that the jacket won't be very useful in Egypt because the weather here is not too cold.
• Which invention do you think will become the most used ? Why ?	- I think the headphones will become the most used invention because they'll be useful for travelling.

2 Offering, accepting and refusing food politely :

Questions	Answers
Offering food politely	**Accepting**
• Would you like some more rice pudding ?	- Yes, please.
	Refusing
	- Thank you, but I am really full.

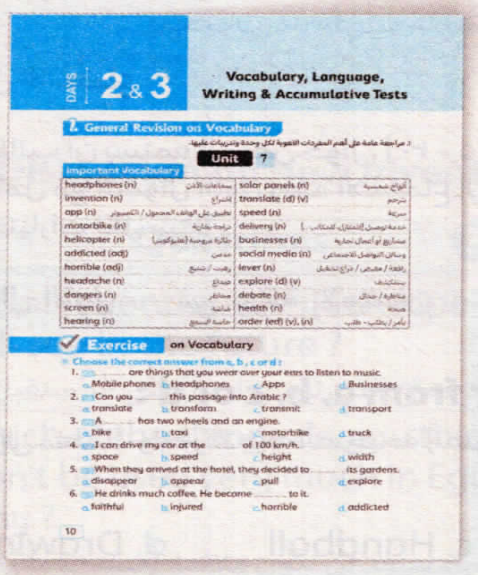
5

عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على أفضل درجة فى سؤال الوظائف اللغوية و قطع الفهم فى الامتحان.

مراجعة على المنهج بالكامل والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد فقط

اليوم الثانى والثالث

Vocabulary, Language, Writing & Accumulative Tests


DAYS 2 & 3

Vocabulary, Language, Writing & Accumulative Tests

1 General Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 7

Important Vocabulary

headphones (n)	سماعات الأذن	solar panels (n)	ألواح شمسية
invention (n)	اختراع	translate (d) (v)	يترجم
app (n)	تطبيق على الهاتف المحمول / الكمبيوتر	speed (n)	سرعة
motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية	delivery (n)	خدمة توصيل للمنتجات للمكاتب
helicopter (n)	طائرة مروحية (هليكوبتر)	businesses (n)	مصانع أو أعمال تجارية
addicted (adj)	مدمن	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
horrible (adj)	رهيب / شنيع	lever (n)	رافعة / مقبض / ذراع لتشغيل
headache (n)	صداع	explore (d) (v)	يستكشف
dangers (n)	مخاطر	debate (n)	مناظرة / جدال
screen (n)	شاشة	health (n)	صحة
hearing (n)	حاسة السمع	order (ed) (v), (n)	يأمر / يكلف - طلب

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

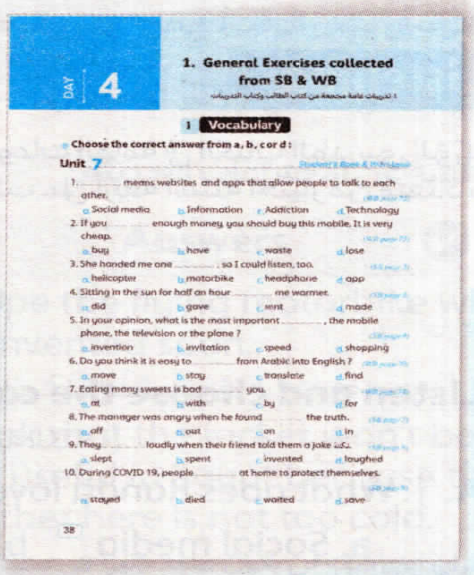
1. ..... are things that you wear over your ears to listen to music.
   a. Mobile phones b. Headphones c. Apps d. Businesses
2. Can you ..... this passage into Arabic ?
   a. translate b. transform c. transmit d. transport
3. A ..... has two wheels and an engine.
   a. bike b. taxi c. motorbike d. truck
4. I can drive my car at the ..... of 100 km/h.
   a. space b. speed c. height d. width
5. When they arrived at the hotel, they decided to ..... its gardens.
   a. disappear b. appear c. pull d. explore
6. He drinks much coffee. He became ..... to it.
   a. faithful b. injured c. horrible d. addicted

10

- مراجعة على أهم المفردات اللغوية والقواعد اللغوية والفقرات الإنشائية ورسائل البريد الإلكترونى الهامة التى وردت فى المنهج.
- اختبار على كل ثلاث وحدات.

اليوم الرابع

General Exercises Collected from (SB & WB) and End of Term Practice


DAY 4

1. General Exercises collected from SB & WB

1 Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Unit 7

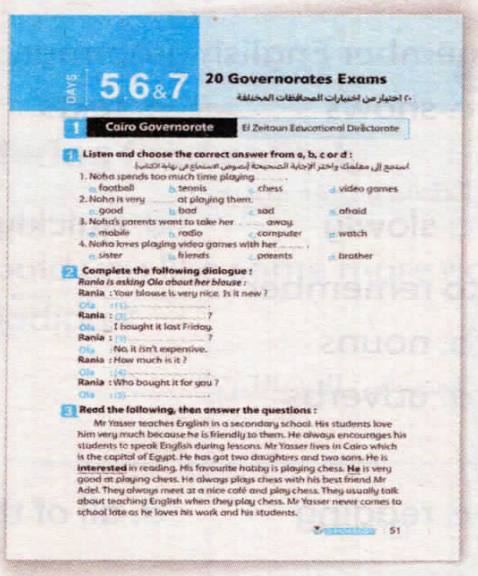
1. ..... means websites and apps that allow people to talk to each other.
   a. Social media b. Information c. Addiction d. Technology
2. If you ..... enough money, you should buy this mobile. It is very cheap.
   a. buy b. have c. waste d. lose
3. She handed me one ..... so I could listen, too.
   a. helicopter b. motorbike c. headphone d. app
4. Sitting in the sun for half an hour ..... me warmer.
   a. did b. gave c. sent d. made
5. In your opinion, what is the most important ....., the mobile phone, the television or the plane ?
   a. invention b. invitation c. speed d. shopping
6. Do you think it is easy to ..... from Arabic into English ?
   a. move b. stay c. translate d. find
7. Eating many sweets is bad ..... you.
   a. at b. with c. by d. for
8. The manager was angry when he found ..... the truth.
   a. off b. out c. on d. in
9. They ..... loudly when their friend told them a joke.
   a. slept b. spent c. invented d. laughed
10. During COVID 19, people ..... at home to protect themselves.
    a. stayed b. died c. waited d. save

38

- تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات على كل أنماط أسئلة الورقة الامتحانية.
- اختبار نهاية الفصل الدراسى من كتاب التدريبات.

اليوم الخامس والسادس والسابع

Governorates Exams


DAYS 5 & 6 & 7

20 Governorates Exams

1 Cairo Governorate — El Zeitoun Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Noha spends too much time playing .....
   a. football b. tennis c. chess d. video games
2. Noha is very ..... at playing them.
   a. good b. bad c. sad d. afraid
3. Noha's parents went to take her ..... away.
   a. mobile b. radio c. computer d. watch
4. Noha loves playing video games with her .....
   a. sister b. friends c. parents d. brother

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rania is asking Ola about her blouse :

Rania : Your blouse is very nice. Is it new ?
Ola : (1) .....
Rania : (2) ..... ?
Ola : I bought it last Friday.
Rania : (3) ..... ?
Ola : No, it isn't expensive.
Rania : How much is it ?
Ola : (4) .....
Rania : Who bought it for you ?
Ola : (5) .....

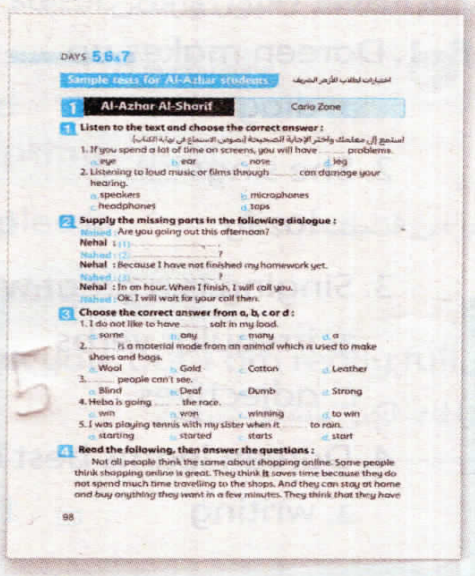
3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Mr Yasser teaches English in a secondary school. His students love him very much because he is friendly to them. He always encourages his students to speak English during lessons. Mr Yasser lives in Cairo which is the capital of Egypt. He has got two daughters and two sons. He is interested in reading. His favourite hobby is playing chess. He is very good at playing chess. He always plays chess with his best friend Mr Adel. They always meet at a nice café and play chess. They usually talk about teaching English when they play chess. Mr Yasser never comes to school late as he loves his work and his students.

51

- نماذج اختبارات من المحافظات المختلفة طبقًا لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢٥.

For Al-Azhar students & Inclusive students


DAYS 5 & 6 & 7

Sample tests for Al-Azhar students

1 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — Cairo Zone

1 Listen to the text and choose the correct answer :

1. If you spend a lot of time on screens, you will have ..... problems.
   a. eye b. ear c. nose d. leg
2. Listening to loud music or films through ..... can damage your hearing.
   a. speakers b. microphones c. headphones d. taps

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Mahad : Are you going out this afternoon?
Nehal : (1) .....
Mahad : (2) ..... ?
Nehal : Because I have not finished my homework yet.
Mahad : (3) ..... ?
Nehal : In an hour. When I finish, I will call you.
Mahad : Ok. I will wait for your call then.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I do not like to have ..... salt in my food.
   a. some b. any c. many d. a
2. ..... is a material made from an animal which is used to make shoes and bags.
   a. Wool b. Gold c. Cotton d. Leather
3. ..... people can't see.
   a. Blind b. Deaf c. Dumb d. Strong
4. Heba is going ..... the race.
   a. win b. won c. winning d. to win
5. I was playing tennis with my sister when it ..... to rain.
   a. starting b. started c. starts d. start

4 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Not all people think the same about shopping online. Some people think shopping online is great. They think it saves time because they do not spend much time travelling to the shops. And they can stay at home and buy anything they want in a few minutes. They think that they have

98

- جزء خاص لطلاب الأزهر وطلاب الدمج.
- اختبارات للأزهر الشريف.
- اختبارات لطلاب الدمج.

DAY 1

Listening, Language Functions and Reading Comprehension

Listening

نصوص الاستماع

على الطالب أن يستمع إلى نص حوالى [٣٠ - ٣٥] كلمة من الموضوعات الهامة فى الكتاب المدرسى التى تساعد فى التعامل مع السؤال الأول وبعد الاستماع إلى النص يجيب الطالب على أربعة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد متبوعة بأربع اختيارات لكل سؤال.

السؤال الأول فى ورقة الامتحان

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الاجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب]

A. 1. What does Randa love ?

a. Social media b. Football c. Handball d. Drawing

2. Is she addicted to social media ?

a. Yes, she is. b. No, she isn't.

c. I don't know. d. I am not sure.

3. What does she like watching online ? - Many ..... .

a. videos b. games c. films d. books

4. Who does she talk to on her mobile ? - Her ..... .

a. sisters b. fathers c. mothers d. friends

B. 1. Dareen makes up ..... to remember English grammar.

a. diagrams b. songs c. shows d. texts

2. She sings ..... to herself.

a. lazily b. quietly c. slowly d. quickly

3. Singing is a great way for Dareen to remember ..... .

a. irregular verbs b. nouns

c. adjectives d. adverbs

4. Dareen learns best by ..... .

a. writing b. listening c. reading d. all of them

2. Language Functions

الوظائف اللغوية

[راجع وتدرب فى نفس الوقت] عرض لجميع الوظائف اللغوية بطريقة سهلة متبوعة بتدريبات عليها.

السؤال الثانى فى ورقة الامتحان

1. Discussion on new inventions :

١. مناقشة عن الاختراعات الحديثة :

Questions	Answers
• What invention do you hope we will see in the future ? ما هو الاختراع الذى تتمنى أن نراه فى المستقبل؟	- I hope the flying motorbike will be invented soon. أتمنى أن يتم اختراع دراجة بخارية طائرة قريبًا.
• Which of the things do you think won't be used very much in Egypt ? Why ? أى الأشياء تعتقد لن تكون ملائمة [مستخدمة] كثيرًا فى مصر ؟ لماذا ؟	- I think that the jacket won't be very useful in Egypt because the weather here is not too cold. أعتقد أن الچاكيت لن يكون مفيد كثيرًا فى مصر لأن الطقس هنا ليس شديد البرودة.
• Which invention do you think will become the most used ? Why ? أى اختراع تعتقد سيكون الأكثر استخدامًا ؟ لماذا ؟	- I think the headphones will become the most used invention because they'll be useful for travelling. اعتقد سماعات الأذن ستكون الأكثر استخدامًا لأنها ستكون مفيدة للسفر.

2. Offering, accepting and refusing food politely :

٢. تقديم الطعام / قبول ورفض الطعام بطريقة مهذبة :

Questions	Answers
Offering food politely تقديم الطعام بطريقة مهذبة • Would you like some more rice pudding ? هل تود المزيد من الأرز باللبن ؟	**Accepting** القبول - Yes, please. نعم، من فضلك. **Refusing** الرفض - Thank you, but I am really full. شكرًا لك، لكنى بالفعل شبعان.

3. Talking about preferences : ٣. الحديث عن الأشياء المفضلة :

Questions	Answers
• What was your favourite thing in the museum ? ما هو الشيء الذى كان مفضل بالنسبة لك فى المتحف ؟	- My favourite thing in the museum was a painting called Al Madina by Mahmoud Said. كان أفضل شيء فى المتحف بالنسبة لى لوحة تسمى المدينة لفنان يسمى محمود سعيد.

4. Giving recommendations : ٤. إعطاء توصيات :

Questions	Answers
• Do you like the film of Oliver Twist ? هل تحب مشاهدة فيلم أوليفر تويست ؟	- I thought it was great. I recommend watching it. أعتقد أنه رائع. أوصيك بمشاهدته.

5. Discussing and describing clothes : ٥. مناقشة ووصف الملابس :

Questions	Answers
• How do you decide what to wear ? كيف تختار ما سترتدى ؟	- I like to wear casual clothes, because they're comfortable and make me feel relaxed. أفضل أن أرتدى ملابس غير رسمية لأنها مريحة وتجعلنى أشعر بالاسترخاء. - I like formal clothes because I like to look smart. أفضل ارتداء الملابس الرسمية لأننى أحب أن أبدو أنيق.
• Do you listen to the opinions of your friends and family about clothes ? هل تستمع إلى آراء أصدقائك وأفراد عائلتك بشأن ملابسك ؟	- Yes, I usually ask for their opinion because I like to be smart. نعم، عادة ما أستشيرهم لأننى أحب أن أبدو أنيق. - No, I usually choose my clothes by myself because I'd like to be comfortable. لا، عادة ما أختار ملابسى بمفردى لأننى أفضل أن أشعر بالراحة فى ملابسى.

▶ 6. Making predictions and future plans : ٦. تقديم تنبؤات وخطط مستقبلية :

Questions	Answers
• What are you going to do at the weekend ? ماذا ستفعل فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟	- I'm going to help my father. سوف أساعد والدى.
• Where are you going to go for your next holiday ? أين ستذهب فى عطلتك القادمة ؟	- I am going to go to Alexandria. سوف أذهب إلى مدينة الإسكندرية.
• Are you going to recycle your mobile phone when it's old ? هل سوف تعيد تصنيع هاتفك المحمول عندما يصبح قديمًا ؟	- Yes, I am going to recycle it to help the environment. نعم سأعيد تصنيعه لمساعدة البيئة. - No, I am going to have a new one. لا سوف أشترى هاتف محمول جديد.

▶ 7. Talking about learning styles : ٧. الحديث عن طرق [أساليب] التعلم :

Questions	Answers
• How do you prefer to learn ? What type of classes are your favourite ? كيف تفضل أن تتعلم ؟ ما نوع الدروس / الحصص المفضلة لك ؟	- I like to learn in different ways. I don't like always doing the same things. أحب التعليم بطرق مختلفة. لا احب فعل نفس الأشياء دائمًا. - I like classes when we get to do things and don't only listen or read. أحب الحصص التى نتعلم بها فعل الأشياء وليس فقط الاستماع والقراءة.
• What type of learning would you like to do more ? What would you like to do less ? أى نوع من أنواع التعلم تود أن تؤديه أكثر ؟ وما النوع الذى تود أن تقلل منه ؟	- I like to learn by seeing things; watching videos and looking at diagrams. أحب أن تعلم عن طريق رؤية الأشياء ومشاهدة الفيديوهات والنظر إلى الرسوم التوضيحية. - I like to learn less by listening. أحب أن أقلل التعلم باستخدام الاستماع.

⊙ Complete the following dialogue :

1 Huda wants to buy a new coat at the clothes shop.

Shop assistant : Can I help you ?
Huda : (1) ..... .
Shop assistant : (2) ..... ?
Huda : I'd like it medium, please.
Shop assistant : Medium! (3) ..... ?
Huda : I'd like red, please.
Shop assistant : Can you try these on ?
Huda : (4) ..... . Where is the changing room ?
Shop assistant : It's over there!
Huda : (5) ..... .

---

2 ***Samar and Aya are talking about their next weekend.***

Samar: Where will you spend your next weekend ?
Aya : (1) ..... .
Samar: Who will you go with ?
Aya : (2) ..... .
Samar: (3) ..... ?
Aya : We'll stay there for a week.
Samar: How will you go ?
Aya : (4) ..... . Do you like to come with us to Fatanas Island at Siwa ?
Samar: Yes, of course. (5) ..... ?
Aya : We can sit by the water and watch the sunset. It's very beautiful.

---

3 ***Salwa and Dalia are talking about lunch.***

Salwa: Hi, Dalia. How are you ?
Dalia : Hi, Salwa. I'm good. What about you ?
Salwa: (1) ..... . Where are you going ?
Dalia : I'm going to have my lunch. (2) ..... ?
Salwa: Yes, I'd love to. But (3) ..... ?
Dalia : I'm going to eat fish and rice.
Salwa: (4) ..... .
Dalia : Fried chicken ! It's delicious with salad. Let's have it.
Salwa: Which restaurant do you recommend ?
Dalia : (5) ..... .

3. Reading Comprehension

قطع الفهم

السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان

وهو عبارة عن قطعة فهم ويجيب الطالب على سؤالين اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل سؤال وأربعة أسئلة بأداة استفهام.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore **loose**, white, linen clothes with a belt. Most of the time, Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes but rich people sometimes wore expensive leather sandals. Children did not usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old. Then **they** started to wear the same clothes as their parents.

Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear heavy, metal jewellery. Rich Egyptians wore beautiful gold necklaces. Other people wore cheaper jewellery.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word **"loose"** is the opposite of ..... .
   a. heavy b. tight c. comfortable d. big
2. Children did not usually wear many clothes until the age of ..... .
   a. 5 b. 7 c. 6 d. 4

b. Answer the following questions :

3. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   .....
4. Do you think Ancient Egyptians' clothes look nice ?
   .....
5. What does the underlined pronoun **"they"** refer to ?
   .....
6. Who sometimes wore expensive leather sandals ?
   .....

DAYS 2 & 3

Vocabulary, Language, Writing & Accumulative Tests

1. General Revision on Vocabulary

١. مراجعة عامة على أهم المفردات اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدريبات عليها.

Unit 7

Important Vocabulary

headphones (n)	سماعات الأذن	solar panels (n)	ألواح شمسية
invention (n)	اختراع	translate (d) (v)	يترجم
app (n)	تطبيق على الهاتف المحمول / الكمبيوتر	speed (n)	سرعة
motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية	delivery (n)	خدمة توصيل [للمنازل، للمكاتب ...]
helicopter (n)	طائرة مروحية [هليوكوبتر]	businesses (n)	مشاريع أو أعمال تجارية
addicted (adj)	مدمن	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
horrible (adj)	رهيب / شنيع	lever (n)	رافعة / مقبض / ذراع تشغيل
headache (n)	صداع	explore (d) (v)	يستكشف
dangers (n)	مخاطر	debate (n)	مناظرة / جدال
screen (n)	شاشة	health (n)	صحة
hearing (n)	حاسة السمع	order (ed) (v), (n)	يأمر / يطلب - طلب

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. WB ..... are things that you wear over your ears to listen to music.
   a. Mobile phones b. Headphones c. Apps d. Businesses
2. SB Can you ..... this passage into Arabic ?
   a. translate b. transform c. transmit d. transport
3. WB A ..... has two wheels and an engine.
   a. bike b. taxi c. motorbike d. truck
4. SB I can drive my car at the ..... of 100 km/h.
   a. space b. speed c. height d. width
5. WB When they arrived at the hotel, they decided to ..... its gardens.
   a. disappear b. appear c. pull d. explore
6. WB He drinks much coffee. He became ..... to it.
   a. faithful b. injured c. horrible d. addicted

Unit 8

Important Vocabulary

snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة	salty (adj)	مالح
spicy (adj)	متبل [كثير التوابل]	energy (n)	طاقة
juicy (adj)	ملئ بالعصير	allergic (adj)	لديه حساسية
sweet (adj)	حلو المذاق	fast food (n)	وجبات سريعة
dairy products (n)	منتجات ألبان	recipe (n)	وصفة [طهى]
protein (n)	بروتين	sense (n)	حاسة
bones (n)	عظام	instructions (n)	تعليمات
unusual (adj)	غريب / غير مألوف	fresh (adj)	طازج
smell (ed) (v), (n)	يشم - رائحة	taste (d) (v), (n)	يتذوق - طعم / مذاق
diet (n)	نظام غذائى	conclusion (n)	خاتمة
balanced (adj)	متوازن	conclude (d) (v)	يختم / يستنتج
advice (n)	نصيحة	pepper (n)	فلفل
reason (n)	سبب / مبرر	spinach (n)	سبانخ
relax (ed) (v)	يسترخى	sweet potato (n)	بطاطا

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. WB Watermelon and oranges are ..... .
   a. juicy b. spicy c. salty d. tasteless
2. WB A ..... is a small amount of food eaten between meals.
   a. snail b. snake c. snack d. smoke
3. SB He doesn't eat any cakes because he is ..... to nuts.
   a. allergic b. usual c. delicious d. enough
4. SB I don't put any salt on mine because I don't like ..... food.
   a. balanced b. juicy c. sweet d. salty
5. SB We need ..... to have a strong body.
   a. fats b. proteins c. sense d. salt
6. WB We call food that are made from milk ..... .
   a. dairy products b. snack
   c. fast food d. diet

Unit 9

Important Vocabulary

scenery (n)	منظر طبيعى - خلفية المسرح	theme park (n)	مدينة ملاهى
script (n)	نص - سيناريو [فيلم أو مسرحية]	century (n)	قرن [١٠٠ سنة]
costumes (n)	أزياء المناسبات الخاصة	view (n)	رأى / وجهة نظر
make-up (n)	المكياج [فن التجميل]	sculpture	النحت - قطعة فنية منحوتة
show(ed) (v), (n)	يعرض / عرض	recommend (ed) (v)	يزكى - يوصى بـ
acting (n)	التمثيل	review (n)	مقال نقدى - نقد
musical instruments (n)	آلات موسيقية	pottery (n)	صناعة الأوانى الفخارية
cool (adj)	رائع	portrait (n)	صورة شخصية مرسومة
cartoons (n)	رسوم متحركة	wonder (ed) (v)	يتعجب - يتسائل
orchestra (n)	فرقة موسيقية	hide (v)	يختبىء
musician (n)	موسيقار	hug (ged) (v)	يحضن - يحتضن
radio reporter (n)	مراسل إذاعى	blind (n), (adj)	أعمى - كفيف
disabled (n) (adj)	عاجز - لديه إعاقة	deaf (n), (adj)	أصم
concert (n)	حفلة موسيقية	Braille (n)	طريقة برايل للمكفوفين
proud (adj)	فخور	action (n)	حدث [فى فيلم أو رواية]
invitation (n)	دعوة	adventure film (n)	فيلم مغامرات
request (n)	طلب	star (n)	نجم / ممثل مشهور
offer(ed)(v), (n)	يعرض - عرض	reviewer (n)	ناقد أدبى
escape (d) (v)	يهرب	invite (d) (v)	يدعو

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. WB My sister likes playing musical ..... .
   a.costumes b.instruments c.acts d.shows
2. SB I ..... you visit the Egyptian Museum when you go to downtown.
   a.take b.paint c.give d.recommend
3. SB I can talk to the people at drama club about ..... .
   a.painting b.drawing c.acting d.sewing
4. The children all wore funny ..... for the family party.
   a.costumes b.instruments c.sceneries d.scripts
5. Can you make a/an ..... about your visit to the Museum of Egyptian Modern Art ?
   a.review b.portrait c.interview d.view

Important Vocabulary — Unit 10

loose (adj)	واسع - فضفاض	try (ied) (v) on	يقيس [ملابس]
description (n)	وصف	striped (adj)	مخطط
size (n)	حجم - مقياس	climate (n)	مناخ
age (n)	عمر / سن	traditional (adj)	تقليدى
style (n)	طراز - أسلوب	casual (adj)	غير رسمى [ملابس]
describe (d)(v)	يصف	colourful (adj)	ملون
borrow (ed) (v)	يستعير	smart (adj)	أنيق / مهندم - ذكى
special occasion	مناسبة خاصة	industry (n)	صناعة
environment (n)	البيئة	perfect (adj)	مثالى - كامل
crops (n)	محاصيل [زراعية]	pick (ed) (v)	يقطف
luxury (n), (adj)	رفاهية - فاخر / فخم	soft (adj)	ناعم
chest of drawers (n)	خزانة ذات أدراج	customer (n)	زبون
price (n)	سعر	shopkeeper (n)	بائع فى محل
changing room (n)	حجرة تغيير الملابس	pretty (adj)	جميل
fit (ted) (v)	يلائم - يناسب	useful (adj)	مفيد
necklace	عقد	jumper	بلوفر

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. WB In winter, I usually wear heavy ..... .
   a. sunglasses b. trainers c. sandals d. jumpers
2. SB You have to choose good ..... to practise running.
   a. trains b. turns c. trainers d. slippers
3. WB ..... is a plant such as a fruit, rice or wheat grown in large amounts to be sold or eaten.
   a. Crop b. Group c. Planet d. Plane
4. WB ..... is a piece of jewellery, usually one of pair, worn in or on an ear.
   a. Ring b. Necklace c. Belt d. Earring
5. WB What ..... would you like ? – Large, please.
   a. colour b. size c. number d. material
6. SB Scientists can make ..... in laboratories.
   a. future b. quality c. chemicals d. industry
7. SB There are a lot of ..... in the supermarket as there's a sale.
   a. occasions b. conservation c. customers d. passengers

Unit 11

Important Vocabulary

wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية	save (d) (v)	يحافظ على - ينقذ
solar panels (n)	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	pollution (n)	التلوث
install (ed) (v)	يثبت - يركب	flood (n)	فيضان
reduce (d) (v)	يقلل - ينقص	safe (adj)	آمن
repair (ed) (v)	يصلح	intentions (n)	نوايا
wind turbine	توربينات الرياح	storm (n)	عاصفة
reuse (d) (v)	يعيد استخدام	happen (ed) (v)	يحدث
equipment (n)	معدات	solution (n)	حل
melt (ed) (v)	يذوب - ينصهر	hunter (n)	صياد
drought (n)	جفاف	system (n)	نظام
drone (n)	طائرة بلا طيار يمكن التحكم بها عن بعد	bacteria (n)	بكتيريا
conservation (n)	حفاظ - حماية	green system	نظام ملائم للبيئة
suitable (adj)	ملائم - مناسب	invent (ed) (v)	يخترع
chemicals (n)	مواد كيميائية	volunteer (n)	متطوع
trip (n)	رحلة قصيرة	land (n)	اليابس
forest (n)	غابة	suitcase (n)	حقيبة
filter (n)	مرشح - مصفاة	snorkel (led) (v)	يغطس بأنبوب التنفس
scary (adj)	مخيف	hot-air ballooning	ركوب منطاد الهواء الساخن
rock climbing	تسلق الصخور	bungee jumping	القفز من مكان عالى [مربوطًا بالحبال]
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	sandboarding (n)	التزحلق على الرمال

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. SB Hunters kill the desert animals, so there's much less ..... now.
   a. plants b. wildlife c. coral reefs d. troubles
2. SB ..... are planes without pilots.
   a. Boats b. Robots c. Rockets d. Drones
3. WB There's a ..... as it hasn't rained for a long time.
   a. cloud b. drought c. flood d. storm
4. SB We can ..... the plastic bottles again.
   a. reuse b. reduce c. turn d. save
5. SB The snow is going to ..... .
   a. mix b. freeze c. burn d. melt

Unit 12

Important Vocabulary

learner (n)	متعلم - دارس	future plans	خطط مستقبلية
mostly (adv)	فى الأغلب - عمومًا	disappointed (adj)	محبط
repair = fix (ed) (v)	يصلح	proud (adj)	فخور
choose (v)	يختار	summarise (d) (v)	يلخص
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح	pass (ed) (v)	يجتاز - ينجح فى
experiment (n)	تجربة علمية	achieve (d) (v)	يحقق - ينجز
laboratory (n)	معمل	dream (v), (n)	يحلم / حلم
body language	لغة الجسد	expert (n)	خبير
eye contact	التواصل البصرى [بالعين]	dialect (n)	لغة محلية - لهجة
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه	national (adj)	محلى - قومى
voice (n)	صوت [بشرى]	advantages (n)	مميزات
sound (n)	صوت [شىء]	identity (n)	هوية
copy (ied) (v)	ينسخ - يقلد	connect (ed) (v)	يربط - يصل
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل	community (n)	مجتمع
multilingual (adj)	متعدد اللغات	international (adj)	دولى - عالمى
improve (d) (v)	يحسن - يتحسن	broken (adj)	مكسور
plan (ned) (v) / (n)	يخطط / خطة	connected (adj)	متصل
manage (d) (v)	يدير - ينظم	organised (adj)	منظم
timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد	summer school	مدرسة صيفية
alone (adj), (adv)	وحيد - بمفرده	summer courses	مقررات تدريبية صيفية
check (ed) (v)	يتأكد - يتحقق - يراجع	volunteer (n)	متطوع

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. SB Some birds can ..... sounds.
   a. save b. copy c. text d. write
2. SB The ..... of people in Cairo is different from those in Upper Egypt.
   a. connection b. multilingual c. dialect d. language
3. WB When you talk to your parents, use soft ..... .
   a. sound b. voice c. identify d. contact
4. WB You should first look at the baby's facial ..... .
   a. contacts b. expressions c. sound d. voice
5. WB ..... means a good thing about something.
   a. Advantage b. Disadvantage c. Experience d. Business

2. General Revision on Language

٢. مراجعة عامة على أهم القواعد اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدريبات عليها.

Unit 7

If / When + should / shouldn't for advice

إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام **If / When + should / shouldn't**
بمعنى إذا / عندما ... ينبغى أن / ينبغى ألا ...

Formation التكوين

1. If / When (عندما - إذا / لو) + present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) , subject (الفاعل) + should + [inf.]..... (مصدر الفعل)

للنصح بفعل شئ جيد أو مفيد :

ex. You should eat healthy snacks if you feel hungry.

2. If / When (عندما - إذا / لو) + present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) , subject (الفاعل) + shouldn't + [inf.]..... (مصدر الفعل)

للنصح بعدم فعل أشياء غير مفيدة أو غير جيدة :

ex. When you go online, you shouldn't forget safety rules.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB I will do all my shopping online ..... I'm older.
   a. why b. when c. where d. how
2. WB People who are addicted to eating sweets should ..... eating fruits instead.
   a. try b. tried c. trying d. to try
3. SB If they don't change, maybe you ..... find some new friends.
   a. shouldn't b. don't c. wouldn't d. should

4. WB You shouldn't stay outside when it ..... .
   a. rains b. rain c. raining d. rained
5. SB If you don't know someone, you ..... make friends with them online.
   a. shouldn't b. would c. should d. couldn't

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. WB If Mona ..... (feel) ill, she should see a doctor.
2. SB If you have free time, you ..... (should) waste it.
3. WB When you ..... (not understand) the lesson, you should ask your teacher for help.
4. WB If there is a new student in the class, you should ..... (talks) to him.

Unit 8

a lot of, a little and a few

1 a lot of كثير من

+ countable noun اسم يعد

ex.- I have a lot of friends.

+ uncountable noun اسم لا يعد

ex. They ate a lot of pasta.

2 a little قليل من

تستخدم "a little" بمعنى [قليل من] قبل الأسماء التى لا تعد للتعبير عن كمية قليلة دون تحديدها :

ex. He has a little time for doing sport.

3 a few قليل من

تستخدم "a few" بمعنى [قليل من] قبل الأسماء التى تعد [اسم جمع] للتعبير عن عدد قليل دون تحديده :

ex. - They have a few seats left for the show.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB There is ..... petrol in this car. We need more for travelling.
   a. a little b. a lot c. a few d. any
2. SB Hana has only ..... flowers, she can't give you one.
   a. a few b. a lot c. any d. a little
3. WB There is ..... water in the big ocean.
   a. a little b. some c. any d. a lot of
4. SB Could I have ..... sugar for my tea, please ?
   a. a lot b. any c. a little d. a few
5. WB I would like to eat ..... biscuits for breakfast.
   a. a little b. a few c. a lot d. any

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. SB I eat ..... (a few) of rice and pasta.
2. WB They like ..... (a little) olives on their pizza.
3. WB My brother likes ..... (a few) milk in his tea.
4. SB If you want to be healthy, you should eat ..... (lots) fruit and vegetables.

Unit 9

Expressing ability and inability in the present
التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة فى المضارع

نستخدم can / can't + inf. للتعبير عن القدرة أو عدم القدرة للقيام بشىء ما فى المضارع.

1 Can يستطيع

Affirmative الإثبات → Subject الفاعل + can + inf. مصدر الفعل .
ex. - He can write stories.

Negative النفى → Subject الفاعل + can't + inf. مصدر الفعل .
ex. - She can't draw well.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام → Can + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?
ex. - Can they make a good play ?

تستخدم [know how to] للتحدث عن معرفة كيفية فعل شـيء ما.

2 know how to ... يعرف كيف

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject الفاعل + know / knows + how to + inf. مصدر الفعل .

ex. - I know how to catch fish.

Negative النفى

Subject الفاعل + don't / doesn't + know how to + inf. مصدر الفعل .

ex. - He doesn't know how to do a plan.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Do / Does + subject الفاعل + know how to + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?

ex. - Do you know how to ride a horse ?

تستخدم [be going to] للتعبير عن القدرة على فعل شـيء ما.

3 be able to يكون قادر على

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + able to قادراً على + inf. مصدر الفعل .

ex. - She's able to do make-up.

Negative النفى

Subject الفاعل + am not / isn't / aren't + able to قادراً على + inf. مصدر الفعل .

ex. - They aren't able to go trekking.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Am / Is / Are + subject الفاعل + able to قادراً على + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?

ex. - Is he able to play tennis ?

- Yes, he is. - No, he isn't.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. WB I ..... swim very quickly, I'm the best swimmer.
   a. able to b. can't c. can d. don't
2. WB A musician can ..... musical instruments.
   a. plays b. playing c. play d. played
3. WB I know how ..... a review about a story.
   a. writing b. to write c. write d. writes
4. WB The deaf aren't ..... hear.
   a. can b. know c. able d. able to
5. SB ..... you know how to do any types of art ?
   a. Are b. Does c. Do d. Have

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. SB ..... (Will) you use a computer ? - Yes, I can.
2. WB I can ..... (speaking) English well.
3. SB Which musical instruments are you able to ..... (plays) ?
4. SB Dalia is able to ..... (doing) make-up.

Unit 10

Adjective order ترتيب الصفات

Usage الاستخدام

- We often use more than one adjective in this order. We don't use more than three or four adjectives.

نستخدم غالبًا أكثر من صفة فى هذا الترتيب. ولا نستخدم أكثر من ثلاث أو أربع صفات.

كيفية ترتيب الصفات :

size/description الوصف / الحجم	shape الشكل	age العمر	colour اللون	material المادة الخام	noun الاسم
big / pretty	long	old	green	cotton	dress

ex. - Ancient Egyptians wore loose , white , linen clothes.

shape	colour	material	noun

One, ones

Usage الاستخدام

- **We often use "one" instead of repeating a singular countable noun.**

تستخدم غالبًا [one] بدلًا من تكرار الاسم المفرد الذى يعد فى الجملة.

ex. - I bought a new shirt instead of the old one.

- **We often use "ones" instead of repeating a plural noun.**

تستخدم غالبًا [ones] بدلًا من تكرار الاسم الجمع فى الجملة.

ex. - These flowers are the ones that my mum loves.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB My mother likes wearing ..... clothes.
   a. long, white, linen b. linen, white, long
   c. white, long, linen d. long, linen, white
2. WB It's a beautiful, ... dress.
   a. linen, new, blue b. new, blue, linen
   c. blue, linen, new d. blue, new, linen
3. WB I finished my bottle of water, I need to buy an extra ..... .
   a. one b. some c. these d. this
4. SB These sculptures are the best ..... in the hall.
   a. one b. any c. those d. ones
5. SB Shall I buy these black jeans or those ..... ?
   a. ones b. any c. some d. one

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. SB It's a ..... (new / beautiful / black) bag.
2. SB Mariam likes to wear a ..... (cotton, blue, nice) skirt.
3. WB These sandals are the worst ..... (one) in the shop.
4. WB This book is funny, but that ..... (ones) is very boring !

Unit 11

Future with "be going to"

المستقبل باستخدام **(be) going to** :

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I	→ am			
He, She, It, أو اسم مفرد	→ is	+ going to +	[inf.] مصدر الفعل	.
You, We, They, أو اسم جمع	→ are			

ex. - I'm going to buy a new bag.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + not + going to + [inf.] مصدر الفعل .

ex. - She isn't going to travel to Luxor on the weekend.

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

a Yes / No question السؤال بـ[هل]

Am / Is / Are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?

ex. - * Are you going to recycle your old phone ?
- Yes, I am. - No, I am not.

b Wh-question السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام

Question word كلمة استفهام + am / is / are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل ... ?

ex. - What are they going to grow ?

Usage الاستخدام

تستخدم هذه الصيغة فى الحالات الآتية :

1 We use (be going to + inf.) to talk about your intentions for the future :

١. نستخدم [be going to + inf.] عند الحديث عن النوايا الخاصة بك فى المستقبل.:

ex. - He's going to study science at the university. It's his intention.

2 We use (be) going to + inf. to make predictions about the future based on what we can see or know :

٢. تستخدم [be going to + inf.] عند التنبؤات عن المستقبل استنادًا إلى ما يمكننا رؤيته أو معرفته [تنبؤات مع وجود دليل على ذلك] :

ex. - The river is going to be polluted. Many people are throwing rubbish in it.

هنا دليل قوى على أن النهر سيصبح ملوث. لأن كثير من الناس يلقون المخلفات به.

The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I	→ am			
He, She, It, أو اسم مفرد	→ is	+	am / is / are	+ [inf. المصدر + ing] .
You, We, They, أو اسم جمع	→ are			

ex. - She's reading at the library at the moment.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

I				
He / She / It فاعل مفرد غائب	+	am / is / are	+	not + [inf. المصدر + ing] .
We / You / They فاعل جمع				

ex. - They aren't sleeping now.

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

a Yes / No question السؤال بـ[هل]

Am / Is / Are	+	I / he / she / it فاعل مفرد غائب / we / you / they فاعل جمع	+	[inf. المصدر + ing]	...?

ex. - Are you enjoying your time in Cairo ?

b Wh-question السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام

Question word كلمة استفهام	+	am / is / are	+	subject الفاعل	+	[inf. المصدر + ing]	...?

ex. - When are they having lunch ?

Usage الاستخدام

1. We use the present continuous to express actions happening now.
نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أحداث تقع الآن.

ex. - He's planting a tree now.

2. We use the present continuous for future plans and arrangements, often with a time and date.
نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الخطط والترتيبات المستقبلية وغالبًا ما تكون بوقت وتاريخ.

ex. - They are going to the mountains next week.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB I ..... the dentist at half past four next Thursday.
   a. am visiting b. visit c. visiting d. visited
2. SB What are you going ..... tomorrow ?
   a. do b. doing c. done d. to do
3. SB We ..... a bus at 7.00.
   a. catching b. going to catch
   c. catches d. are catching
4. SB My father ..... to paint our flat next week.
   a. is going to b. going c. is going d. go

5. WB Hatem ..... a new mobile tomorrow. It's arranged.
   a. is going to buy b. bought
   c. will buy d. is buying

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. WB Ahmed ..... (go) to his music lesson at 4 p.m.
2. WB Samia's family are going to ..... (travelling) to Japan.
3. WB Mr Sherif ..... (be) going to England in January.
4. SB Where are you going ..... (spend) your weekend ?

Unit 12

Review on Tenses مراجعة على الأزمنة

Present tenses أزمنة المضارع

هذا الجزء تم دراسته وشرحه

1. The Present Simple Tense : ١. زمن المضارع البسيط :

Formation التكوين

Affirmative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

- I / They / We / You / فاعل جمع + inf. المصدر
- He / She / It / فاعل مفرد + inf. المصدر + s/es/ies

ex. - He likes comfortable clothes.

2. The Present Continuous Tense : ٢. زمن المضارع المستمر :

Formation التكوين

Affirmative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I + am
He / She / It فاعل مفرد غائب + is
We / You / They فاعل جمع + are
+ inf. المصدر + ing .

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث يقع الآن.

ex. - I'm wearing special clothes.

يستخدم أيضًا زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ترتيبات مستقبلية.

ex. - Next summer, we're visiting Alexandria.

Past tenses أزمنة الماضى

هذا الجزء تم دراسته وشرحه

1. "used to" for regular past habits and routines :

١. تستخدم (used to) للتعبير عن العادات والأعمال الروتينية فى الماضى :

Formation التكوين

A
Affirmative statement
الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

اعتاد أن ◀

Subject الفاعل + used to + inf. مصدر الفعل ...

ex. -I used to play tennis.

B
Negative statement
الجملة الخبرية المنفية

للنفى نستخدم (didn't use to) : ◀

Subject الفاعل + didn't + use to + inf. مصدر الفعل ...

ex. - I didn't use to play football.

2. The past continuous Tense :

٢. زمن الماضى المستمر :

Formation التكوين

I / He / She / It
You / They / We
+ was / were + [inf. + ing]

ويستخدم زمن الماضى المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا فى الماضى وقطعه حدث آخر. ◀

ex. - He was climbing a tree when he fell and hurt his leg.

Future forms صيغ المستقبل

هذا الجزء تم دراسته وشرحه

1. Future with "be" going to :

١. المستقبل باستخدام [be] going to :

Formation التكوين

Affirmative statements
الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I
He / She / It أو اسم مفرد
We / You / They أو اسم جمع
+ am / is / are + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل .

ex. - I'm going to buy a new car.

2. The future with "will" : ٢. المستقبل باستخدام [will] :

Formation التكوين

Affirmative statements
الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject (الفاعل) + will + inf. (مصدر الفعل) .

ex. - I think it will be cold tomorrow.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Rania ..... a nice story last night.
   a. read b. reads c. was read d. is reading
2. SB It ..... me two years to build this model.
   a. take b. took c. taking d. is taking
3. SB I'll ..... the past and the future.
   a. explores b. exploring c. explored d. explore
4. SB When I ..... the box, the screen was damaged.
   a. opened b. opening c. opens d. open
5. SB What ..... they eating now ?
   a. were b. will c. are d. have

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. SB What does the girl ..... (wants) to buy ?
2. SB I think, it won't ..... (flying) very high.
3. WB How ..... (do) people know the time in the past ?
4. SB Companies are going ..... (use) drones a lot.

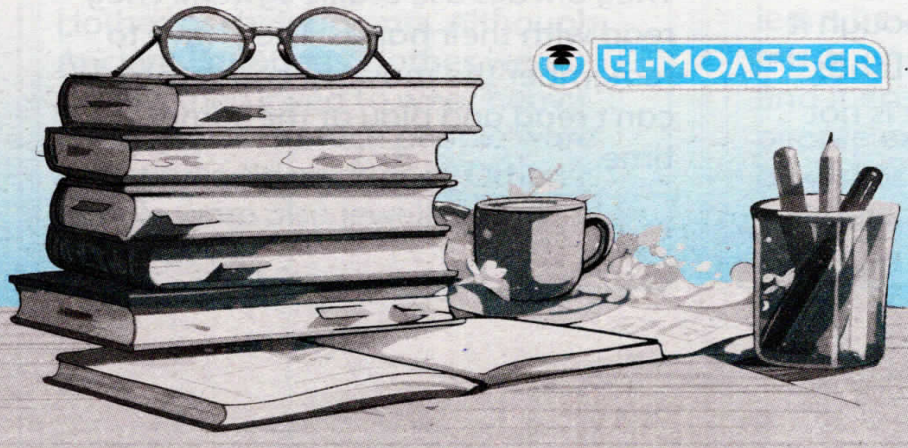
The Most Important 20 correction Sentences

◄ **الهدف من هذا الجزء :** تجميع أهم ٢٠ فكرة مختلفة وردت فى سؤال تصحيح الأخطاء فى اختبارات المحافظات العام السابق.

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1. It is going ..... [rain]. There are dark clouds in the sky.	to rain	نستخدم صيغة التعبير عن المستقبل (be going to + inf.) عند التنبؤ مع وجود دليل.
2. I bought ..... [this] shoes last week in the market.	these	يستخدم ضمير اشارة جمع [these] قبل الإسم الجمع.
3. That beautiful dress is the ..... [ones] my grandmother made me.	one	نستخدم [one] بدلًا من تكرار الإسم مفرد [dress] فى الجملة.
4. When I was a small child, I ..... [use to play] in the street.	used to play	التعبير عن عادة كانت فى الماضى وانتهت [used to + inf.].
5. While we ..... [travels] home, Hany phoned me.	were travelling	نستخدم بعد [While] جملة فى زمن الماضى المستمر.
6. Mariam and I know ..... [who] to cook pies.	how	صيغة التعبير عن القدرة [know how to + inf.].
7. Would you like ..... [any] tea ?	some	تستخدم [some] لان السؤال يعبر عن عرض أو تقديم خدمة.
8. He ..... [play] music now.	is playing	نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر لوجود [now] فى الجملة.
9. He wore a ..... [cotton, shirt , green].	green, cotton shirt	ترتيب الصفات اللون ثم المادة المصنوع منها الشىء.
10. My brother likes ..... [a few] sugar in his tea.	a little	نستخدم [a little] لأن كلمة [sugar] لاتعد.
11. When you ..... [not understand] the lesson, you should ask your teacher for help.	don't understand	نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط بعد [When] فى الجملة الشرطية المعبرة عن النصح.

12. Ahmed is able ..... [doing] the shopping.	to do	فى صيغة التعبير عن القدرة نستخدم [be able to + inf.].
13. If I go to the shops, I ..... [spend] a lot of money.	will spend	نستخدم فى حالة [if] الشرطية الأولى [subj. + will + inf.] فى الجملة الثانية بعدها.
14. Those earrings are the ..... [one] my mum gave me.	ones	نستخدم [ones] بدلًا من تكرار الاسم الجمع [earrings] فى الجملة.
15. There isn't ..... [some] juice left in the fridge.	any	نستخدم [any] لان الجملة المنفية.
16. If she ..... [feel] ill, she should see a doctor.	feels	نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط بعد [If] الشرطية فى الحالة الأولى.
17. Mahmoud's bag is light. It has ..... [a little] books.	a few	نستخدم [a few] لان بعدها اسم جمع [books].
18. Akram will ..... [has] a party.	have	نستخدم [inf.] بعد [will].
19. My father ..... [fly] to London last week.	flew	الجملة تعبر عن الماضى البسيط لذا نستخدم التصريف الثانى للفعل.
20. ..... [Adding] a little salt to the eggs and milk.	Add	الجملة تعبر عن صيغة الأمر المثبت لذا نستخدم [inf.] فى بداية الجملة.

A week is enough



EL-MOASSER

مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه

فى أسبوع واحد فقط

3. Important Paragraphs and Emails

٣. أهم الفقرات الإنشائية والبريد الإلكترونى

موضوعات إنشائية ورسائل بريد ألكترونى هامة على الوحدات كما يمكنك مراجعة نماذج أخرى فى نهاية كتاب الشرح.

Model Paragraph 1

"Shopping online"

Not all people think the same about shopping online. Some people think shopping online is great. They think it saves time because they don't spend much time travelling to the shops. And they can stay at home and buy anything they want in a few minutes. They think that they have many choices online. In their view, shopping online will make fewer cars on the streets so there will be less pollution. On the other hand, some people don't think the same. They don't like shopping online. They say they always have a wrong delivery when they shop online. They don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery. They prefer to try things before buying them.

Model Paragraph 2

"Fast food"

Fast food is food that is quick and easy to buy or cook. Although it is very tasty, it is not healthy. It has much fat and sugar in it. So it is not a good idea to eat fast food. You should have healthy snacks between the meals when you feel hungry. Healthy food gives you energy and makes you strong. Fruits and vegetables are healthy snacks. You can eat a lot of them. Nuts also are very good for your body. You can have nuts as a snack if you don't have an allergy to it. You should think before you eat anything if it is good or bad for your body.

Model Paragraph 3

"Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra"

Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra is an amazing orchestra. It's a special school in Cairo. This school is a music school for blind girls. All the students study their normal subjects in the morning and then practise their instruments in the afternoon. Many of the students at this school join the orchestra. The orchestra gives concerts in Australia, Germany and China and all around the world. The orchestra plays international classical music. They always use Braille system. They read with their hands. They have to remember the music because they can't read and play at the same time.

Model Email 4

From : tarek@yahoo.com
To : omar@gmail.com
Subject : art museum

Dear Omar,

There are many art museums in Egypt. One of them is the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art. It's in Cairo. It's a part of the Cairo Opera House. There are art works by Egyptian artists from the 20th and 21st centuries. The artists' works are really good because they showed what life was like in Egypt in the past and now. There are portraits of important and normal Egyptian people in the museum. There are also a lot of sculptures, both big and small. The museum is free so you don't have to pay anything to visit it.

Yours,
Tarek

Model Paragraph 5

"Clothes in Ancient Egypt"

In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore loose, white, linen clothes with a belt. Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes most of the time but rich people sometimes wore expensive leather sandals. Children did not usually wear many clothes until they are about six years old. Then they started to wear the same clothes as their parents. Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear heavy, metal jewellery. Rich people wore beautiful gold necklaces. Other people wore also jewellery but cheaper.

Model Paragraph 6

"Drones"

Drones are examples of modern technology. They can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them. We can use remote control. This means we can control drones from the ground. In the future, they are going to help solve some environmental problems. They don't make much noise and they don't cause as much air pollution as other forms of transport like cars, trains and lorries. We can use drones to help the wildlife after floods or fires. Drones can fly over places where we can't go to. We can think of more things we can use drones for.

Model Email 7

From : ali@yahoo.com
To : adel@gmail.com
Subject : how to learn best

Hi Adel,

How are you and your family ? How is your school ? I send you this email to tell you about how to learn best. You can learn things by trying to do them and sometimes find it hard to understand by listening or reading. If you love to watch videos, you can learn best by seeing things. You can also learn best by listening. If you love music and are often talking, you find it easier to learn by listening to people explain things to you and by discussing things with them.

Yours,
Ali

4. Accumulative Tests

٤. اختبارات تراكمية

Units 7,8&9

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. When did Lama order a new mobile phone ?
   a. Last month b. Last week
   c. Yesterday d. Three days ago
2. The delivery was ..... .
   a. today morning b. yesterday c. two weeks ago d. tomorrow
3. The screen of the phone was ..... .
   a. cool b. usual c. damaged d. online
4. She wants to ..... the phone for a new one.
   a. push b. translate c. invent d. change

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sama asks Ola some questions about computer games.

Sama : Can I ask you some questions ?
Ola : (1) ..... .
Sama : (2) ..... ?
Ola : In my view, not all computer games are bad.
Sama : (3) ..... ?
Ola : Because some of them can help you to learn things.
Sama : Do you think it is a good idea to play games late at night ?
Ola : (4) ..... .
Sama : Should it be a problem if I only play quiet, calm games in the evening ?
Ola : (5) ..... .

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Not all people think the same about shopping online. Some people think shopping online is great. They think **it** saves time because they don't

spend much time travelling to the shops. And they can stay at home and buy anything they want in a few minutes. They think that they have many choices online. In their **view**, shopping online will make less cars on the streets so there will be less pollution. On the other hand, some people don't think the same. They don't like shopping online. They say they always have a wrong delivery when they shop online. They don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery. They prefer to try things and see materials before buying them.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word **"view"** can be replaced by ..... .
   a. pollution b. opinion c. material d. shopping
2. If more people shop online, the streets will be less ..... .
   a. cleaned b. popular c. polluted d. common

b. Answer the following questions :

3. Give a suitable title for the passage.
   .....
4. What do you think of shopping online ?
   .....
5. Where can you stay while shopping online ?
   .....
6. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to ?
   .....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I have a new phone that has a/an ..... to help me do my homework.
   a. motorbike b. app c. wing d. headphone
2. He can speak different ..... such as French and German.
   a. books b. inventions c. ideas d. languages
3. " ..... " has the same meaning as "ask".
   a. Wonder b. Wander c. Sell d. Sail
4. Some people feel worried when they can't ..... their phones.
   a. shake b. bake c. wake d. check

5. ..... products like milk make our body strong.
   a. Daily b. Dairy c. Diary d. Little
6. Mum always gives me a big ..... when she sees me.
   a. hang b. blog c. hug d. bug
7. If you ..... Cairo, you should go to the Egyptian Museum.
   a. visit b. visits c. visiting d. visited
8. My son ..... 8 years old next month.
   a. will b. is being c. will be d. is going to be

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Would you like ..... (any) tea ?
2. If she is ill, she should ..... (sees) a doctor.
3. Don't ..... (arrived) late.
4. Does Ali ..... (knows) how to spell words ?
5. Salma is able to ..... (speaks) English and French well.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"A visit to the Egyptian Museum"

Units 10, 11 & 12

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Can drones fly ? - ..... .
   a. Yes, they can b. No, they can't
   c. No, they don't d. I don't know
2. How can we fly drones ? - By using ..... .
   a. knives b. soldiers
   c. remote controls d. mobile phones
3. When are drones going to help solve some problems ? - ..... .
   a. In the past b. Yesterday c. Last year d. In the future
4. What kind of problems can drones solve ? - ..... problems.
   a. Educational b. Environmental c. Ancient d. Funny

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman wants to buy a jacket for a special occasion.

Shopkeeper : Hello. Can I help you ?
Ayman : Sure. (1) ..... .
Shopkeeper : That's nice. (2) ..... ?
Ayman : I'd like that black one. (3) ..... ?
Shopkeeper : Of course. The changing room is over there.
Ayman : Thank you.
Shopkeeper : Does it fit you ?
Ayman : (4) ..... . Do you have a bigger size ?
Shopkeeper : Yes, here you are.
Ayman : (5) ..... . I'll take it.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Heba is having a fantastic time with her family in Siwa. Today, they had a picnic on Fatanas Island. At the moment, she's sitting by the water and watching the sunset. It's very beautiful.

Heba's family are staying with **their** parents' friends and they are very kind. When they arrived the day before yesterday, it was very late. Heba parents' friends still wanted to get up and make them dinner and they bring them fresh dates for breakfast every day.

Yesterday morning, they visited Shali Fortress and the Siwa Museum. Heba has always wanted to go there. She learnt such a lot of history in one morning. Tomorrow, they're going to visit the Siwa salt lake. She's looking forward to visiting it. It **sounds** really interesting.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Heba is in ..... .

a. Cairo b. Luxor c. Hurghada d. Siwa

2. The underlined word **"sounds"** means ..... .

a. visits b. drives c. looks d. learns

b. Answer the following questions :

3. What is the main idea of the passage ?

.....

4. What does the underlined pronoun **"their"** refer to ?

.....

5. Why does Heba think her parents' friends are kind ?

.....

6. What is Heba doing at the moment ?

.....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Green energy can ..... the pollution in our environment.

a. cause b. reduce c. use d. lose

2. His facial ..... tell me that he is very excited.

a. connections b. expressions c. languages d. contacts

3. " ..... " means expensive and good quality.

a. Silly b. Weak c. Luxury d. Poisonous

4. A person who speaks lots of languages is ..... .

a. different b. old c. multilingual d. national

5. ..... can fly without a pilot.
   a. Helicopters b. Ships c. Trains d. Drones
6. You shouldn't ..... noise in the library.
   a. do b. make c. listen d. take
7. Let's ..... some food from the supermarket.
   a. buy b. bought c. buys d. buying
8. I ..... my cousins tomorrow. We have arranged everything.
   a. will meet b. meet
   c. am meeting d. am going to meet

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The sun ..... (rise) in the east.
2. What are you ..... (go) to do next week ?
3. He used to ..... (played) basketball.
4. This book is the only ..... (ones) that I prefer.
5. Rich Egyptians wore ..... (gold/beautiful) necklaces in Ancient Egypt.

E. Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words to your friend Omar telling him what you are going to do next holiday. Your friend's email address is omar@yahoo.com. Your name is Ali and your email address is ali@gmail. com.

From :
To :
Subject :

..... ,
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

DAY 4

1. General Exercises collected from SB & WB

١. تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

1 Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Unit 7 *Student's Book & Workbook*

1. ..... means websites and apps that allow people to talk to each other. *(WB page 72)*
   a. Social media b. Information c. Addiction d. Technology
2. If you ..... enough money, you should buy this mobile. It is very cheap. *(WB page 75)*
   a. buy b. have c. waste d. lose
3. She handed me one ..... , so I could listen, too. *(SB page 3)*
   a. helicopter b. motorbike c. headphone d. app
4. Sitting in the sun for half an hour ..... me warmer. *(SB page 9)*
   a. did b. gave c. sent d. made
5. In your opinion, what is the most important ..... , the mobile phone, the television or the plane ? *(SB page 9)*
   a. invention b. invitation c. speed d. shopping
6. Do you think it is easy to ..... from Arabic into English ? *(WB page 70)*
   a. move b. stay c. translate d. find
7. Eating many sweets is bad ..... you. *(WB page 74)*
   a. at b. with c. by d. for
8. The manager was angry when he found ..... the truth. *(SB page 7)*
   a. off b. out c. on d. in
9. They ..... loudly when their friend told them a joke نكتة. *(SB page 8)*
   a. slept b. spent c. invented d. laughed
10. During COVID 19, people ..... at home to protect themselves. *(SB page 9)*
    a. stayed b. died c. waited d. save

2 Language

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Unit 7 — Student's Book & Workbook

1. If you feel tired, you ..... have a rest. *(SB page 11)*
   a. shall b. shouldn't c. should d. won't
2. ..... you have a problem, you should tell your parents. *(SB page 7)*
   a. What b. While c. Where d. When
3. When it is raining, you should ..... at home. *(WB page 76)*
   a. stay b. staying c. stayed d. stays
4. When it is hot, you ..... drink much water. *(WB page 72)*
   a. shouldn't b. should c. would d. won't
5. What ..... if there is a new student at my class ? *(WB page 72)*
   a. should I doing b. I should do
   c. should I do d. I should doing
6. You should ..... your hands with water and soap when you come back home. *(WB page 76)*
   a. washes b. washing c. washed d. wash
7. People should wear heavy clothes if it ..... cold. *(WB page 71)*
   a. is b. has c. was d. had
8. ..... you have a headache, you should go to bed. *(SB page 7)*
   a. While b. If c. Before d. By
9. ..... tell my teacher if I don't understand ? *(WB page 72)*
   a. I should b. I have c. Should I d. Have I
10. You should help your mother with the housework when she ..... tired. *(SB page 5)*
    a. is b. isn't c. was d. wasn't

1 Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Unit 8 — Student's Book & Workbook

1. It was not easy for him to join the school ..... team. *(SB page 14)*
   a. athletics b. allergic c. tests d. athlete
2. I liked that cake. It was ..... . *(SB page 15)*
   a. terrible b. fast c. delicious d. energetic

3. Football is very ..... all over the world. *(SB page 13)*
   a. juicy b. popular c. spicy d. dairy
4. He doesn't enjoy eating ..... foods. *(WB page 80)*
   a. nice b. delicious c. tasty d. spicy
5. It's healthy to eat ..... products. *(WB page 79)*
   a. unhappy b. easy c. diary d. dairy
6. Having something that makes you ill when you eat it or touch it means ..... . *(WB page 78)*
   a. allergic b. athletic c. tasty d. special
7. Eating ..... vegetables and fruits makes you healthy. *(SB page 18)*
   a. salty b. dairy c. fresh d. allergic
8. He dropped his mobile. ..... , it was broken. *(SB page 21)*
   a. Ugly b. Unfortunately c. Friendly d. Positively
9. You should eat healthy food to get the ..... you need. *(SB page 19)*
   a. energy b. speed c. diary d. juicy
10. We ..... with our noses. *(SB page 18)*
    a. taste b. touch c. hear d. smell

2 Language

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

Unit 8 *Student's Book & Workbook*

1. Would you like ..... tea ? *(WB page 78)*
   a. any b. some c. a lot d. few
2. I don't have ..... free time to do my hobbies. *(SB page 19)*
   a. some b. few c. any d. many
3. Do you have ..... water ? - I'm very thirsty. *(WB page 78)*
   a. few b. a lot c. some d. lots
4. Can I have ..... rice, please ? *(WB page 83)*
   a. some b. many c. any d. few
5. Is there ..... sugar in this coffee ? - No, there isn't. *(SB page 21)*
   a. some b. few c. many d. any
6. I moved to this school last month, so I have ..... friends. *(WB page 77)*
   a. any b. much c. a lot d. a few
7. My father likes ..... sugar in his tea, not much. *(WB page 83)*
   a. a few b. many c. a little d. any

8. It is not healthy to put ..... salt in your food. *(SB page 13)*
   a. much b. some c. any d. few
9. Children should drink ..... milk to have strong bones. *(SB page 16)*
   a. little b. much c. any d. few
10. There are ..... types of healthy snacks at this restaurant. *(SB page 19)*
    a. a little b. any c. much d. a few

1 Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Unit 9 *Student's Book & Workbook*

1. Maya's favourite hobby is ..... a scenery. *(WB page 84)*
   a. saving b. reading c. painting d. playing
2. It took her a long time to be able to ..... costumes. *(SB page 23)*
   a. do b. sew c. see d. say
3. The things that happen in a film are called ..... . *(WB page 89)*
   a. actions b. pottery c. portraits d. information
4. When he scored his third goal, he was ..... . *(SB page 25)*
   a. bored b. excited c. sad d. polite
5. In the museum, I saw a wonderful ..... . *(SB page 24)*
   a. script b. scenery c. description d. portrait
6. I asked my elder brother to ..... me a musical instrument. *(WB page 84)*
   a. recommend b. advise c. do d. sew
7. Tourists visit Egypt because it is famous ..... its ancient art. *(SB page 22)*
   a. by b. of c. for d. at
8. I'm interested ..... playing instruments. *(WB page 40)*
   a. on b. in c. with d. about
9. You don't need to pay for this pen. It's ..... . *(SB page 24)*
   a. busy b. expensive c. cheap d. free
10. I think it was a nice story, so I recommend ..... it. *(SB page 25)*
    a. reading b. read c. to reading d. to read

2 Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Unit 9

Student's Book & Workbook

1. Do you know how ..... this bike ? *(WB page 84)*
   a. to ride b. riding c. to riding d. ride
2. She is able ..... her bedroom. Don't help her. *(SB page 23)*
   a. tidying b. to tidying c. to tidy d. tidy
3. **Alaa :** ..... you write a long paragraph about learning foreign languages alone ?
   Soha : Yes, I can. *(SB page 23)*
   a. Does b. Can c. Are d. Have
4. Farid ..... to fix the car. He can do it. *(WB page 86)*
   a. isn't able b. cannot c. can d. is able
5. How ..... you able to do that ? *(WB page 88)*
   a. do b. can c. are d. was
6. I don't know ..... do this exercise. *(SB page 24)*
   a. what to b. how to c. how for d. who to
7. I cannot believe that you ..... say these words. It is very easy. *(WB page 90)*
   a. aren't able to b. can c. know how to d. don't know
8. ..... how to answer the dialogue question ? *(SB page 29)*
   a. Have you know b. Are you know
   c. Do you know d. Were you know
9. How ..... you solve this puzzle ? *(SB page 23)*
   a. are able to b. are c. were d. can
10. It is not difficult to ..... costumes. *(WB page 88)*
    a. know to sewing b. can sew
    c. know how to sew d. can to sew

1 Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Unit 10

Student's Book & Workbook

1. It is a beautiful jacket. You look very ..... . *(WB page 99)*
   a. strange b. smart c. long d. intelligent

2. I cover my bed with a nice ..... made of linen. *(SB page 36)*
   a. sheet b. scarf c. belt d. skirt
3. Do you like wearing modern or ..... clothes ? *(WB page 94)*
   a. smart b. comfortable c. long d. traditional
4. Heavy clothes help you in winter to ..... warm. *(SB page 34)*
   a. have b. save c. keep d. wear
5. Before going to the club, I wear my ..... . *(SB page 38)*
   a. necklace b. trainers c. sandals d. earrings
6. Egypt is famous all over the world for its good ..... . It is an important crop. *(SB page 40)*
   a. metal b. glass c. cotton d. leather
7. People often wear some clothes for ..... occasions as wedding or festivals. *(WB page 115)*
   a. metal b. material c. normal d. special
8. Before buying any clothes, you should try them on in the ..... room. *(SB page 43)*
   a. changing b. playing c. staying d. making
9. Women usually wear ..... to protect their hair. *(SB page 35)*
   a. skirts b. sandals c. trainers d. headscarves
10. Shoes, bags and belts are often made of ..... . *(WB page 94)*
    a. wool b. leather c. metal d. cotton

2 Language

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

Unit 10 *Student's Book & Workbook*

1. My mother bought ..... blanket. *(SB page 37)*
   a. an orange, heavy, pretty b. a pretty, heavy, orange
   c. a heavy, orange, pretty d. a pretty, orange, heavy
2. In winter, it is good to wear ..... . *(WB page 97)*
   a. long, wool socks b. socks long, wool
   c. long, socks wool d. wool, long socks
3. My grandfather used to have ..... sandals. *(SB page 36)*
   a. old, light, leather b. light, leather, old
   c. leather, old, light d. light, old, leather

4. Young people usually like ..... clothes. *(SB page 35)*
   a. colourful, cotton, modern
   b. cotton, colourful, modern
   c. modern, colourful, cotton
   d. cotton, modern, colourful

5. Do you like ..... glasses ? *(WB page 94)*
   a. old, black, metal
   b. black, old, metal
   c. metal, old, black
   d. old, metal, black

6. In the past, people used to wear ..... robes before sleeping. *(SB page 36)*
   a. long, linen, loose
   b. loose, linen, long
   c. loose, long, linen
   d. linen, long, loose

7. Our school chose ..... uniform for this year. *(SB page 36)*
   a. a brown, beautiful, long
   b. a long, brown, beautiful
   c. a long, beautiful, brown
   d. a beautiful, long, brown

8. Can you give me ..... book ? I cannot get it. *(WB page 97)*
   a. this b. that c. these d. those

9. ..... are my dad's shoes. I will polish them for him. *(SB page 39)*
   a. Then b. These c. This d. That

10. Is ..... your pen ? I have found it under the desk. *(WB page 95)*
    a. this b. there c. those d. these

1 Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Unit 11 *Student's Book & Workbook*

1. In your opinion, is Omar suitable ..... this job ? *(SB page 51)*
   a. of b. for c. on d. in

2. You should put ..... in the bin. *(WB page 101)*
   a. coral reefs b. wildlife c. rubbish d. solar panels

3. To ..... means to put equipment somewhere so it is ready to be used. *(WB page 100)*
   a. install b. fall c. reuse d. reduce

4. My mobile doesn't work, so I asked someone to ..... it. *(WB page 100)*
   a. recycle b. repeat c. replay d. repair

5. Our science teacher told us that it is important to ..... a lot of trees to save the environment. *(SB page 48)*
   a. plant b. cut c. damage d. flood

6. The word "lend" is the opposite of the word "....." . *(SB page 49)*
   a. decay b. install c. fix d. borrow
7. He refused to take part ..... the race السباق. *(WB page 101)*
   a. on b. in c. at d. of
8. Scientists think that the climate change will ..... many problems for the environment. *(WB page 102)*
   a. protect b. keep c. cause d. save
9. People should not use chemicals because they ..... the environment. *(SB page 50)*
   a. pick b. protect c. collect d. pollute
10. ..... are used to produce electricity. *(SB page 48)*
    a. Solar panels b. Coral Reefs
    c. Climate changes d. Mobile phones

2 Language

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Unit 11 *Student's Book & Workbook*

1. The traffic is slow. We ..... to be late. *(SB page 46)*
   a. gone b. are going c. going d. are gone
2. He studies hard. Do you think he ..... first ? *(WB page 100)*
   a. comes b. is going coming
   c. is going to come d. was coming
3. Next Wednesday, I ..... to Hurghada. *(WB page 100)*
   a. am going b. go c. went d. was going
4. ..... you going to help me with my homework tonight ? *(SB page 46)*
   a. Do b. Were c. Will d. Are
5. When are you going ..... the car ? *(SB page 49)*
   a. to wash b. to washing c. washing d. wash
6. The boys ..... in the classroom at the moment. *(WB page 105)*
   a. shout b. are going to shout
   c. are shouting d. shouting
7. Listen! Your baby ..... loudly. *(SB page 53)*
   a. cries b. is crying c. will cry d. is cried
8. Hamza intends to buy a new laptop. He ..... it. *(SB page 53)*
   a. is buying b. will buy c. is going to buy d. buys

9. Salma ..... a birthday party tomorrow. It's arranged. *(WB page 106)*
   a. has b. is going to have
   c. will have d. is having
10. Are you ..... with us to the stadium next Monday ? We bought you a ticket. *(WB page 101)*
   a. coming b. to coming c. come d. comes

1 Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Unit 12 *Student's Book & Workbook*

1. If you don't understand a lesson, you should ask your teacher to ..... it again. *(SB page 61)*
   a. explain b. study c. believe d. recycle
2. The opposite of the word "fail" is "....." . *(WB page 108)*
   a. feel b. fall c. pass d. lose
3. I listen carefully to my teacher and write down ..... .
   a. notes b. medals c. learners d. models
4. One of the mobile's ..... is to use it everywhere. *(SB page 60)*
   a. dialects b. experts c. voices d. advantages
5. Do you ..... what she said ? I don't think she told the truth. *(SB page 63)*
   a. believe b. look c. touch d. pass
6. To get better at something means to ..... . *(SB page 63)*
   a. prove b. improve c. fail d. explain
7. When they lost the final match, they were ..... . *(WB page 108)*
   a. pleased b. happy c. disappointed d. interested
8. If you want to get high marks, you should ..... a study timetable. *(SB page 61)*
   a. do b. listen c. save d. make
9. The boy was afraid of his father's facial ..... when he was angry. *(WB page 110)*
   a. experts b. explanations c. expressions d. exams
10. Do you agree ..... him or not ? *(SB page 59)*
   a. with b. at c. for d. about

2 Language

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Unit 12 — Student's Book & Workbook

1. Where did you ..... when you were young ? *(SB page 56)*
   a. used to play b. used to playing
   c. use to play d. use to playing
2. Water always ..... at 100 degrees. *(SB page 63)*
   a. is boiling b. boils c. boiled d. was boiling
3. What ..... now ? *(SB page 57)*
   a. are you doing b. do you do c. you are doing d. will you do
4. When I phoned my mother, she ..... lunch. *(SB page 57)*
   a. cooked b. cooks c. is cooking d. was cooking
5. Where ..... you spend last weekend ? *(SB page 62)*
   a. were b. are c. do d. did

السؤال الخامس فى ورقة الامتحان

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

عبارة عن خمس جمل على الطالب أن يكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة / الكلمات التى بين الأقواس [الجمل تقيس القواعد اللغوية].

1.
1. If I go to the shops, I ..... (spent) a lot of money. *(SB p.5)*
2. My little brother sometimes eats ..... (a little) grapes for breakfast. *(SB p.14)*
3. What's ..... (those) small thing by my chair ? *(WB p.95)*
4. You shouldn't ..... (swam) in the sea if it is very cold. *(WB p.72)*
5. He never ..... (speaks) Arabic. *(SB page 55)*

2.
1. Leila likes ..... (a few) milk in her tea, but not very much. *(SB p.14)*
2. The boy and his father are going to ..... (watches) a football match. *(WB p.100)*
3. If we go out, we ..... (be) able to go to the cinema. *(SB p.5)*
4. Lara ..... (play) tennis at 4 o'clock tomorrow. *(WB p.106)*
5. Next summer holiday, I ..... (take) an English course. *(SB page 62)*

2. End of Term Practice

٢. اختبار نهاية الفصل الدراسى من كتاب التدريبات.

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b or c :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. What does Injy know how to cook ?
   a. A few things. b. Many things.
   c. Only cakes.
2. Why do they decide to make a carrot cake ?
   a. Hala only eats vegetables. b. Hala likes healthy food.
   c. They find a recipe for it.
3. What will Amira do to make the cake ?
   a. Mix the flour and sugar. b. Add some eggs.
   c. Cut the carrots.
4. How many nuts should they put on the cake ?
   a. Four b. Fourteen c. Ten

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Baher : Fares, I was wondering if you would like to come to my house today to work on our school project.

Fares : Great. What (1) ..... ?

Baher : Around 7. We could research some information together.

Fares : (2) ..... ?

Baher : I think it's better if we use the computer. Books won't give us all the information we need.

Fares : That's true. It's a (3) ..... to look at different websites.

Baher : Would you bring some paper ?

Fares : Why do you want them ? We are going to do online research!

Baher : (4) ..... .

Fares : (5) ..... we need to take notes on important information.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

When we taste food, our mouths tell us if the food is sweet, salty or spicy. But why do some people like some types of food and not others ? There are many reasons. For example, some people don't like a type of food because they remember being ill after they ate it.

However, it is believed that you can change what you like. We often don't like unusual food because our brain doesn't understand it. So if you want to start liking food that is healthy, such as green vegetables, you should eat it more often. Then your brain will **recognise** it. You can also train your brain not to like something. For example, many people who stopped putting sugar on things found, after a time, that they didn't like sweet things.

So if you like sweets and don't like vegetables, you should train your brain to eat more healthily!

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Some people don't eat certain food because they ..... .
   a. ate it before and liked it
   b. ate it and didn't like it
   c. didn't try it before
   d. some people told them that it wasn't tasty
2. What do you think the word **"recognise"** means ?
   a. know because you have seen it before.
   b. photograph.
   c. learn about.
   d. like.
3. If you want to stop liking unhealthy food, ...
   a. eat healthy foods instead
   b. stop eating this type of food
   c. eat this type of food often
   d. (a) and (b)

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Why do people often not like unusual food ?

   .....

5. Why do you think people trained their brains not to like sugar ?

   .....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If you feel ill, you ..... a doctor.
   a. will see b. should see c. see d. would see
2. My grandfather had an accident when he was younger and now he ..... to walk very well.
   a. can't b. doesn't know c. is not able d. won't
3. Please don't put ..... salt on my food. I don't like it.
   a. many b. a lot c. a few d. any
4. Tarek is not very hungry, so he only wants ..... rice with his chicken.
   a. a few b. a little c. a lot of d. any
5. Mona knows ..... draw. Let's ask her to draw us a picture.
   a. how b. for c. how to d. able to
6. This email is in Spanish. Are you able to ..... it for me ?
   a. translate b. taste c. say d. waste
7. Waleed can't come out this morning because he needs to ..... for a delivery.
   a. buy b. pay c. save d. spend
8. People who do sport like to eat rice and pasta because they give them lots of ..... .
   a. fast food b. salt c. sugar d. energy
9. Before you fry food, you should ..... some oil in a pan.
   a. make b. serve c. heat d. fire
10. Judy's little sister hurt her hand and started ..... .
    a. crying b. laughing c. hiding d. wondering

E. Writing

5 Read and complete with the correct form of these words :

visit - add - invent - act

1. Ramy's ..... saves a lot of water and helps the environment.
2. The story was very slow and there was very little ..... .
3. Don't ..... too much salt. It's unhealthy.
4. Reham is ..... the museum next weekend. Her mum gave her tickets.

6 Choose one of the following :

- Write a short review of about 90-100 words on a book, film or a place you like.
- Write an email of about 90 - 100 words on an environmental problem you have near you, and how you could help solve this problem.

DAYS 5, 6 & 7

20 Governorates Exams

٢٠ اختبار من اختبارات المحافظات المختلفة

1 Cairo Governorate — El Zeitoun Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Noha spends too much time playing ..... .
   a. football b. tennis c. chess d. video games
2. Noha is very ..... at playing them.
   a. good b. bad c. sad d. afraid
3. Noha's parents want to take her ..... away.
   a. mobile b. radio c. computer d. watch
4. Noha loves playing video games with her ..... .
   a. sister b. friends c. parents d. brother

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rania is asking Ola about her blouse :

Rania : Your blouse is very nice. Is it new ?
Ola : (1) ..... .
Rania : (2) ..... ?
Ola : I bought it last Friday.
Rania : (3) ..... ?
Ola : No, it isn't expensive.
Rania : How much is it ?
Ola : (4) ..... .
Rania : Who bought it for you ?
Ola : (5) ..... .

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Mr Yasser teaches English in a secondary school. His students love him very much because he is friendly to them. He always encourages his students to speak English during lessons. Mr Yasser lives in Cairo which is the capital of Egypt. He has got two daughters and two sons. He is **interested** in reading. His favourite hobby is playing chess. **He** is very good at playing chess. He always plays chess with his best friend Mr Adel. They always meet at a nice café and play chess. They usually talk about teaching English when they play chess. Mr Yasser never comes to school late as he loves his work and his students.

DAYS 5,6&7

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "**interested**" has a similar meaning as ..... .

a. hate b. buy c. love d. see

2. The underlined word "**He**" refers to ..... .

a. Mr Yasser b. Mr Adel c. his son d. the writer

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why do Mr Yasser's students love him ?

.....

4. What is Mr Yasser's favourite hobby ?

.....

5. How many children has Mr Yasser got ?

.....

6. What is the capital of Egypt ?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My mother always asks me to ..... my bedroom.

a. tidy b. drop c. wash d. play

2. If I go to the shops today, I ..... a new shirt.

a. buy b. bought c. am buying d. will buy

3. We ..... things when we put them in our mouths.

a. smell b. taste c. hear d. see

4. He is a/an ..... who paints and draws pictures.

a. policeman b. nurse c. artist d. farmer

5. It is nearly dark. Look, I can see a ..... in the sky.

a. car b. park c. fish d. star

6. ..... is a crop that is used for making clothes.

a. Cotton b. Wood c. Plastic d. Paper

7. I don't like this soup. There is too ..... salt in it.

a. many b. few c. much d. enough

8. Blind people are not able to .....things.

a. see b. smell c. taste d. hear

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. I bought ..... (this) shoes last week in the market.
2. You shouldn't ..... (drinking) so much coffee. It's bad for you.
3. She doesn't eat ..... (some) cakes.
4. It is going ..... (rain). There are dark clouds in the sky.
5. ..... (Be) you able to play any musical instruments ?

6 **Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

"Your favourite hobby"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

2 Giza Governorate — North Giza Directorate

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. What did Sameh order last week ?
   a. A new mobile phone b. An old mobile phone
   c. A new computer d. An old computer
2. When was the delivery ?
   a. Yesterday b. Today c. Last night d. Last week
3. What was damaged ?
   a. The box b. The delivery c. The screen d. The machine
4. He changed his ..... .
   a. screen b. mobile c. box d. laptop

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Dina is talking with Sama about the next summer holiday.

Dina : How are you, Sama ?
Sama : (1) ..... .
Dina : Where will you go on the next summer holiday ?
Sama : (2) ..... .
Dina : Sharm El-Sheikh ! Who will you go with ?
Sama : (3) ..... .
Dina : (4) ..... ?
Sama : We'll travel by bus.
Dina : (5) ..... ?
Sama : At a hotel.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Time is very important, so if we have free time, we should spend it in a useful way. A wise person is the one who makes the best use of **it**. Some people like to practise sports to keep fit and **strong**. Others prefer reading. Reading is the most important and famous hobby that people can enjoy a lot. A book is a good friend that you can have everywhere. It helps you to find different kinds of information. That's why we have to encourage our pupils to go school libraries. There, they can read and borrow books to know more about different subjects, countries and different people.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "**strong**" in the passage is the opposite of ..... .
   a. good b. week c. weak d. small
2. We should spend our time in a/an ..... way.
   a. useless b. bad c. useful d. ugly

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Give a suitable title to this passage.
   .....
4. In your opinion, how can we make the best use of our free time ?
   .....
5. What is the importance of school libraries ?
   .....
6. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to ?
   .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We call foods that are made from milk dairy ..... .
   a. products b. exports c. goods d. ingredients
2. If something is ..... , it is expensive and good quality.
   a. poor b. old c. ancient d. luxury
3. You see a lot of ..... in windy countries like England.
   a. wind turbines b. tools
   c. solar panels d. machines
4. Shoes, bags and belts are often made of ..... .
   a. wool b. leather c. cotton d. gold
5. He trains hard to join the school ..... team.
   a. competition b. cooking c. athletics d. test

6. Do you like wearing modern or ..... clothes ?
   a. smart b. comfortable c. long d. traditional
7. He studies hard. Do you think he ..... first ?
   a. comes b. is going coming
   c. is going to come d. was coming
8. I ..... swim very quickly. I'm the best swimmer.
   a. can't b. able to c. can d. don't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If I go to the shops, I ..... (spend) a lot of money.
2. That beautiful dress is the ..... (ones) my grandmother made me.
3. When I was a small child, I ..... (use to / play) in the street.
4. While we ..... (travels) home, Hany phoned me.
5. Children should drink ..... (many) milk to have strong bones.

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"A person you are proud of"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

3 Alexandria Governorate — West Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. We should eat all types of food to be ..... .
   a. happy b. sad c. healthy d. bored
2. How many glasses of water do we need every day ?
   a. Eight b. Nine c. Five d. Three
3. Milk and cheese are ..... products.
   a. fairy b. dairy c. merry d. dirty
4. Having milk and cheese makes our bones ..... .
   a. nice b. white c. weak d. strong

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Amal and Nawal are talking about shopping.

Amal : What did you do today ?

Nawal : (1) ..... .

Amal : Did you buy anything ?

Nawal : (2) ..... .

Amal : (3) ..... ?

Nawal : I bought this coat. (4) ..... ?

Amal : Yes, I like it a lot. It's very pretty. Where did you buy it ?

Nawal : At the mall in Manshia Square.

Amal : Was it expensive ?

Nawal : (5) ..... . It was on sale for 200 pounds.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

We have a big garden around our house. There is a lot of grass there. Now, it's September and the grass is long and thick. We also have three trees in the garden. There is a young lemon tree which is very small. **It** doesn't have any fruit. There is also a peach tree in the garden. There aren't many peaches this year because of the cold weather in April and May. The third tree is an apple tree. Apples always grow well in this area and the tree is full of big green apples. Tomorrow, I want to make a big apple **pie**. There are red roses and other flowers that are green and yellow. There are two animals in the garden : a beautiful white cat and a friendly dog.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "**pie**" is a kind of ..... .
   a. roses b. bread c. trees d. dessert
2. The garden has a lot of ..... and flowers.
   a. roses b. dogs c. cats d. people

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Give a suitable title to the passage.
   .....
4. Do you like fruit ? Why/Why not ?
   .....
5. What does the underlined pronoun "**It**" refer to ?
   .....
6. How many trees are there in the garden ?
   .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I use my dictionary to ..... words into Arabic.
   a. write b. translate c. read d. listen
2. I don't put salt or pepper on my food because I don't like it ..... .
   a. creamy b. juicy c. sweet d. spicy
3. I wear a ..... around my waist to hold up my trousers.
   a. glasses b. belt c. shoe d. shirt
4. Egypt is famous ..... growing cotton to make material.
   a. at b. in c. for d. with
5. We use water ..... to clean water before we drink it.
   a. filters b. wheels c. wells d. taps
6. Pollution is bad for the ..... , so we must reduce it.
   a. interview b. view c. wind d. environment
7. Rana ..... 17 years old next year.
   a. will be b. is c. is going to be d. is being
8. Ali spends ..... time with his cousins.
   a. many b. a lot of c. too many d. few

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Would you like to drink ..... (any) juice ?
2. If I go to the shops today, I ..... (would) spend a lot of money.
3. Mariam and I know ..... (who) to cook pies.
4. I didn't use to drink tea. I used to ..... (eating) ice cream.
5. She can ..... (played) the piano.

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Your favourite hobby"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4 Qalyoubia Governorate — El Kanater Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Hamza went to Benha with his ..... .
   a. father b. mother c. friend d. cousin
2. Hamza ..... a mobile.
   a. has b. doesn't have c. have d. had
3. Hamza bought a new ..... .
   a. mobile b. bike c. car d. camera
4. Hamza went to Benha by ..... .
   a. plane b. train c. bike d. car

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mazen is talking to Nader about the coming soon "Summer Holiday".

Nader : Hi, how are you ?
Mazen : (1) ..... .
Nader : (2) ..... ?
Mazen : I'll spend my summer holiday on my uncle's farm.
Nader : (3) ..... ?
Mazen : I will go alone.
Nader : Do you like life in the countryside ?
Mazen : (4) ..... .
Nader : Have a good time there !
Mazen : (5) ..... .

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Hi, I'm Heba. I'm a student in a prep school. I'm in grade two. The person I admire most isn't a famous footballer, singer or an actor. He is a teacher of English. Mr Mohamed Saad is my favourite teacher. He lives in Cairo but he teaches here in a big school in Al Kanater. He is married with two sons and a daughter. He is friendly and helpful. He never says "No" when you ask him for help. He is always ready to help others. He has got a funny character. All his friends and students love him. In the future, I would like to be a teacher.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mr. Mohamed always says "..... " .
   a. I disagree b. I refuse c. No d. Sure
2. Heba is the name of Mr Mohamed's ..... .
   a. wife b. daughter c. student d. son

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Where does Mr Mohamed live ?

.....

4. How many daughters does Mr Mohamed have ?

.....

5. Do you admire Mr Mohamed ? Why ?

.....

6. What is the text about ?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Read the sentence and ..... it into Arabic.
   a. cook b. design c. translate d. rewrite
2. The mobile phone is an example of modern ..... .
   a. technology b. games c. social media d. food
3. Milk, cheese and ..... are dairy products.
   a. butter b. better c. bitter d. battery
4. Building new factories improves ..... .
   a. farming b. environment c. sports d. industry
5. We should help ..... people. They can't see.
   a. deaf b. blind c. bold d. mute
6. ..... you study hard, you'll pass the exam.
   a. Unless b. If not c. So d. If
7. The water in the sea is ..... .
   a. salty b. juicy c. sweet d. spicy
8. Keep standing, ... sit down.
   a. do b. don't c. are d. aren't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Would you like ..... (any) tea ?
2. He ..... (play) music now.
3. Shall we ..... (going) out ?
4. If Mona ..... (have) time, she may visit us.
5. Too ..... (many) salt is bad for your health.

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"An example of modern technology"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

5 Sharkia Governorate — Abu Kebeer Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. In many places, people use fava beans to make ..... .
   a. dinner b. samosas c. falafel d. bread
2. Falafel is really ..... .
   a. kind b. delicious c. foolish d. British
3. Falafel is ..... in Egypt.
   a. unknown b. poor c. solar d. popular
4. You can buy ..... in India.
   a. samosas b. falafel c. fava beans d. bread

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali and Nour are talking about reading.

Ali : What are you doing, Nour ?
Nour : (1) ..... .
Ali : (2) ..... ?
Nour : The book is called "The time machine" .
Ali : Do you think we will travel in time ?
Nour : (3) ..... .
Ali : (4) ..... ?
Nour : I will finish reading it tomorrow.
Ali : Can I take it after you finish reading it ?
Nour : (5) ..... .

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

We live in the age of technology. Now, all kinds of people use technology but they don't use it in the same way. **It** affects the way we learn, think and communicate. It has positive and negative effects on our lives. On one hand, it makes us able to save time and money. We are able to speak to our families and friends online anywhere and anytime. We know how to shop online when we are at home.

On the other hand, technology has negative effects. People spend much time checking social media or watching videos online. They don't get enough sleep and they may have problems with their eyes. This also affects children's learning badly.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Technology has ..... effects on children's learning.
   a. bad b. good c. fantastic d. great

2. People use technology in a/an ..... way.
a. same b. one c. once d. different

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What is the main idea of the passage ?
.....

4. How do you think technology can be useful ?
.....

5. What bad effects does technology have ?
.....

6. What does the underlined pronoun "**It**" refer to ?
.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When you pull this ....., the machine starts working.
a. lever b. eye c. scenery d. nose
2. He gets ill when he eats nuts. He's ..... to nuts.
a. friend b. energy c. allergic d. electric
3. When food ..... bad, you mustn't eat it.
a. buys b. smells c. smiles d. sells
4. You don't have to pay for it. It's ..... .
a. far b. expensive c. tree d. free
5. I always see good mothers ..... their babies.
a. hugging b. hitting c. eating d. flying
6. The climate and soil in Egypt are ..... for growing cotton.
a. bad b. perfect c. sad d. unkind
7. We ..... to plant trees on our roof. It's our plan.
a. going b. goes c. are going d. will
8. My mother spends ..... of time cooking in the kitchen.
a. many b. a few c. a lot d. a little

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. ..... (Not forget) to add a little salt to the soup.
2. He ..... (can) able to swim.
3. He wore a ..... (cotton, shirt, green).
4. ..... (This) flowers are amazing.
5. If he ..... (listen) to much music, he'll get a headache.

6 **Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

"Your favourite food"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

6 Menofia Governorate — Shebin El Koum Educational Directorate

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Dina is a student in a ..... school.
   a. primary b. prep c. nursery d. secondary
2. Dina talks to her friends in the ..... .
   a. cinema b. theatre c. classroom d. playground
3. Dina and her friends always go to the school ..... .
   a. floor b. hall c. library d. kitchen
4. Dina and her friends have ..... lessons every day.
   a. eight b. six c. seven d. five

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Mena is talking to Heba about her summer holiday.

Mena : Where did you spend your summer holiday, Heba ?

Heba : (1) ..... .

Mena : (2) ..... ?

Heba : Because I liked the weather of Mersa Matrouh.

Mena : (3) ..... ?

Heba : We stayed there for two weeks.

Mena : Did you take any photos ?

Heba : (4) ..... .

Mena : How often did you swim in the sea ?

Heba : (5) ..... .

3 **Read the following, then answer the questions :**

We need many things to feel happy. We don't often sleep enough, but this time in our life we need a lot of sleep. People who sleep seven to eight hours at night are much happier. People should be friendly. People need each other. You should spend time with your family and also try to make new friends, because this makes you happy. When you do something good to someone else, this makes you feel happy.

We should be helpful. One of the best ways to be happy is to remember the good things in your life and feel happy about **them**.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We feel happy when we do ..... things to other people.
   a. useless b. ugly c. useful d. dirty
2. A kind person is the one who ..... people at any time.
   a. kills b. hits c. bites d. helps

B. Answer the following questions :

3. How many hours should people sleep at night ?
   .....
4. What does the underlined word "**them**" refer to ?
   .....
5. What is the best way to be happy in your opinion ?
   .....
6. Give a suitable title to the passage.
   .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It's healthy for us to eat ..... products.
   a. smoke b. dairy c. snack d. diary
2. My mother tastes the ..... with her tongue when she cooks.
   a. boat b. road c. food d. coat
3. The things that happen in a film are called ..... .
   a. pottery b. portrait c. sculpture d. actions
4. In my opinion, the most important ..... is the mobile phone.
   a. invention b. invitation c. shopping d. speed
5. Shoes, bags and belts are often made of ..... .
   a. metal b. wood c. leather d. wool
6. ..... are used to produce electricity.
   a. Mobiles b. Solar panels c. Ports d. Plants
7. Would you like to have ..... tea with me ?
   a. any b. many c. some d. a few
8. The children ate ..... of chocolate yesterday.
   a. a lot b. much c. many d. a few

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Are you able to ..... (carrying) this heavy box ?
2. My brother likes ..... (a few) sugar in his tea.
3. The boys ..... (be) going to visit Alexandria next week.
4. Hala will be sad if she ..... (got) low marks in the exam.
5. When you go to bed, you ..... (shouldn't) turn your mobile off.

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Healthy food"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

7 Gharbia Governorate — West Tanta Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Fatma has gone to ..... since last April.
   a. England b. Japan c. France d. Germany
2. She wanted to ..... her English.
   a. break b. forget c. take d. improve
3. She is studying now with ..... learners.
   a. expert b. old c. young d. fast
4. Every ..... , she is taken to famous English places.
   a. month b. weekend c. day d. year

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Karim is talking to Omar about the next summer holiday.

Karim : Where will you spend the next summer holiday ?
Omar : (1) ..... .
Karim : (2) ..... ?
Omar : I will go with my family.
Karim : (3) ..... ?
Omar : We will stay in our flat near the sea.
Karim : Are you able to swim in the sea ?
Omar : (4) ..... .
Karim : I hope to spend a happy holiday in Alexandria.
Omar : (5) ..... .

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

One day, I asked my dad about technology. He says, I love technology. It's very useful for me. Technology helps us to do our work. We use **it** every day. We can send messages, do research, and play games. But to stay safe online, you have to follow some important instructions. First, keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information. Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or a video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell your **parent** or your teacher.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ..... .
   a. telephone b. instructions c. work d. technology
2. The underlined word "**parent**" means ..... .
   a. mum or dad b. uncle
   c. teacher d. mum's sister

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What should you do when you are in trouble ?
   .....
4. What is the main idea of the passage ?
   .....
5. Why do you think you have to follow these rules when you are online ?
   .....
6. What should you keep secret to stay safe online ?
   .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My brother likes playing musical ..... .
   a. shows b. costumes c. instruments d. acts
2. Do you ..... that the weather will get hotter in the future ?
   a. invent b. have c. give d. predict
3. You shouldn't ..... outside for too long if it is very hot.
   a. swim b. stay c. try d. visit
4. What ..... would you like ? - Large, please.
   a. colour b. size c. number d. material
5. I ..... the dentist at half past four next Thursday.
   a. visiting b. visit c. visited d. am visiting

6. These sculptures are the best ..... in the hall.
   a. one b. any c. those d. ones
7. I can talk to people at drama club about ..... .
   a. painting b. drawing c. acting d. sewing
8. The snow is going to ..... .
   a. mix b. freeze c. burn d. melt

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Hassan will be sad if he ..... (got) low marks.
2. It is ..... (go) to rain. I can see dark clouds in the sky.
3. Ahmed is able ..... (doing) calligraphy.
4. When you ..... (not understand) the lesson, you should ask your teacher for help.
5. Could I have ..... (a few) sugar for my tea, please ?

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Online shopping"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

8 Dakahlia Governorate — Manzala Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the ..... to make linen.
   a. Red Sea b. ocean c. Nile d. Suez Canal
2. Everyone in Ancient Egypt wore clothes made of ..... .
   a. leather b. linen c. cotton d. metal
3. They used the plants of linen to make ..... .
   a. houses b. balls c. baskets d. pots
4. Egyptian cotton is very good for making ..... .
   a. walls b. bricks c. baskets d. clothes

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Alaa advises Eman to have a balanced diet.

Eman : I feel tired all the time and I don't get enough sleep.
Alaa : (1) ..... ?
Eman : I usually eat fast food.
Alaa : (2) ..... . You should have a balanced diet.
Eman : (3) ..... ?
Alaa : You should eat some of all the types of food.
Eman : How many hours should I sleep ?
Alaa : (4) ..... .
Eman : What else should I do ?
Alaa : (5) ..... .

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Every summer, Nada goes to the countryside for a month. She stays at her uncle's farm and helps him. She works very **hard** but she likes it. She loves to spend time with her cousins. Every morning, she wakes up at six o'clock. First, she collects the eggs and feeds the chickens. Then she has breakfast at 6:30. After breakfast, she helps her uncle's wife with the housework.

Nada and her cousins always spend a great time together. They climb trees and pick fruits and flowers. **They** are always very tired at the end of the day. Nada and her cousins always watch TV before they go to bed.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ..... .
   a. Nada and her father b. Nada and her cousins
   c. Nada and her friends d. Nada and her classmates
2. The opposite of the underlined word "**hard**" is ..... .
   a. easy b. carefully c. carelessly d. locally

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why do you think Nada likes to go to her uncle's farm ?
   .....
4. What do Nada and her cousins do before they go to bed ?
   .....
5. Give a suitable title to this passage .
   .....
6. How long does Nada stay at her uncle's farm ?
   .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A tour guide can speak other ..... .
   a. panels b. languages c. inventions d. businesses
2. I think that fried chicken ..... really good.
   a. tastes b. sees c. touches d. hears
3. When Tamer is worried, he doesn't ..... hungry.
   a. feel b. fall c. fail d. fell
4. ..... food is hot food such as burger that is quick to cook.
   a. Fat b. Fast c. Allergic d. Slow
5. Which musical ..... can you play ?
   a. machines b. instruments c. costumes d. clothes
6. Can we see the play at the ..... , Dad ?
   a. park b. theatre c. museum d. library
7. What ..... eat if I don't like the food ?
   a. will I b. I will c. did I d. I do
8. Can I have some more sugar, please ? There is ..... in this tea.
   a. too much b. too many c. a few d. not enough

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. ..... (Washing) some beans and put them in a pan. (.....)
2. I bought ..... (this) shoes last week in the market. (.....)
3. It's a ..... (purple / wool / nice) jumper. (.....)
4. Look at the black clouds ! It ..... (go) to rain. (.....)
5. Mariam knows how ..... (write) a script. (.....)

6 Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

"Modern technology"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

9 Beheira Governorate — Edku Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Where are you having your holiday ?
   a. In Aswan b. In Hurghada c. In Alex d. In Siwa
2. Who are you staying with ?
   a. With my friends b. With my parents' friends
   c. With my cousins d. With my grandparents
3. How are they ?
   a. Kind b. Polite c. Unkind d. Bad
4. Where did you have a picnic ?
   a. By the sea b. By the lake
   c. On Fatanas Island d. At the park

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is talking to Adel who bought some clothes last weekend.

Ahmed : Hi, Adel. What did you do last weekend ?
Adel : Hi, Ahmed. (1) ..... .
Ahmed : Shopping! (2) ..... ?
Adel : I bought a T-shirt and a pair of sunglasses.
Ahmed : (3) ..... ?
Adel : I went with my brother and sister.
Ahmed : What did your brother buy ?
Adel : (4) ..... .
Ahmed : What colour were your brother's shoes ?
Adel : (5) ..... .

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My name's Asmaa. I always get up at half past six. I usually have a shower after I get up. I have breakfast with my family. My house is not far from my school, so I go to school on foot. I always arrive there before the bell rings. At break, I have some sandwiches and talk to my friends. I play with **them** on the playground. I come back home at about two o'clock. I usually feel tired then. My parents always come from work at three o'clock. I like to help my mum make lunch. After lunch, I do my homework. I usually go to bed at nine o'clock.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ..... .
   a. Asmaa's parents b. Asmaa's family
   c. sandwiches d. Asmaa's friends
2. Asmaa's house is ..... her school.
   a. near b. far from c. away d. opposite

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What's the main idea of the text ?
   .....
4. What does Asmaa usually do after she gets up ?
   .....
5. What does Asmaa do at break ?
   .....
6. When do Asmaa's parents come home from work ?
   .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. To ..... is to change words into another language.
   a. explore b. transport c. feed d. translate
2. Don't use too much social media or you will be ..... to it.
   a. worried b. addicted c. useful d. possible
3. Mariam knows ..... write a script.
   a. can b. how to c. how d. to be able
4. My mother ..... me when I do something good.
   a. punishes b. hits c. hugs d. drives
5. The road is not big enough for cars, but you can go down it on a ..... .
   a. motorbike b. train c. bus d. ship
6. There are dark clouds, it ..... .
   a. will rain b. rains c. raining d. is going to rain
7. We take turns to ..... the washing up.
   a. make b. burn c. mend d. do
8. He works as a/an ..... in a restaurant.
   a. engineer b. artist c. designer d. cook

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If I go to the shops, I ..... (spend) a lot of money.
2. What about ..... (those) news ?

3. Would you like ..... (coming) to my birthday party ?
4. I ..... (travel) to Aswan. I have booked the tickets.
5. My father ..... (be) 45 next year.

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"What will you do next summer holiday?"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

10 Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate — Desouk Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved to wear ..... .
   a. jewellery b. coats c. bags d. pants
2. Men and women wore similar ..... in Ancient Egypt.
   a. necklaces b. clothes c. wood d. metal
3. Men and women wore loose, white, linen clothes with a ..... .
   a. button b. belt c. robe d. leather
4. People sometimes wore expensive leather ..... in Ancient Egypt.
   a. dresses b. rings c. sandals d. clothes

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Tamer and Rana are talking about the next summer holiday.

Tamer : Where will you spend the next summer holiday ?
Rana : (1) ..... .
Tamer : (2) ..... ?
Rana : I will go with my family.
Tamer : (3) ..... ?
Rana : We will stay in our flat near the sea.
Tamer : Are you able to swim in the sea ?
Rana : (4) ..... .
Tamer : I hope to spend a happy holiday in Alexandria.
Rana : (5) ..... .

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

If you want to be healthy, you should eat some of all types of food. We need to drink eight glasses of water every day. Dairy products like milk and cheese help us to have **strong** bones. Meat, cheese and nuts

have protein in them and we need protein to have a strong body. A lot of sugar is bad for your teeth. Examples of healthy snacks are fruit and nuts. People often like fast food because **it** has lots of fat and sugar in it. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is fresh.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ..... .
   a. snack b. protein c. milk d. fast food
2. The underlined word "**strong**" is the opposite of ..... .
   a. serious b. weak c. active d. lazy

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Give a suitable title to the passage.
   .....
4. Give examples of healthy snacks.
   .....
5. Why do you think we need dairy products ?
   .....
6. What is the source of protein ?
   .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When Ali got the full marks in English, he was ..... .
   a. disappointed b. unhappy c. careless d. proud
2. I think electric cars will help to ..... pollution in the future.
   a. increase b. reuse c. add d. reduce
3. Most children are ..... to video games.
   a. worried b. allergic c. addicted d. damaged
4. He agreed to ..... part in the race.
   a. take b. make c. have d. like
5. A/An ..... is a person who does things without any money.
   a. shopkeeper b. customer c. volunteer d. assistant
6. The ..... aren't able to use a part of their body.
   a. musician b. rich c. poor d. disabled
7. If they ..... hard, they will win the match.
   a. will train b. trained c. trains d. train

8. Would you mind ..... the door for me, please ?
   a. opening b. open c. opens d. opened

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Are you going ..... (sold) your car ?
2. I think there is ..... (a few) milk in the fridge.
3. I recommend ..... (read) this book, it is interesting.
4. We bought a ..... (cotton/blue) shirt.
5. These trainers are much better than the ..... (one) I had before.

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words to your friend Rana to tell her about "Types of technology". Your email address is tamara@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is rana@yahoo.com.

From	
To	
Subject	

.....,
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

11 Damietta Governorate — Kafr Saad Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Sfenj is a kind of ..... from Morocco.
   a. flour b. book c. cake d. pizza
2. Sfenj has lots of sugar and ..... in it.
   a. fat b. salt c. sand d. pepper
3. Sfenj is very sweet, so it is ..... .
   a. very healthy b. not very healthy
   c. very good d. very easy
4. We sometimes eat sfenj as a snack with some ..... .
   a. tea or coffee b. tea and sugar
   c. vanilla and sugar d. tea or milk

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Fares is inviting Reda to his cousin's house.

Fares : Hi Reda, would you like to come to my cousin's house tomorrow ?
Reda : (1) ..... . It is a big house. Has he got a table tennis ?
Fares : Yes, he's got table tennis in the garden. (2) ..... ?
Reda : Yes, please ! Shall I bring some table tennis balls ?
Fares : No, he's got those. (3) ..... ?
Reda : Of course, I will bring some sandwiches. What time should I come ?
Fares : (4) ..... .
Reda : Great. I can meet you then.
Fares : Are you ready to come to my house ?
Reda : (5) ..... .

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

As a child, I spent a lot of time reading books especially new ones. I didn't read any new book before I examined **it** carefully and looked at the pictures. Once I started to read a book, I could not stop. I bought so many books that my hobby started to become expensive. My parents told me to read more library books, but the library books were not so **special**. One day, I found 50 pounds inside a library book. I took the book and the money back to the librarian and forgot about it. A month later, the librarian phoned me. They had not found the owner of the money, so they gave it to me. You can probably guess how I spent the 50 pounds.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to any new ..... book.
   a. money b. month c. library d. book
2. The underlined word "**special**" means ..... .
   a. unusual b. easy c. unhappy d. heavy

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Give a suitable title to the passage.
   .....
4. What did the writer do before he read a new book ?
   .....
5. How do you think the writer spent the 50 pounds ?
   .....
6. Where did the writer find 50 pounds ?
   .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The road is not big enough for cars, but you can go down it on a ..... .
   a. helicopter b. motorbike c. headphone d. computer
2. My grandparents always ..... lunch in the dining room at 2 o'clock.
   a. chop b. serve c. fry d. heat
3. A ..... is a painting or photograph of a person's face.
   a. portrait b. sculpture c. cartoon d. show
4. I'm looking for a dress for a special ..... . My sister is getting married next week.
   a. tradition b. holiday c. accident d. occasion
5. I don't like old cars because they ..... a lot of pollution.
   a. install b. lend c. cause d. reduce
6. People sometimes use a ..... to film animals from the sky.
   a. rock b. panel c. filter d. drone
7. Do you prefer ..... dress or that one over there ?
   a. this b. these c. those d. their
8. She likes ..... clothes.
   a. linen, loose, white b. loose, white, linen
   c. white, linen, loose d. loose, linen, white

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I ..... (able) to play music.
2. I don't like this soup. There is too ..... (many) salt in it.
3. Our teacher ..... (go) to be angry. We are making noise.
4. Those earrings are the ..... (one) my mum gave me.
5. Are you going ..... (sold) your bike ?

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Modern technology"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

12 Ismailia Governorate — El Tal El-Kebeer Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Rokaya is a/an ..... girl.
   a. lazy b. boring c. active d. sad
2. She spends ..... hours studying and doing her homework.
   a. two b. three c. four d. five
3. Rokaya sleeps ..... every day.
   a. late b. early c. lately d. hard
4. She doesn't like sending ..... .
   a. emails b. letters c. photos d. text messages

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Hana is talking with Fareeda about the next summer holiday.

Hana : How are you, Fareeda ?
Fareeda : (1) ..... .
Hana : Where will you go on the next summer holiday ?
Fareeda : (2) ..... .
Hana : Alexandria ! Who will you go with ?
Fareeda : (3) ..... .
Hana : (4) ..... ?
Fareeda : We will travel by train.
Hana : (5) ..... ?
Fareeda : At our grandparents' house.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Many people use social networking sites like Facebook, Twitter, Instagram and WhatsApp to communicate with each other. These sites have made communication easier and faster. They give you the chance to express your ideas, thoughts and feelings freely to your friends and followers. The most **popular** site is Facebook. More than one billion people use Facebook all over the world. It helps you to share news and events with your friends. You also can make videos and share them live. The problem is that a lot of people, especially young men and women spend too much time using **it**.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "**popular**" means ..... .
   a. unknown b. famous c. unfriendly d. normal

2. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ..... .

a. WhatsApp b. Facebook c. Instagram d. Telegram

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What is the main idea of the passage ?

.....

4. How many people use Facebook all over the world ?

.....

5. Do you think spending too much time using Facebook is good ?

.....

6. What have made communication easier and faster ?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I asked my father to ..... a German article into Arabic.

a. ride b. translate c. damage d. watch

2. Milk, cheese and butter are ..... products.

a. diary b. daily c. dairy d. dry

3. ..... people can't walk.

a. Deaf b. Strong c. Disabled d. Dumb

4. Can I ..... this dress on ?

a. play b. try c. cry d. tray

5. She is sad because she .....her exam.

a. passed b. succeeded c. filled d. failed

6. I think the internet is the greatest ..... .

a. invention b. invitation c. direction d. discovery

7. If you ..... too much, you'll put on weight.

a. eats b. ate c. eat d. will eat

8. There are ..... types of healthy snacks at this restaurant.

a. a little b. any c. much d. a few

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. He ..... (do) exercise at the moment.
2. I live in ..... (these) building over there.
3. ..... (she know) how to drive a car ?
4. The children are going ..... (playing) video games.
5. ..... (Adding) a little salt to the eggs and milk.

6 **Write an email of about NINETY (90) words to your friend Mona to tell her about the environmental problems in your city. Your name is Huda and your email address is huda32@student.com. Your friend's email address is mona23@student.com.**

From	
To	
Subject	

.....,
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

13 Port Said Governorate — East Port Said Educational Directorate

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. What is the plant in the text called ? .....
   a. Silk b. Wheat c. Cotton d. Bamboo
2. Where is bamboo grown ? – In ..... .
   a. Egypt b. China c. Japan d. India
3. Why do people use bamboo ? .....
   a. To make sweets b. To make wood
   c. To make clothes d. To make metal
4. Does bamboo industry make a lot of money ? .....
   a. I'm not sure. b. I don't know. c. No, it doesn't. d. Yes, it does.

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :**

Randa asks Rasha about her plan for this evening :

Randa : Good afternoon, Rasha. How are you ?

Rasha : Good afternoon, Randa. (5) ..... .

a. I was busy b. I'm in the club
c. I was at school d. I'm OK

Randa : Where are you going ?

Rasha : (6) ..... .

a. I'm going to the airport
b. I'm going to the post office
c. I'm going to the supermarket
d. I'm going to the cinema

Randa : (7) ..... ?

a. Why are you living there
b. Why are you going to the airport
c. Why do you prefer tennis
d. Why are you studying English

Rasha : To meet my brother. He's coming from Malaysia.

Randa : (8) ..... ?

a. When does his plane arrive
b. When does it rain
c. When does your brother arrive
d. When does the ship arrive

Rasha : It arrives at 8 o'clock.

Randa : I hope he arrives safely.

Rasha : (9) ..... .

a. Not at all
b. You're welcome
c. Thank you very much
d. I disagree with you

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

10. We only eat a little meat and a few ..... products.
a. dairy b. day c. paper d. diary

11. If I ..... to the shops, I will spend a lot of money.
a. go b. went c. goes d. going

12. Egypt is famous ..... its good cotton.
a. to b. at c. of d. for

13. Sham El Nessim is a special ..... when we eat coloured eggs.
a. birthday b. occasion c. accident d. industry

14. I asked my aunt to ..... a French internet article into Arabic.
a. damage b. translate c. use d. spend

15. ..... you able to speak French ? - Yes, I am.
a. Were b. Are c. Can d. Do

16. Flutes, cellos and trumpets are ..... instruments.
a. musical b. historical c. personal d. electrical

17. ..... any cheese in the fridge ?
a. There is b. Are there c. There are d. Is there

18. Mona always wears ..... on the bus because she loves listening to music.
a. apps b. dangers c. headphones d. motorbikes

19. We saw a big, old ..... in the Egyptian Museum.
a. robot b. window c. statue d. computer

B. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d:

20. Those earrings are the ..... (one) my mum gave me.
a. of one b. of ones c. ones d. for ones

21. Eman feels tired all the time and doesn't get ..... (many) sleep.
a. enough b. few c. a little d. some

22. It ..... (go) to rain. I can see dark clouds in the sky.
a. goes b. is going c. will go d. may go

23. He would like to ..... (knowing) how to solve problems.
a. knows b. know c. be known d. knew

- **Read the following text, then answer the questions :**

I love technology. It's very useful for me. Technology helps us to do our work. We use **it** every day. We can send messages, do research and play games. But to stay safe online, you have to follow some important instructions. First, keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information. Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a **parent** or a teacher. They can help and protect you.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

24. The underlined word "**parent**" means ..... .
a. mum or dad b. uncle c. teacher d. mum's sister

25. You should keep your ..... secret.
a. text b. email c. postcard d. password

26. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ..... .
a. telephone b. instructions c. technology d. call

B. Answer the following questions :

27. What should you do when you are in trouble ?
.....

28. What is the main idea of the passage ?
.....

29. Why do you think you have to follow these rules when you are online ?
.....

30. Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Healthy food"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

14 Fayoum Governorate — Sinnuris Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. What time do you get up on Fridays ?
   a. Late b. Early
   c. In the afternoon d. At night
2. Who do you play computer games with ?
   a. My brother b. My father c. My sister d. My mother
3. When do you visit your friends ?
   a. At night b. In the evenings
   c. In the mornings d. In the afternoons
4. Who do you help with the shopping ?
   a. My mother b. My grandfather
   c. My grandmother d. My friend

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sami and Hani are talking about spending the mid-year holiday.

Sami : Hi! Where will you spend the mid-year holiday ?

Hani : (1) ..... .

Sami : Well, the weather is fine in Aswan. Who will you go with ?

Hani : (2) ..... .

Sami : (3) ..... ?

Hani : We will stay at my uncle's house.

Sami : (4) ..... ?

Hani : We will stay about seven days.

Sami : Have a nice trip.

Hani : (5) ..... .

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My name is Sami. I am thirteen years old and I live in Alexandria, Egypt. I usually wake up at 6 in the morning. First of all, I wash my face and brush my teeth. After that, I get dressed, then eat a cheese sandwich with cold milk for breakfast. Next, I carry my bag and go to school. I always start school at 8 in the morning and then have a lunch break and talk to my friends. Next, I finish school at around 3 in the afternoon, and then I wait for the school bus. I arrive home at 3 - 30 and have some rest. Finally, I usually do my homework, have my milk, and go to bed at 9 pm.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Sami is in a ..... school.
   a. nursery b. primary c. preparatory d. secondary
2. Sami's house is ..... his school.
   a. near b. far from c. opposite d. in front of

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What is the main idea of this passage ?
   .....
4. How does Sami go to school ?
   .....
5. Why do you think he has his milk before going to bed ?
   .....
6. What does Sami have for breakfast ?
   .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This ..... jacket uses an app to make you warmer.
   a. boring b. ugly c. stupid d. clever
2. A/An ..... is a person who does things without any money.
   a. shopkeeper b. customer c. volunteer d. assistant
3. You should eat healthy ..... .
   a. snakes b. snacks c. spikes d. sneaks
4. I like to go ..... to see coral reefs.
   a. riding b. diving c. walking d. sailing
5. The disabled can use ..... to be able to move.
   a. wheelchairs b. armchairs c. wheels d. sofas

6. My mother likes to wear big and ..... dresses.
   a. short b. loose c. small d. little
7. She has two children. The tall ..... is good at basketball.
   a. one b. ones c. one's d. ones'
8. She ..... play football if she doesn't finish her homework.
   a. won't b. haven't c. aren't d. don't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Watch out! You are going ..... (hurt) yourself.
2. The bus is ..... (leave) in ten minutes' time.
3. What should I ..... (doing) about my problem ?
4. I don't want you to put ..... (some) sugar in my milk.
5. ..... (This) people are my relatives.

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Pollution"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

15 Beni Suef Governorate — Ihnasia Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Trees are ..... for the environment.
   a. bad b. good c. useful d. unhealthy
2. Trees ..... air pollution.
   a. reduce b. increase c. help d. give
3. When are students going to plant trees ?
   a. Yesterday b. Next week c. Tomorrow d. Next Month
4. Students are going to plant trees on the ..... of the school.
   a. wall b. playground c. library d. roof

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Adel and Nabil are speaking about their hobbies.

Nabil : What's your favourite hobby, Adel ?

Adel : (1) ..... .

Nabil : Playing music ! Which musical instrument do you play ?

Adel : (2) ..... .

Nabil : (3) ..... ?

Adel : I started playing it three years ago.

Nabil : (4) ..... ?

Adel : My father helped me to play it.

Nabil : Is it easy to play it ?

Adel : (5) ..... .

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I'm Ali, last month I went on a school trip to Cairo with my friends and teachers. We visited the Egyptian Museum. From my point of view, **it**'s one of the most important museums in the world.

A lot of tourists, who are interested in seeing **ancient** things that are many centuries years old, come from all over the world to visit it. They usually have their cameras to take wonderful photos.

We saw many ancient things from the past. These things help us to understand our history. We knew what life was like thousands of years ago. We saw many statues and sculptures there. We spent an amazing day. We went back home on our school bus. Although I was very tired, I was happy. I will visit it again with my family. I recommend visiting it. It is open daily but it is usually busy on holidays.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ..... .
   a. Tourists
   b. the Egyptian Museum
   c. Cairo
   d. the trip
2. The word "**ancient**" means ..... .
   a. very bad
   b. new
   c. modern
   d. very old

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Give a suitable title to the passage.

.....

4. Why do you think Ali was happy at the end of the day?

.....

5. Why do tourists have cameras?

.....

6. How did they go to the museum?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I use ..... to listen to music.
   a. headphones b. mouse c. microphones d. printers
2. My sandals are made of ..... .
   a. wood b. leather c. metal d. gold
3. I'm very good at sewing ..... .
   a. costumes b. pottery c. scenery d. instruments
4. My brother is ..... to video games. He spends much time playing them.
   a. happy b. possible c. ready d. addicted
5. The cake which my mother makes is ..... . I like it very much.
   a. salt b. bad c. delicious d. terrible
6. I'm ..... to nuts. If I eat nuts, I will get ill.
   a. energetic b. allergic c. delicious d. different
7. I don't put ..... sugar in my coffee.
   a. any b. some c. most d. a few
8. Nader eats ..... cheese for breakfast.
   a. lot b. many c. a little d. few

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. This machine will be able to ..... (flying) very high.
2. If Ali ..... (go) to Giza, he will visit the Pyramids.
3. Do you know how ..... (do) make up?
4. ..... (These) book is mine.
5. These shoes are the ..... (one) my mum bought me.

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Technology in our life"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

16 Assuit Governorate — Assuit Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Amir likes ..... .
   a. writing b. reading c. singing d. drawing
2. Amir's ..... loves nature.
   a. brother b. sister c. father d. mother
3. Amir usually plays games on his ..... .
   a. TV b. book c. laptop d. mobile
4. Amir doesn't like ..... .
   a. writing b. reading c. singing d. drawing

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Omar is telling Hamza about his visit to a museum.

Hamza : Hello Omar, How are you?
Omar : (1) ..... .
Hamza : (2) ..... ?
Omar : Last week, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo.
Hamza : (3) ..... ?
Omar : I saw lots of statues.
Hamza : Is it free to visit?
Omar : (4) ..... .
Hamza : Did you enjoy your time there?
Omar : (5) ..... .

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Music has a very important role in human life. A lot of people all over the world enjoy listening to music or playing it. Some types of music are fast and others are **slow**. Music is useful for a lot of people. For example, some doctors use music for sick people to help **them** get better and to be happy. Some mothers play music for their babies at night to help them sleep well. At school, some teachers use music and songs to let students learn new languages and different subjects easily and in a very simple way. Also in the gym, music is played during practicing sports to make them feel happy while doing sport. Every country has its own culture and music.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Some doctors use music to help sick people get ..... .
   a. better b. bad c. ugly d. worse
2. The underlined word "**slow**" is the opposite of ..... .
   a. big b. fast c. tall d. happy

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What is the passage about ?
   .....
4. Why do some mothers play music for their babies at night ?
   .....
5. Do you think music is useful ? Why / Why not ?
   .....
6. What does the underlined pronoun "**them**" refer to ?
   .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Hana and I know how to sew ..... .
   a. instruments b. costumes c. scripts d. interview
2. I think Ali is ..... to his phone. He uses it a lot.
   a. worried b. save c. addicted d. sad
3. The soup is cold. Shall we ..... it?
   a. chop b. heat c. sew d. fry
4. Solar ..... make energy from the sun.
   a. panels b. turbines c. winds d. pans
5. Watermelon and oranges are ..... fruits.
   a. fats b. salty c. spicy d. juicy
6. Do you think it is easy to ..... from Arabic into English?
   a. stay b. translate c. find d. spend
7. I'm ..... travel to Aswan.
   a. going to b. goes c. going d. go
8. When it is raining, you should ..... at home.
   a. stayed b. stays c. stay d. staying

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. ..... (These) is my old jacket.
2. Hany can ..... (playing) the guitar.
3. We don't have ..... (some) cheese in the fridge.
4. If she ..... (feel) ill, she should see a doctor.
5. Add ..... (a few) salt to food, but not too much.

6 **Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

"Online shopping"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

17 Souhag Governorate — Gerga Educational Directorate

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Omar is going to his friend's birthday party ..... .
   a. yesterday b. next year c. next month d. next week
2. The party will be ..... .
   a. at a park b. at a hotel
   c. at home d. on the house roof
3. Omar bought a ..... as a present for his friend.
   a. camera b. mobile c. story d. bag
4. Omar is very ..... to attend the party.
   a. excited b. sad c. unhappy d. scared

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Tamer is at a clothes shop. He wants to buy a shirt.

Assistant : Hello. How can I help you?
Tamer : (1) ..... .
Assistant : (2) ..... ?
Tamer : I want it blue, please.
Assistant : Great! What about this style?
Tamer : I think it is nice. Can I try it on, please?

Assistant : (3) ..... . The changing room is over there.
Tamer : It fits me. I will buy it. (4) ..... ?
Assistant : It is L.E 300.
Tamer : (5) ..... .

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

There are different useful jobs in our society. Teachers help students to learn different subjects. Now, they use technology to make subjects **easy** and interesting. We must respect **them**. Doctors are important. They work day and night to help ill people. Doctors help patients get better by giving them the right medicine. They work in hospitals and clinics. Doctors should be kind and helpful to win people's love and respect. Engineers also help us a lot. They help to build houses, schools, hospitals and factories. Really, engineers build modern Egypt.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "**them**" refers to ..... .
   a. engineers b. teachers c. doctors d. medicines
2. The underlined word "**easy**" means ..... .
   a. tall b. old c. difficult d. simple

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Give a suitable title to the passage.
   .....
4. Who help build modern Egypt?
   .....
5. Why do you think doctors' work is important?
   .....
6. What do teachers use to make subjects interesting?
   .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I usually use my ..... to listen to music.
   a. headphones b. glasses c. trainers d. helmets
2. We ..... with our noses.
   a. hear b. smell c. touch d. taste
3. The ..... is the place where we watch plays.
   a. museum b. park c. theatre d. hall
4. Shoes, bags and belts are made of ..... .
   a. wool b. metal c. wood d. leather

5. Today, factories ..... old paper to produce new paper.
   a. check b. solve c. recycle d. damage
6. Egypt is famous ..... growing crops to make materials.
   a. for b. to c. on d. in
7. When you don't understand the lesson, you ..... ask your teacher's help.
   a. should b. shouldn't c. would d. could
8. What ..... they doing now?
   a. were b. are c. will d. have

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If Nader ..... (play) well, he will win the final match.
2. Mahmoud's bag is light. It has ..... (little) books.
3. ..... (be) Ahmed able to read French? — Yes, he is.
4. I lost my cap. I want to buy a new ..... (ones).
5. Farida is going ..... (to won) the race.

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Things you like at your school"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

18 Minia Governorate — Bani Mazar Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. There is ..... air pollution in our country.
   a. little b. much c. few d. many
2. People should ..... trees.
   a. reduce b. plant c. cut d. remove

3. ..... can reduce air pollution.

a. Traffic b. Houses c. Trees d. Smoke

4. Trees are ..... for the environment.

a. bad b. unhealthy c. sad d. good

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking Khalid about the weather.

Ahmed : What is the weather like tomorrow?

Khalid : (1) ..... .

Ahmed : Do we have to take our umbrellas when we go out?

Khalid : (2) ..... .

Ahmed : (3) ..... ?

Khalid : I listened to the news.

Ahmed : Do you always listen to the news?

Khalid : (4) ..... .

Ahmed : (5) ..... ?

Khalid : We're going to meet in the morning.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

In ancient Egypt, most of our important cities were built along the Nile. For this reason, people have used the river for transport for many years. The people also became **experts** at building boats. The ancient Egyptians made small boats from papyrus. **They** used oars to move them forwards. Later, they used wood tied together with ropes to build boats. They also invented the first sail in order to move faster up the river. In around 2500 BCE, people began to build larger and stronger boats. Ships were built to travel across the sea to sell goods in other countries. Ships needed the wind until the early 1800s when the first steam ships began to cross the sea.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The word "**experts**" can be replaced by ..... .

a. specialists b. actors c. workers d. painters

2. The word "....." means things we sell and buy.

a. oars b. steam c. experts d. goods

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to?

.....

4. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

5. Why do you think sails were important in the early boats?

.....

6. When did people begin to build larger and stronger boats ?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When you pull that ..... the machine will start moving.
   a. lever b. liver c. engine d. tape
2. Salma was ..... that she failed her exam.
   a. happy b. pleased c. disappointed d. smiling
3. Writing ..... of films needs special skills.
   a. scripts b. sculptures c. names d. lists
4. It's not good for health to ..... your time playing video games.
   a. save b. waste c. wait d. take
5. He ..... his driving test. He has to practise a lot.
   a. passed b. fell c. failed d. smelt
6. Please, ... the speed of the car. You are going to crash.
   a. reduce b. increase c. produce d. introduce
7. I'm going ..... my brother repair the bike.
   a. helps b. helping c. helped d. to help
8. Adel bought a ..... handbag to his mother.
   a. leather, yellow, small b. yellow, leather, small
   c. leather, small, yellow d. small, yellow, leather

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Akram will ..... (has) a party.
2. Hassan ..... (writes) his English homework now.
3. My sister can't ..... (feeding) herself.
4. The boy has ..... (few) money.
5. This is my pen. The other ..... (ones) is hers.

6 **Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

"A visit to the museum"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

19 Qena Governorate — Nag Hammadi Educational Directorate

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. To be healthy, you have to ..... well.
   a. play b. sleep c. study d. fry
2. Make sure you have a ..... diet.
   a. balanced b. boiled c. fried d. grilled
3. Eat some of all ..... of food.
   a. seeds b. tastes c. types d. smells
4. Don't ..... too much to be healthy.
   a. worry b. bring c. practise d. speak

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

A tourist is asking Farida about the Pyramids.

Tourist: Can I ask you some questions, please?

Farida : (1) ..... .

Tourist: (2) ..... ?

Farida : The Pyramids are in Giza.

Tourist: (3) ..... ?

Farida : They were built by the ancient Egyptians.

Tourist: Are they far from here?

Farida : (4) ..... . You can take a taxi.

Tourist: Thank you.

Farida : (5) ..... .

3 **Read the following, then answer the questions :**

A famous doctor was always ready to help his poor neighbours. One day, an old woman came to his house and asked if he would come to her house to see her husband who was very sick. The doctor went with her to her house. When he entered, he noticed that there was no food in

the house. He examined the man and gave him some medicines, then he asked the woman to come to his hospital to give her some medicines. The woman went **there** and he gave her a small box. He told her that she would find the instructions inside the box. When she arrived home, she opened the box. It contained some money and a piece of paper. On the paper he wrote these words: "To be taken when it is needed."

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "**there**" refers to ..... .
   a. the woman's house b. the doctor's house
   c. the box d. the hospital
2. There was a ..... in the box.
   a. message b. neighbour c. woman d. hospital

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why did the woman go to the doctor's house ?
   .....
4. How did the doctor know that the family was poor ?
   .....
5. How do you think the woman felt when she found the money ?
   .....
6. Why did the doctor ask the woman to go to his hospital ?
   .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Do you think it is easy to ..... from Arabic into English?
   a. stay b. translate c. find d. waste
2. I hope the flying motorbike ..... invented soon.
   a. will be b. will c. should d. going to
3. I am ..... to nuts, so I must be careful what I eat.
   a. ready b. allergic c. athletics d. energy
4. You should never drink sea water because there is ..... salt in it.
   a. not enough b. too many c. too much d. a few
5. My dress is damaged, so my mother is ..... it.
   a. sewing b. playing c. cooking d. acting
6. ..... my point of view, we should recycle all our plastic.
   a. Of b. At c. In d. From

7. The climate and soil in Egypt are ..... for growing cotton.
   a. perfect b. bad c. hard d. boring
8. Electric cars will help to ..... pollution in the future.
   a. happen b. cause c. save d. reduce

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If you feel tired, you ..... (shouldn't) have a rest.
2. ..... (Are) a film star know how to act in films?
3. It's a ..... (cotton, striped, pink) scarf.
4. Look at the black clouds! It is ..... (go) to rain!
5. Don't ..... (putting) too much salt in the soup.

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words to your friend Ali to tell him about "The city or village you live in". Your name is Hatem and your email address is: hatem@gmail.com.
Your friend's name is Ali and his email address is: ali@gmail.com

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

20 Luxor Governorate — El Qurna Educational Directorate

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Mona has gone to ..... .
   a. England b. France c. Germany d. Japan
2. She wanted to ..... her English.
   a. forget b. break c. improve d. take
3. She is studying with ..... learners.
   a. expert b. old c. young d. fast
4. Every ..... , she is taken to famous English places.
   a. weekend b. month c. day d. year

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Amira and Esraa are talking about types of technology.

Amira : Do you know much about technology?
Esraa : (1)..... .

Amira : What types of technology do you use every day?
Esraa : (2) ..... .
Amira : (3) ..... ?
Esraa : I use them to log on the internet and for music.
Amira : (4) ..... ?
Esraa : Yes, sometimes. I have problems online.
Amira : I hope you enjoy your time. Goodbye.
Esraa : (5) ..... .

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I'm Hossam. I have got two sisters and three brothers. My father is a farmer; my mother is a housewife. She spends all her time cooking and cleaning the house. My father and mother work day and night to help us live happily. **They** always teach us to be polite and kind to other people. We live in a nice house on the farm. My father grows a lot of vegetables. He also keeps some animals and birds. In my school, I have got a lot of friends. My school day begins at eight o'clock in the morning. After school, I usually help my father. I love looking after animals and birds. I like to study **farming** because I want to grow the main crops on our farm.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Hossam's mother works at ..... .
   a. home b. school c. bank d. company
2. The word "**farming**" means ..... .
   a. playing music b. weaving
   c. making clothes d. growing crops

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What is the passage about ?
   .....
4. How many people are there in Hossam's family ?
   .....
5. Why do you think Hossam likes to study farming ?
   .....
6. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to ?
   .....

4 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. He can speak different ..... such as French and German.
   a. books b. inventions c. ideas d. languages
2. Please, ... some tea into my cup.
   a. heat b. pour c. pull d. beat
3. These sculptures are the best ..... in the hall.
   a. one b. ones c. any d. those
4. You ..... make noise in the library.
   a. should b. must c. shouldn't d. has
5. Maya's favourite hobby is ..... a scenery.
   a. saving b. reading c. painting d. playing
6. It took her a long time to be able to ..... costumes.
   a. do b. sew c. see d. say
7. He drinks much coffee. He became ..... to it.
   a. addicted b. expert c. followers d. scientist
8. If a person is ....., he isn't able to hear.
   a. blind b. deaf c. free d. strong

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. Ahmed doesn't know how to ..... (writing) an email.
2. The boys were ..... (play) all day yesterday.
3. It is a ..... (new/beautiful/black) bag.
4. If my mother has more free time, we will be able to ..... (went) out.
5. How ..... (much) pounds do you have ?

6 **Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

"Shopping online"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample tests for Al-Azhar students

اختبارات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — Cairo Zone

1 Listen to the text and choose the correct answer :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. If you spend a lot of time on screens, you will have ..... problems.
   a. eye b. ear c. nose d. leg
2. Listening to loud music or films through ..... can damage your hearing.
   a. speakers b. microphones
   c. headphones d. taps

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Nahed : Are you going out this afternoon?
Nehal : (1) ..... .
Nahed : (2) ..... ?
Nehal : Because I have not finished my homework yet.
Nahed : (3) ..... ?
Nehal : In an hour. When I finish, I will call you.
Nahed : OK. I will wait for your call then.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I do not like to have ..... salt in my food.
   a. some b. any c. many d. a
2. ..... is a material made from an animal which is used to make shoes and bags.
   a. Wool b. Gold c. Cotton d. Leather
3. ..... people can't see.
   a. Blind b. Deaf c. Dumb d. Strong
4. Heba is going ..... the race.
   a. win b. won c. winning d. to win
5. I was playing tennis with my sister when it ..... to rain.
   a. starting b. started c. starts d. start

4 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Not all people think the same about shopping online. Some people think shopping online is great. They think **it** saves time because they do not spend much time travelling to the shops. And they can stay at home and buy anything they want in a few minutes. They think that they have

many choices online. In their view, shopping online will make fewer cars on the streets so there will be less pollution. On the other hand, some people do not think the same. They do not like shopping online. They say they always have a wrong delivery when they shop online. They do not like to waste time waiting for a delivery. They prefer to try things and see materials before buying them.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. Do all people think the same about shopping online?

.....

2. Where can you stay while shopping online?

.....

3. What will happen if more people shop online?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer :

4. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ..... .

a. spending much time b. shopping online
c. delivery d. travelling

5. Some people do not like to ..... time waiting for a delivery.

a. use b. waste c. make d. do

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s) :

1. When she is playing netball, she drinks **a few** water. (.....)
2. I know how **sew** costumes. (.....)
3. He will feel tried if he **didn't** sleep well. (.....)
4. I want a/an **green, amazing, cotton** dress. (.....)

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about :

"Healthy food"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

2 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — Giza Zone

1 Listen and choose the correct answer :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Braille is a special kind of ..... .
   a. games b. sports c. writing d. singing
2. Louis Braille who invented this writing was ..... .
   a. Egyptian b. French c. English d. Italian

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Shopkeeper : (1) ..... ?
Customer : Yes, I'd like to buy a jacket.
Shopkeeper : Of course, (2) ..... ?
Customer : I'd like it large, please.
Shopkeeper : What colour would you like?
Customer : (3) ..... .
Shopkeeper : Here you are.
Customer : It's great. I'll take it.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This ..... can help you to study on your mobile phone.
   a. application b. camera c. tools d. destination
2. There is ..... salt in sea water.
   a. a few b. too many c. too much d. not enough
3. My friend forgot her book yesterday, so I ..... her mine.
   a. borrowed b. lent c. took d. received
4. She ..... to swim.
   a. could b. not able c. can d. is able
5. I like ..... smart T-shirt.
   a. this b. these c. those d. then

4 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Five Egyptian students, from Kafr El-Sheikh STEM School, were able to develop an app to help small farmers to save water and energy. Farmers complete a simple form about their farmlands.

This form is connected to a smart app which tells the farmers the right amount of water the lands need. It also determines the amount of energy and the number of workers according to the lands, the location and the season.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What were the students able to do?

.....

2. What does the smart app tell farmers?

.....

3. How does the app determine the amount of water and the number of workers?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Farmers complete a simple form about their ..... .
   a. animals b. money c. families d. farmlands
5. The app helps small farmers to save ..... and energy.
   a. water b. books c. food d. clothes

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Do you know **plays** the guitar ? (.....)
2. **Didn't** come late again. (.....)
3. It's a **nice, wool, brown** jumper. (.....)
4. **That** birds are flying very high. (.....)

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about :

"A place you visited last year"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

3 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — Menofia Zone

1 Listen to the text and choose the correct answer:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Hani's favourite hobby is ..... .
   a. writing b. reading c. painting d. singing
2. Hani often buys new books every ..... .
   a. day b. week c. month d. year

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Mona : Where are you going, Rania ?
Rania : (1) ..... .
Mona : (2) ..... ?
Rania : To borrow a book.
Mona : Are you interested in reading ?
Rania : (3) ..... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Sama ..... eat unhealthy food, if she wants to be fit.
   a. will b. should c. shouldn't d. can
2. Hani never eats ..... nuts. He is allergic to them.
   a. some b. much c. a little d. any
3. I like traveling by train to see the beautiful ..... .
   a. scenery b. century c. traffic d. script
4. We are ..... the club tomorrow. It's planned.
   a. going b. going to c. going to go d. going to go to
5. This report is too long. Can you ..... it, please?
   a. clean b. summarise c. sew d. paint

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egypt is a beautiful country. Last year, hundreds of people visited Egypt on holiday. Many people went on a boat on the river and visited the desert, and they all tasted our delicious food. They also wanted to learn about how Egyptian people lived in the past. Many people visit Cairo. This is the biggest city in Egypt. It is next to the Nile, the longest river in the world. There is a lot to see in Cairo. There are museums, beautiful mosques, and big markets. You can also visit Alexandria. This city is next to the sea and has a very big library. Egypt has got many beaches, too. The weather is usually warm in Egypt. It never rains in summer in Aswan, and it is always sunny. People should have sunglasses and suncream when they visit Egypt in the summer.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. What do people want to learn about the Ancient Egyptians?
   .....
2. Which city do people visit when they want to enjoy the beaches?
   .....
3. Why should people have sunglasses and sun cream when they visit Egypt in summer?
   .....

B. Choose the correct answer :

4. Many people went on a ..... on the Nile.
   a. bus b. boat c. plane d. train
5. The weather in Egypt isn't ..... in summer.
   a. warm b. hot c. sunny d. cold

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. It is **go** to rain, I can see dark clouds in the sky. (.....)
2. If you do exercise every day, you **won't** be fit. (.....)
3. He is able **ride** a bike. (.....)
4. I usually put **a few** salt in my food. (.....)

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

"Your favourite recipe"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

4 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — Dakahlia Zone

1 Listen and choose the correct answer :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Judy plays ..... .
   a. football b. volleyball c. squash d. tennis
2. Judy eats ..... fish.
   a. a lot of b. few c. many d. little

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Fares : Hi Amir. What is the most important crop in Egypt?
Amir : Hi Fares. (1) ..... .
Fares : Cotton! (2) ..... ?
Amir : Because it is famous all over the world.
Fares : (3) ..... ?
Amir : It is grown in many Egyptian fields.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I think electric cars will ..... pollution.
   a. reduced b. reduce c. reducing d. reduces

2. Online shopping ..... time and money.
   a. saves b. uses c. makes d. spends
3. I ..... two eggs in a bowl with little milk.
   a. beat b. chop c. wash d. fry
4. She is seven years old, but she ..... to read yet.
   a. can b. can't c. isn't able d. could
5. The ..... which the actors are wearing are wonderful.
   a. instruments b. customs c. costumes d. scenes

4 Read the following, then answer the questions :

The teacher says, our school project this week is to think about **rubbish** at school. In our school, we have a rubbish bin in every room. Students are very good and they always put their rubbish in the bins, which we can recycle it in a special place in the city. So before students put things in the rubbish bin, we ask **them** to think. Can I recycle that? If the answer is yes, they can now put it in a special bin, for paper or plastic. So it can be used again

A. Answer the following questions :

1. Where do students put their rubbish?
   .....
2. What is the school project about?
   .....
3. Can they recycle rubbish?
   .....

B. Choose the correct answer :

4. The word "**rubbish** " means ..... .
   a. marks b. metal c. wood d. litter
5. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ..... .
   a. things b. students c. plastic d. paper

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. Listen ! The girl is **sing**. (.....)
2. She bought a **plastic, red** cup. (.....)
3. **Turns** the lights off before you sleep. (.....)
4. Those glasses are not good. Give me some good **one**. (.....)

6 **Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about :**

"How to be healthy"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

5 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — Sohag Zone

1 **Listen to the text then choose the correct answer :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Samir works as a ..... for a charity.
   a. worker b. manager c. volunteer d. vet
2. Samir and his friends help to clean the ..... .
   a. beach b. street c. hospital d. school

2 **Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :**

Dalia : Why are you sad, Heba?

Heba : (1) ..... .

Dalia : I am sorry to hear that he is ill. Did he go to hospital?

Heba : (2) ..... .

Dalia : (3) ..... ?

Heba : He is at home now.

Dalia : I hope your father will get better soon.

3 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. My sister is ..... to social media. She always wants to use it.
   a. addicted b. cruel c. kind d. allergic
2. Children can't usually eat ..... food.
   a. sweet b. juicy c. spicy d. delicious
3. What is ..... small thing by my car?
   a. this b. these c. those d. an
4. I can see dark clouds. It ..... to rain.
   a. will b. is going c. going d. would
5. If all people shop online, the shops ..... .
   a. closes b. would close c. will close d. closed

4 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Yousif's daily routine is the same in every school day. It starts at six o'clock. His mother makes his breakfast while he gets dressed for school. Yousif walks to school with his friends, Sayyed, Gamal and Ayman. Yousif's school day finishes at 12:30 when he leaves for his house. He sometimes arrives home before his mother. She works at the city hospital as a nurse so he makes lunch for himself. He starts doing his homework and studying his lessons. In the evening, he likes to watch a football match. He goes to bed at nine o'clock.

A. Answer the following questions :

1. When does Yousif go to bed?

.....

2. What is Yousif's mother's job?

.....

3. Who does Yousif go to school with?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer :

4. Yousif and his friends go to school ..... .

a. by bus b. on foot c. by bike d. by boat

5. Yousif's daily routine starts at ..... .

a. dawn b. nine o'clock

c. six o'clock d. half past twelve

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. I eat **a little** healthy snacks. (.....)
2. Can you **to play** football or tennis ? (.....)
3. I don't like this meal, I want the other **ones**. (.....)
4. I think Ali **buy** a car in the future. (.....)

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences on :

"Healthy food"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

An Exam for Inclusive Students

اختبار لطلاب الدمج

Menofia Governorate

El Shohada Educational Directorate

1 Choose the correct answer to complete the following dialogue :

Ayman and Samy are talking about their favourite sports.

A : Hi Samy, (1) ..... is your favourite sport?

a. where b. when c. how d. what

S : My favourite sport is football.

A : When do you play it?

S : (2) ..... Fridays.

a. On b. In c. At d. Under

A : (3) ..... do you play it?

a. What b. When c. How d. Where

S : I play it in the club.

A : Who do you play with?

S : With my (4) ..... .

a. books b. friends c. houses d. hospitals

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Mohamed Salah is a famous Egyptian footballer. He was born in 1992. He plays for a good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt too. He is very good at scoring goals. He runs fast. He has a big smile. He has got curly hair. He is kind. He builds schools and hospitals. I like him.

1. The text is about ..... .

a. Alexandria b. Cairo c. Aswan d. Mohamed Salah

2. Mohamed Salah is a/an ..... .

a. doctor b. footballer c. engineer d. police officer

3. He was born in ..... .

a. 1990 b. 1991 c. 1992 d. 1993

4. He is ..... .

a. bad b. sad c. fat d. kind

5. He runs ..... .

a. slowly b. fast c. badly d. loudly

6. He builds schools and ..... .

a. banks b. hospitals c. parks d. restaurants

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Maha can ..... costumes very well.

a. swap b. write c. paint d. sew

2. Alexandria is famous ..... its amazing places.
   a. by b. for c. of d. at
3. Let's watch ..... on TV.
   a. carton b. script c. invitations d. cartoons
4. Are the children ..... make pottery?
   a. can b. would c. able to d. can't
5. My mobile has a/an ..... that tells us directions.
   a. lever b. device c. app d. robot
6. The opposite of "horrible" is ..... .
   a. terrible b. awful c. ugly d. amazing
7. You are .....to strawberry, you can't eat any.
   a. addicted b. surprised c. allergic d. bad
8. Mum usually uses ..... like black pepper.
   a. slices b. sweets c. spices d. species
9. Can you help me ..... the washing up?
   a. waste b. do c. make d. spend
10. Can I have ..... milk, please?
   a. any b. some c. many d. a few

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He ..... driving to Aswan now.
   a. am b. is c. are d. was
2. Hassan ..... in Cairo three years ago.
   a. lives b. lived c. living d. live
3. ..... you got any sisters? - Yes, I have.
   a. Has b. Have c. Do d. Does
4. The elephant is ..... than the lion.
   a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. as big

5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph :

I went to the zoo. / I went home. / I saw animals. / I went by car.

a. I went to the zoo. I went by car. I saw animals. I went home.
b. I went by car. I went home. I saw animals. I went to the zoo.
c. I went by car. I saw animals. I went home. I went to the zoo.
d. I went home. I saw animals. I went by car. I went to the zoo.

Listening Texts

نصوص استماع

⊙ Listening (Day 1) :

A. My friend Randa loves using social media. She can't stop using it and has become addicted to it. She uses her mobile to watch many videos and talk to her friends.

B. For Dareen, the best way to remember English grammar is to make up a song about it! Then she sings the song quietly to herself. She says it is a great way to remember irregular verbs! Dareen learns best by listening.

Accumulative Tests

Test on | **Units 7, 8 & 9**

Lama ordered a new mobile phone last week and the delivery was today morning. When she opened the box, the screen of the phone was damaged. She would like to change the phone for a new one.

Test on | **Units 10 , 11 & 12**

Drones can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them. We can fly them by using remote controls. In the future, drones are going to help solve some environmental problems.

End of Term Practice

Amira : Hi, Injy. Do you know how to cook ?

Injy : Yes, I can cook a few things. What do you want to make ?

Amira : Shall we make a cake for Hala ? It's her birthday tomorrow.

Injy : Good idea! She likes healthy food, so if we want to make her something healthy, we should make a carrot cake.

Amira : Okay. We will need a recipe. Here's one on my phone.

Injy : What do we need ?

Amira : We need some flour, a lot of carrots, a little sugar and some eggs.

Injy : Good. I think we have all of those. What shall I do, Amira ?

Amira : Perhaps you could mix the flour and sugar in a bowl, Injy, I'll cut the carrots.

Injy : Okay. How old will Hala be ?

Amira : She is fourteen tomorrow.

Injy : If she is fourteen, we should put fourteen nuts on the cake when it's cooked. She likes nuts.

Amira : That's good idea !

1 Cairo Governorate
El Zeitoun Educational Directorate

Noha spends too much time playing video games. Noha is very good at playing them. Noha's parents want to take her mobile away. She loves playing video games with her friends.

2 Giza Governorate
North Giza Directorate

Sameh ordered a new mobile phone last week. The delivery was yesterday. The screen was damaged. He called the delivery company and changed his mobile.

3 Alexandria Governorate
West Educational Directorate

If you want to be healthy, you should eat all types of food. You need to drink eight glasses of water every day. Dairy products like milk and cheese help us to have strong bones.

4 Qalyoubia Governorate
El Kanater Educational Directorate

Hamza went to Benha with his mother. Hamza doesn't have a mobile so, he bought a new mobile. Hamza went to Benha by car.

5 Sharkia Governorate
Abu Kebeer Educational Directorate

In many places, people use fava beans to make falafel. Falafel is really delicious. Falafel is popular in Egypt. You can buy samosas in India.

6 Menofia Governorate
Shebin El Koum Educational Directorate

Dina is a student in a prep school. She talks to her friends in the playground. They always go to the school library. Dina and her friends have eight lessons every day.

7 Gharbia Governorate
West Tanta Educational Directorate

Fatma has gone to England since last April. She wanted to improve her English. She is studying now with young learners from around the world. Every weekend, she is taken to famous English places.

8 Dakahlia Governorate
Manzala Educational Directorate

The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. Almost everyone wore clothes made of linen and they also used the plants of linen to make baskets. Today, Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world because cotton from Egypt is very good for making clothes.

9 Beheira Governorate
Edku Educational Directorate

I'm having my holiday in Hurghada. I'm staying with my kind friends . I had a picnic by the sea.

10 Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate
Desouk Educational Directorate

Ancient Egyptians loved to wear jewellery like necklaces. Men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore loose, white, linen clothes with a belt. Most of the time, Ancient Egyptians didn't wear shoes but they sometimes wore expensive leather sandals.

11 Damietta Governorate
Kafr Saad Educational Directorate

Sfenj is a kind of cake from Morocco. Sfenj has a lot of sugar and fat in it. Sfenj is very sweet, so it is not very healthy. We sometimes eat sfenj as a snack with some tea or coffee.

12 Ismailia Governorate
El Tal El-Kebeer Educational Directorate

Rokaya is an active girl. She spends three hours studying and doing her homework. Rokaya sleeps early every day. She doesn't like sending emails.

13 Port Said Governorate
East Port Said Educational Directorate

Bamboo is an important plant grown in China. People make wood from bamboo. Bamboo industry makes a lot of money.

14 Fayoum Governorate
Sinnuris Educational Directorate

I get up early on Fridays although they are holidays. I always play computer games with my brother. Then I visit my friends in the afternoons. I usually help my mother with the shopping. Fridays are amazing days.

15 Beni Suef Governorate
Ihnasia Educational Directorate

We should keep our planet clean so we should plant a lot of trees because they are good for the environment. Trees reduce air pollution. Tomorrow, some students are going to plant trees on the roof of the school.

16 Assuit Governorate
Assuit Educational Directorate

My friend Amir likes drawing. His sister loves nature. Amir usually plays games on his mobile. Amir doesn't like reading.

17 Souhag Governorate
Gerga Educational Directorate

Omar is going to his friend's birthday party next week. The party will be at home. Omar bought a camera as a present for his friend. Omar is very excited to attend the party.

18 Minia Governorate
Bani Mazar Educational Directorate

Air pollution is a very dangerous problem. There is much pollution in our country. We should plant trees to reduce air pollution. We shouldn't cut more trees. Trees are good for the environment.

19 Qena Governorate
Nag Hammadi Educational Directorate

To be healthy, you have to follow many important rules : you should sleep well, make sure you have a balanced diet, eat some of all types of food, and finally never worry too much.

20 Luxor Governorate
El Qurna Educational Directorate

Mona has gone to England. She wanted to improve her English. She is studying with young learners. Every weekend, she is taken to famous English places.

Sample tests for Al-Azhar students

1. Cairo Zone

If you spend a lot of time on screens, you will have eye problems. Listening to loud music or films through headphones can damage your hearing.

2. Giza Zone

Many blind people read using a special kind of writing called Braille. It takes its name from Louis Braille, a blind French man, who invented it in 1820s.

3. Menofia Zone

I'm Hani. My favourite hobby is reading. It is very important. I read in my free time. I sometimes read in the school library. I often buy new books every month. I like reading science books. I think reading is very useful.

4. Dakahlia Zone

Judy is an active girl. She plays squash. Judy eats a lot of fish. It is very healthy.

5. Sohag Zone

Samir works as a volunteer for a charity. Samir and his friends help to clean the street.

EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

New Hello!

SECOND TERM

A WEEK IS ENOUGH

IN THIS FREE PART...

- A week is enough.
- Governorates Examinations.

الآن بالمكتبات

المعاصر فى...
- الرياضيات
- الكمبيوتر وتكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات

للمرحلة الإعدادية

دراسة المعاصر للمراجعة والاختبارات تصرف مجانا مع الكتاب

FREE PART 2

GPS

AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com
www.elmoasserbooks.com
15014

/ ElMoasser.eg

6 223007 311335

FREE PART

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

قام بإعداد هذه النسخة pdf
وفهرستها ورفعها :
د محمد أحمد محمد عاصم
نسألكم الدعاء